Your Owner's Manual

Digital version available on the Internet

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

ŠKODA KODIAQ 11.2019
Angličtina/English

OWNER´S MANUAL

ŠKODA KODIAQ

ŠKODA
SIMPLY CLEVER

Documentation of vehicle delivery

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Date of vehicle delivery ____ / ____ / _____

ŠKODA Partner
Stamp and signature of the vendor

I confirm that I have taken delivery of the vehicle in good condition, have received information on how to operate it correctly, and have had the terms of the warranty explained to me.
Signature of the customer

Does the vehicle have an extended warranty?

☐ **YES**

☐ **NO**

Limitations of the ŠKODA extended warranty[a)]

Years: _____

or

km/mileage: _____

or

Miles: _____

[a)] Depending on which comes first.

Reprinting, duplicating, translating and any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2019

Vehicle owner

First Vehicle owner

This vehicle with the registration plate

_____

belongs to:
Title, name/company:

_____

_____

Address:

_____

_____

_____

Telephone:

_____

ŠKODA Partner:

Service consultant:

_____

Telephone:

_____

Second Vehicle owner

This vehicle with the registration plate

_____

belongs to:
Title, name/company:

_____

_____

Address:

_____

_____

_____

Telephone:

_____

ŠKODA Partner:

Service consultant:

_____

Telephone:

_____

Table of Contents

1 Vehicle owner

5 About the Owner's Manual

5 About the Owner's Manual

6 Explanations

7 Vehicle overviews
7 Front vehicle area
8 Rear vehicle area
9 Driver's seat
9 Centre console and passenger seat
10 Engine compartment

10 Indicator lights
10 Functionality
10 Indicator light overview
13 Indicator light overview

16 Correct and safe
16 Introductory notes for correct use
16 New vehicle or new parts
16 Regular checks
16 No improper vehicle adjustments
16 Keeping sensors and cameras in working order
17 Engine compartment
17 Vehicle battery
17 Using electrical sockets in the vehicle
17 Before your journey
19 Safe driving
20 Emergency call
21 After an accident

22 Keys, locks and alarm system
22 Key
23 Memory function of the key
23 Central locking
25 Keyless locking (KESSY)
26 Alarm system

27 Doors, windows and boot lid
27 Doors
27 Child safety lock on the rear doors
27 Protective door strip
28 Window - with electrical operation
29 Sliding/tilting roof
30 Sunblind - with electrical operation
30 Sun protection roller blinds for the rear door panes
31 Sun visors
31 Heated windscreen
31 Boot lid - with manual operation
32 Boot lid - with electrical control
33 Electrically operated contactless boot lid
33 Unlocking the boot lid

34 Seats, steering wheel and mirror
34 Front seat - with manual operation
34 Front seat - with electrical operation
34 Memory function of the seat
35 Second row of seats
36 Park position of rear seat belts
36 Third row of seats
37 Headrests
38 Front armrest
38 Rear armrest
38 Seat heating and ventilation
38 Steering wheel
39 Heated steering wheel
40 Interior rear-view mirror
40 Exterior mirror

41 Restraint systems and airbags
41 Seat belts
42 Child seat
44 Fasteners for child seats
46 Airbags
47 Key switch for the front passenger airbag

48 Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers
48 Exterior lighting
50 COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME exterior lighting
50 Light Assist high-beam assist system
51 Replace light bulbs
54 Interior lighting
54 Interior ambient light
55 Windscreen wipers and washers

57 Heating and air conditioning system
57 Manual air conditioning
57 Climatronic automatic air conditioning system
59 Auxiliary heating and ventilation

61 Driver information system
61 Analogue instrument panel
61 Digital instrument cluster
62 Instrument cluster display
63 Driving data
64 Speed limit warning
65 Vehicle condition
65 Stopwatch in the instrument cluster
66 Stopwatch in the Infotainment
66 Information Sport
66 Personalisation

67 Infotainment Swing
67 Infotainment overview
67 System
68 Screen
69 Infotainment keyboard
70 Radio
72 Media
75 Mobile device management
76 Telephone

78 SmartLink
80 ŠKODA Connect online services

82 Infotainment Bolero
82 Infotainment overview
82 System
84 Screen
84 Infotainment keyboard
85 Voice control
86 Radio
89 Media
92 Images
94 Mobile device management
95 Telephone
97 SmartLink
99 ŠKODA Connect online services

102 Infotainment Amundsen
102 Infotainment overview
102 System
103 Screen
104 Infotainment keyboard
105 Voice control
106 Radio
109 Media
112 Images
113 Media Command
115 Mobile device management
116 Telephone
118 Wi-Fi
119 Data connection
120 SmartLink
122 ŠKODA Connect online services
124 Navigation

130 Infotainment Columbus
130 Infotainment overview
130 System
132 Screen
132 Keypad
133 Voice control
134 Radio
137 Media
141 Images
143 Video DVD
145 Media Command
146 Mobile device management
149 Telephone
152 Wi-Fi
153 Data connection
153 SmartLink
156 ŠKODA Connect online services
158 Navigation

163 Starting and driving
163 Starting with the key
164 Start at the push of a button
164 Starting issues
165 START STOP
165 Manual gearbox
166 Automatic gearbox
167 Vehicle driving mode
169 Economical driving style
169 Towing a trailer
171 Towing eye and towing procedure
171 Brakes
172 Electric parking brake
173 Auto Hold automatic holding function

174 Driver assist systems
174 Braking and stabilising systems
175 Front Assist
176 Pedestrian detection system
176 Speed limiter
177 Cruise control system
178 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
180 Lane Assist
181 Traffic jam assistant
181 Lane change assist system Side Assist
182 Traffic sign recognition
183 Crew Protect Assist proactive occupant protection
183 Driver Alert fatigue detection assistant
183 Emergency situation assist systemEmergency Assist
184 Hill descent assistant

185 Park Assist systems
185 Park Pilot parking aid
186 Rear view camera
187 Area View environment overview
188 Rear Traffic Alert
189 Park steering assistant
190 Trailer assist trailer manoeuvring aid

192 Engine, exhaust system and fuel
192 Bonnet
192 Engine oil
193 Coolant
194 Engine electronics
194 Particle filter
195 Exhaust control system
195 Fuel filter
195 Fuel filler flap
195 AdBlue
196 Petrol
197 Diesel

199 Vehicle battery and fuses
199 Vehicle battery
200 Using the jump-starting cable
201 Fuses
201 Fuses in the dash panel
203 Fuses in the engine compartment

204 Wheels
204 Tyres and rims
205 All-season or winter tires
205 Snow chains
205 SEAL tyres

206 Spare and emergency spare wheel
206 Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle
208 Breakdown kit
209 Tyre pressure
209 Tyre pressure monitor
210 Tyre pressure monitoring system
211 Wheel bolt cover caps
211 Full wheel frame

212 Storage space and interior equipment
212 Equipment in the boot
212 Emergency equipment
212 Storage compartment for the reflective vest
213 Fasteners in the boot
213 Bag hooks in the boot
214 Cargo components in the boot
214 Fastening nets
214 Sliding hooks
215 Net partition
215 Double-sided floor covering
215 Floor covering in the boot
215 Roll-up luggage compartment cover
216 Variable loading floor in the boot
217 Partition in the boot
217 Through-loading bag
217 Overview of passenger compartment
219 Storage pockets on the inner sides of the front seats
219 Car park ticket holder
219 Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door
219 Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door
219 USB connections
220 Hook on the centre body pillar
220 Spectacles compartment
221 Pen holder
221 Storage compartment for cards, coins and SD card
221 Storage compartment for cards in the storage area on the driver's side
221 Third row of seats – drinks and telephone holder
221 Storage compartment under the front seat
221 Storage compartment for an umbrella
222 Phonebox
222 Cup holder
223 Waste container
223 Ashtray and cigarette lighter
223 Folding table
224 Multifunction holder
224 Ceiling
224 Display in rear centre console
224 Tablet holder
225 12-Volt power socket
225 230-Volt power socket

226 Roof rack and hitch
226 Roof rack
226 Swivelling hitch

228 Maintaining and cleaning
228 Service events
228 Service work, adjustments and technical changes
229 Interior
229 Exterior
231 Ice scraper on the fuel filler flap

231 Technical data and specifications
231 Requirements for the technical data
231 Vehicle identification data
232 Maximum permissible weights
232 Operating weight
233 Vehicle dimensions
233 Engine specifications
236 Event Data Recorder
237 Information about the radio systems in the vehicle
237 Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties

240 Index

About the Owner's Manual

General
This Owner's Manual applies to all **chassis variants** of the vehicle, including all **models** and **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that **not all the trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **images** in this Owner's Manual are for illustrative purposes only. The images may differ from your vehicle; these are for general information purposes only.

ŠKODA AUTO is constantly working on the further development of all vehicles. It is therefore possible for changes to be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. The information contained in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be derived from the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Electronic version of the Owner's Manual
The printed Owner's Manual contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and vehicle maintenance.

Complete information is included in the electronic version of the Owner's Manual. This is available on the ŠKODAweb pages as well as in the mobile application MyŠKODA, which can be downloaded.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals**

About the Owner's Manual

General
This Owner's Manual applies to all **chassis variants** of the vehicle, including all **models** and **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that **not all the trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **images** in this Owner's Manual are for illustrative purposes only. The images may differ from your vehicle; these are for general information purposes only.

ŠKODA AUTO is constantly working on the further development of all vehicles. It is therefore possible for changes to be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. The information contained in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be derived from the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Explanations

Terms used

“Specialist garage” - A workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.

“ŠKODA Service Partner” - A workshop that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to perform service work on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

“ŠKODA Partner” - A company that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Text notes

“Press” - short press (e.g. a button) within 1 second

“Hold” - long press (e.g. a button) for more than 1 second

Direction indications

All direction indications, such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “rear”, relate to the forwards direction of travel of the vehicle.

⚠ **DANGER**

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ **WARNING**

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ **CAUTION**

Texts marked with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in minor or moderate injury.

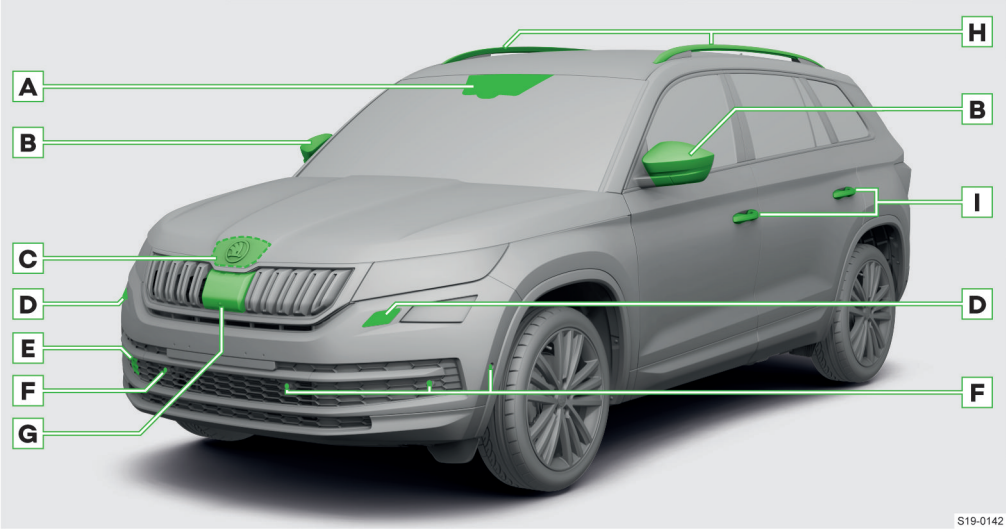
ⓘ **NOTICE**

Texts with this symbol indicate situations which, if the corresponding instructions are not observed, will result in damage to the vehicle.

🛈 Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Vehicle overviews

Front vehicle area



A Under the windscreen
- ▸ Camera for assist systems
- ▸ Light sensor for automatic driving light circuit » page 48
- ▸ Rain sensor for automatic wiping » page 55

B Rearview mirror
- ▸ Mirror adjustment » page 40
- ▸ Cameras for assist systems

C Bonnet release lever (under the flap) » page 192

D Headlight washers » page 55

E Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » page 171

F Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

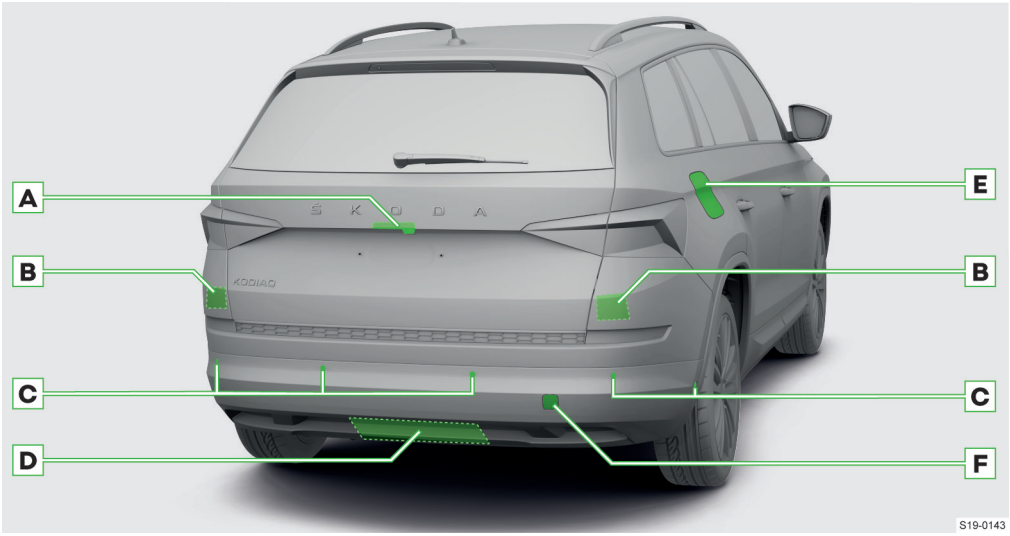
G Front radar sensor for assist systems

H Roof rails » page 226

I Door handles
- ▸ Open the door » page 27
- ▸ Keyless locking (KESSY) » page 25

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 16.

Rear vehicle area



A Handle of the boot lid
- ▸ Manually operated boot lid » page 31
- ▸ Electrically operated boot lid » page 32
- ▸ Camera for assist systems

B Radar sensors for assist systems (inside the bumper)

C Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems

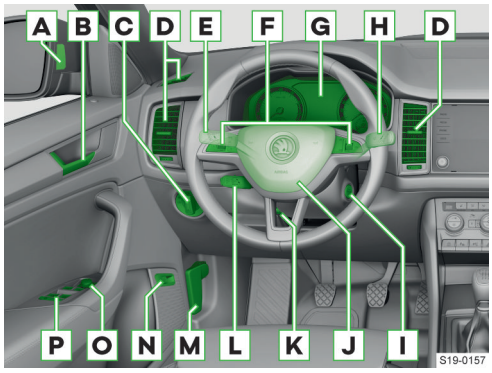
D Swivelling hitch » page 226

E Fuel filler flap » page 195
- ▸ Sticker with tyre pressures » page 209
- ▸ Sticker with prescribed fuel
- ▸ Ice scraper
- ▸ Filler neck of the AdBlue® tank » page 195

F Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » page 171

› Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » page 16.

Driver's seat



A Side Assist lane change assist system indicator light » page 181

B Door opening lever » page 27

C Light switch » page 48

D Air outlet nozzle

E Control lever:
- Flashing and high beam » page 48
- Cruise control » page 177
- Speed limiter » page 176
- High-beam assist system » page 50

F Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel » page 63

G Depending on the equipment:
- Analogue instrument cluster » page 61
- Digital instrument cluster » page 61

H Control lever:
- Windscreen wipers and washers » page 55

I Depending on the equipment:
- Ignition lock » page 163
- Starter button » page 164

J Steering wheel with horn/with driver's front airbag » page 46

K Safety lever for steering wheel adjustment » page 38

L Operation of the automatic distance control » page 178

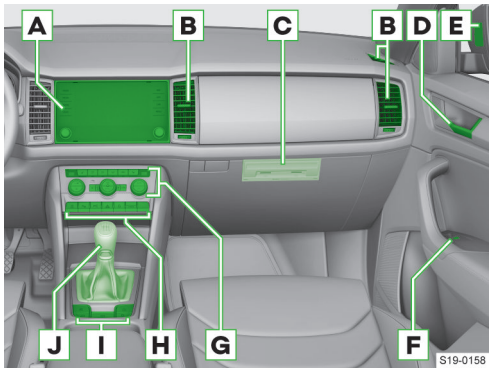
M Bonnet release lever » page 192

N Button for the electric boot lid » page 32

O Exterior mirror operation » page 40

P Window operation » page 28

Centre console and passenger seat



A Infotainment (depending on trim level):
- Columbus » page 130
- Amundsen » page 102
- Bolero » page 82
- Swing » page 67

B Air outlet nozzle

C External Infotainment module (in the passenger storage compartment) » page 130

D Door opening lever » page 27

E Side Assist lane change assist system indicator light » page 181

F Window operation in the passenger door » page 28

G Operation (depending on the trim level):
- Heating
- Manual air conditioning » page 57
- Climatronic » page 58

H Buttons/warning lights (depending on the specification)

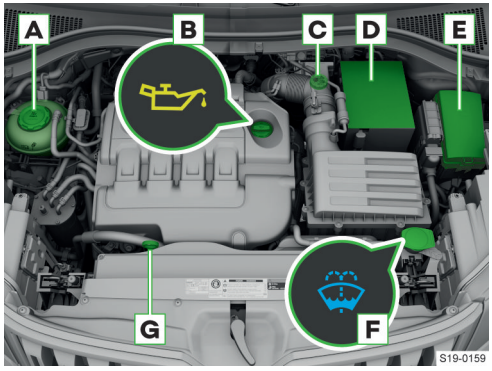
Buttons:
- Ⓐ START-STOP » page 165
- P Park Assist » page 189
- P Park Pilot » page 185
- ⚠ Hazard warning light system » page 48
- Central locking » page 24

Indicator lights:
- Front passenger airbag ON / OFF » page 47

I Buttons (depending on the trim level):
- MODE Driving mode selection » page 167
- Ⓐ Auto Hold » page 173
- Ⓟ Parking brake » page 172
- OFF Stabilisation Control ESC / Traction Control ASR » page 174
- HOLD Offroad mode » page 167

J Depending on the equipment:
- ▸ Shift lever (manual transmission) » page 165
- ▸ Selector lever (automatic transmission) » page 166

Engine compartment



A Coolant expansion tank » page 193
B Engine oil filler opening » page 192
C Brake fluid reservoir » page 172
D Vehicle battery » page 199
E Fuse box » page 203
F Windscreen washer fluid reservoir » page 55
G Engine oil dipstick » page 192

Indicator lights

Functionality

⚠ **WARNING**
Ignoring the illuminated indicator lights and associated messages on the instrument cluster display may result in accidents, serious injury or damage to the vehicle.

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster indicate the current status of certain functions or faults.

The illumination of some of the indicator lights may be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the instrument cluster display.

Colour display of the indicator lights
Depending on the vehicle equipment, the colour scheme of the indicator lights may vary. The coolant indicator light can, e.g. be shown in colour as follows.

- - colour display
- - black and white display

Additional indicator lights
Depending on the meaning, the additional indicator light will also light up in the display along with some of the indicator lights.

⚠ - Danger
⚠ - Warning

Indicator light overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights for the functional test of the vehicle systems light up briefly. If the tested systems are in order, the respective indicator lights go out a few seconds after the ignition is switched on or after the engine has been started.

For further details » page 10, *Functionality*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates a warning together with another warning light » page 10.
	Front seat belt not fastened » page 41.
	Vehicle battery is not charging » page 199.
	Along with - Engine fault » page 194, » page 199.
	Engine oil pressure too low » page 192.
	Engine oil level too low » page 193.

Symbol	Meaning
	Coolant level is too low » page 194.
	Coolant temperature too high » page 194.
	Brake fluid level is too low » page 172.
	Together with - Brake system and ABS faulty » page 175.
	Parking on a slope with too much inclination » page 173.
	Parking brake on » page 172.
	Illuminates - Power assisted steering faulty » page 39.
	Flashing - Steering lock faulty » page 39.
	Automatic gearbox impaired » page 167.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » page 167.
	Warning if there is a risk of a collision » page 175.
	ACC does not decelerate sufficiently » page 178.
	Indicates a warning along with another warning light » page 10.
	The fuel supply has reached the reserve area. » page 197, » page 198.
	Windscreen washer fluid level too low » page 56.
	Bulb faulty » page 50.
	Rear fog light switched on » page 49.
	Engine oil level too high **or** engine oil level sensor impaired » page 193.
	Clogged particle filter » page 194.
	Parking brake error » page 173.
	ABS faulty » page 175.
	Worn brake pads » page 172.

Symbol	Meaning
	Automatic gearbox overheated » page 167.
	Automatic gearbox impaired » page 167.
	Water in the diesel fuel filter » page 195.
	Tyre pressure control system faulty » page 210.
	Tyre pressure change » page 205, » page 209, » page 210, » page 211.
	Illuminates - Power assisted steering faulty » page 39.
	Flashing - Steering lock not unlocked » page 39.
	Flashing - Steering lock faulty » page 39.
	Adaptive suspension faulty » page 168.
	Petrol engine control faulty » page 194.
	Emission control system faulty » page 195.
	illuminates, if relevant, does not illuminate after switching on the ignition - Diesel preheating system faulty » page 194.
	Flashing - Diesel engine control faulty » page 194.
	Flashes together with - Key switch for airbag deactivation faulty » page 47.
	Front passenger airbag switched off » page 47.
	Front passenger airbag switched on » page 47.
	Airbag system faulty » page 47.
	Crew Protect Assist faulty » page 183.
	Illuminates for 4 seconds **and then flashes** - Airbag or belt tensioner deactivated with diagnostic device » page 47.
	Illuminates 4 s - Front passenger airbag deactivated with key switch » page 47.

Symbol	Meaning
	Ball rod not locked » page 227.
	ESC Offroad is activated » page 168.
	ESC Sports enabled » page 174.
	ASR deactivated » page 174.
	Illuminates - ESC or ASR faulty » page 175.
	Flashing - ESC or ASR is engaged » page 174.
	Front Assist deactivated » page 175.
	ACC not available » page 180.
	Lane Assist is activated, but not ready to intervene » page 180.
	Lane Assist is activated, but not ready to intervene » page 180.
	Turn signal light, left » page 48, » page 50.
	Turn signal light, right » page 48, » page 50.
	Trailer turn signal light » page 50.
	Front fog lights switched on » page 49.
	The selector lever is locked » page 166.
	Vehicle is secured by Auto Hold » page 173.
	Lane Assist is ready to intervene or is currently intervening » page 180.
	Lane Assist is ready to intervene or is currently intervening » page 180.
	ACC controls the driving speed » page 178.
	ACC controls the driving speed » page 178.
	The cruise control system controls the driving speed » page 177.
	Speed limiter controls the driving speed » page 176.
	Low outside temperature » page 62.
	High beam or flasher activated » page 48.

Symbol	Meaning
	Rear seat belt not fastened » page 41.
	A rear seat belt is fastened » page 42.
	High beam Assist System switched on » page 50.
	No light is switched on » page 48.
	AdBlue®level too low » page 196.
	AdBlue®system impaired. » page 196.
	Adaptive suspension faulty » page 168.
	Service event » page 228.
	Engine was switched off automatically by START-STOP » page 165.
	Engine was not automatically switched off via START-STOP » page 165.
	Speed limiter faulty » page 177.
	Speed limiter activated » page 176.
	ACC not available » page 180.
	ACC activated » page 178.
	Cruise control system faulty » page 178.
	Cruise control activated » page 177.
	The Hill Descent Assist System is activated » page 184.
	Hill Descent Assist System intervenes » page 184.
	Front Assist deactivated » page 175.
	Front Assist is started » page 175.
	Safety distance too small » page 175.
	Consumption-friendly driving » page 169.
	Break recommendation » page 183.

Symbol	Meaning
	Driving mode Normal » page 168.
	Driving mode Eco » page 168.
	Comfort Driving Mode » page 168.
	Driving mode Individual » page 168.
	Offroad Driving Mode » page 168.
	Driving mode Sport » page 168.
	Snow Driving Mode » page 168.

Indicator light overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights light up briefly as a function test of the vehicle systems. If the tested systems are in order, the respective indicator lights go out a few seconds after the ignition is switched on or after the engine has been started.

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates a warning together with another warning light » page 10.
	Front seat belt not fastened » page 41.
	Vehicle battery is not charging » page 199.
	Along with - Engine fault » page 194, » page 199.
	Engine oil pressure too low » page 192.
	Engine oil level too low » page 193.
	Coolant level is too low » page 194.
	Coolant temperature too high » page 194.
	Brake fluid level is too low » page 172.
	Together with - Brake system and ABS faulty » page 175.
	Parking on a slope with too much inclination » page 173.
	Parking brake on » page 172.

Symbol	Meaning
	Illuminates - Power assisted steering faulty » page 39.
	Flashing - Steering lock faulty » page 39.
	Automatic gearbox impaired » page 167.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » page 167.
	Warning if there is a risk of a collision » page 175.
	ACC does not decelerate sufficiently » page 178.
	Indicates a warning along with another warning light » page 10.
	The fuel supply has reached the reserve area. » page 197, » page 198.
	Windscreen washer fluid level too low » page 56.
	Bulb faulty » page 50.
	Rear fog light switched on » page 49.
	Engine oil level too high **or** engine oil level sensor impaired » page 193.
	Clogged particle filter » page 194.
	Parking brake error » page 173.
	ABS faulty » page 175.
	Worn brake pads » page 172.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » page 167.
	Automatic gearbox impaired » page 167.
	Water in the diesel fuel filter » page 195.
	Tyre pressure control system faulty » page 210.
	Tyre pressure change » page 205, » page 209, » page 210, » page 211.
	Illuminates - Power assisted steering faulty » page 39.
	Flashing - Steering lock not unlocked » page 39.

Symbol	Meaning
	Flashing - Steering lock fault- ty » page 39.
	Adaptive suspension fault- ty » page 168.
	Petrol engine control fault- ty » page 194.
	Emission control system fault- ty » page 195.
	illuminates, if relevant, does not illuminate after switching on the ignition - Diesel preheating system fault- ty » page 194.
	Flashing - Diesel engine control fault- ty » page 194.
	Flashes together with - Key switch for airbag deactivation fault- ty » page 47.
	Front passenger airbag switched off » page 47.
	Front passenger airbag switched on » page 47.
	Airbag system faulty » page 47.
	Crew Protect Assist fault- ty » page 183.
	Illuminates for 4 seconds **and then flashes** - Airbag or belt tensioner deactivated with diagnostic device » page 47.
	Illuminates 4 s - Front passenger airbag deactivated with key switch » page 47.
	Ball rod not locked » page 227.
	ESC Offroad is activated » page 168.
	ESC Sports enabled » page 174.
	ASR deactivated » page 174.
	Illuminates - ESC or ASR fault- ty » page 175.
	Flashing - ESC or ASR is engaged » page 174.
	Front Assist deactivated » page 175.
	ACC not available » page 180.
	Lane Assist is activated, but not ready to intervene » page 180.

Symbol	Meaning
	Lane Assist is activated, but not ready to intervene » page 180.
	Turn signal light, left » page 48, » page 50.
	Turn signal light, right » page 48, » page 50.
	Trailer turn signal light » page 50.
	Front fog lights switched on » page 49.
	The selector lever is locked » page 166.
	Vehicle is secured by Auto Hold » page 173.
	Lane Assist is ready to intervene or is currently intervening » page 180.
	Lane Assist is ready to intervene or is currently intervening » page 180.
	ACC controls the driving speed » page 178.
	ACC controls the driving speed » page 178.
	The cruise control system controls the driving speed » page 177.
	Speed limiter controls the driving speed » page 176.
	Low outside temperature » page 62.
	High beam or flasher activated » page 48.
	Rear seat belt not fastened » page 41.
	A rear seat belt is fastened » page 42.
	High beam Assist System switched on » page 50.
	No light is switched on » page 48.
	AdBlue®level too low » page 196.
	AdBlue®system impaired. » page 196.
	Adaptive suspension fault- ty » page 168.
	Service event » page 228.

Symbol	Meaning
	Engine was switched off automatically by START-STOP » page 165.
	Engine was not automatically switched off via START-STOP » page 165.
	Speed limiter faulty » page 177.
	Speed limiter activated » page 176.
	ACC not available » page 180.
	ACC activated » page 178.
	Cruise control system faulty » page 178.
	Cruise control activated » page 177.
	The Hill Descent Assist System is activated » page 184.
	Hill Descent Assist System intervenes » page 184.
	Front Assist deactivated » page 175.
	Front Assist is started » page 175.
	Safety distance too small » page 175.
	Consumption-friendly driving » page 169.
	Break recommendation » page 183.
	Driving mode Normal » page 168.
	Driving mode Eco » page 168.
	Comfort Driving Mode » page 168.
	Driving mode Individual » page 168.
	Offroad Driving Mode » page 168.
	Driving mode Sport » page 168.
	Snow Driving Mode » page 168.

Correct and safe

Introductory notes for correct use

- Read this Owner's Manual carefully, as proceeding in accordance with this manual is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle. This Owner's Manual should therefore always be in the vehicle.
- When using the vehicle, the generally binding legal provisions that are specific to the country must be observed. Such as those for transporting children, switching off airbags, using tyres, road traffic and the like.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights and loads.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load.
- Use the specified fuel and operating fluids.
- Drive on roads that meet the technical vehicle parameters. Obstacles that exceed the ground clearance of the vehicle can damage the vehicle when driving over them.
- Care must be taken during operations related to operation, maintenance and self-help to avoid damage to the vehicle or injury. If required, seek the help of a specialised garage.
- All work on the vehicles and safety systems e.g. on the seatbelts or the airbag system, may only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- When using accessories, please note the instructions in the accessory manufacturer's instruction manual. These include child seats, roof racks, compressors etc.
- Please note the service intervals.

New vehicle or new parts

New vehicle - Running in the engine
Driving style during the first 1500 km determines the quality of the engine run-in process.

- During the first 1000 km, rev the engine to max. 3/4 of the highest permissible engine speed and avoid using a trailer.
- Over the next 500 km, the engine speed can be slowly increased.

Depending on driving style and operating conditions, the engine consumes some oil, up to 0.5 l/1000 km. Consumption may be higher over the next 5000 km.

New brake pads
New brake pads do not provide the optimum braking effect during the first 200 km, they have to be worn in first. Therefore, drive very carefully.

New tyres
New tyres do not have optimum grip for the first 500 km. Therefore, drive very carefully.

Regular checks

What should be taken into account before driving?
A vehicle with technical defects can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

Eliminate any defects before driving. If required, seek the help of a specialised garage.

Pay special attention to the following points.

- Is the tyre undamaged?
- Is the tyre tread sufficient?
- Is the tyre pressure sufficient?
- Do the headlamps, brake and turn signals work?
- Is the windscreen in good condition?
- Is the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level OK?
- Is the air intake in the engine compartment free from obstruction?
- Are the air outlet nozzles or air intake in front of the windscreen free from obstruction?
- Are the windscreen wiper and washer system and windscreen wiper blades functional?
- Is the windscreen washer fluid level sufficient?
- Are the windscreen wiper blades in good condition?
- Are all seatbelt system components in good working order? Are the seatbelts clean and have the buckles been unclogged?
- Is the spoiler working properly?
- Are parts and components of the vehicle still visibly attached?
- Are there no oil stains or other operating fluids under the vehicle?

No improper vehicle adjustments

Improper modifications can cause interference and affect safety-related functions and other functions of the vehicle.

- Adjustments and technical modifications to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Do not cover the engine with additional insulation materials, e.g. a blanket.

Keeping sensors and cameras in working order

Some functions of your vehicle are supported by sensors and cameras inside and outside the vehicle.

The rear-mounted accessories, e.g. bike rack, may affect system and camera functionality.

- Do not cover or put a sticker over the sensors and cameras and keep them clean.

- If there is damage suspected to the sensors or cameras, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine compartment

Before opening the engine compartment flap
Risk of scalding! Do not open the engine compartment flap if steam or coolant comes out of the engine compartment.

- Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
- Remove the ignition key. On vehicles with a keyless unlocking system, open the driver's door.

When working in the engine compartment
- Keep children away from the engine compartment.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan can turn itself on, even when the ignition is off.
- Do not touch electrical cables. Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, especially on the vehicle battery.
- Do not smoke near the vicinity of the engine and refrain from handling open flames or sparks.
- If you need to work in the engine compartment with the engine running, be mindful of rotating engine parts and electrical equipment.
- Do not leave any objects in the engine compartment.

Handling operating fluids
Your vehicle needs various fuels to operate that can affect health or the environment when they are emitted. These include fuel, oils, battery acid, coolant and brake fluid or AdBlue®.

- Only use operating fluids outdoors or in well-ventilated areas. If required, wear protective equipment.
- Do not use or check operating fluids with the engine running.
- In the event of contact with operating fluids, wash affected areas with warm water. If required, seek medical help.
- The leaked engine oil in the engine compartment can cause a fire, so wipe it off with a cloth.
- Store soiled cloths in a well-ventilated area until disposal. Cloths with residues of engine oil can ignite and cause a fire.

Vehicle battery

Handling the vehicle battery
Battery acid is highly corrosive. Improper handling of the vehicle battery can cause an explosion, fire, chemical burns or poisoning!

- When handling the vehicle battery, eye and skin protection must be worn.
- Do not tilt the vehicle battery, as it may leak battery acid.
- If battery acid comes into contact with skin, wash the affected areas with water for a few minutes. Get medical help without delay.
- Do not charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery. Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Do not use a damaged vehicle battery.
- Short circuit! Do not connect the battery terminals.

Using electrical sockets in the vehicle

Improper handling of sockets can lead to life-threatening electric shock or fire.

- The sockets may get hot during operation. Do not touch hot sockets.
- Protect sockets from liquids.
- If moisture gets into the socket, let the socket dry before reusing it.
- Do not insert any objects into the socket contacts.

Before your journey

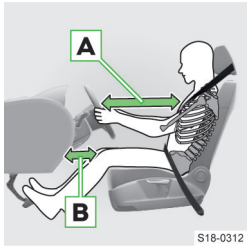
Adults and children, cargo and objects - everything has its place in the vehicle. Observe the following instructions so that all occupants are protected in the best possible way in the event of an accident.

Before you go
- Ensure that you have a good view of outside the vehicle. Attach external devices (e.g. navigation system) so that they do not restrict the view externally.
- Adjust the rearview mirrors.
- Close all doors and the engine compartment and boot flap.
- Take up the correct sitting position, adjust the seats correctly and fasten the seat belt properly. Ensure that passengers do likewise. Always leave the seat belt on while driving.
- Only one person can be secured with a seat belt.
- Make sure that the seat belts are not trapped, e.g. in the door or in the seat.
- Check seat belts, their locks and attachment points for damage.

Sitting safely
For the safety of the occupants and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

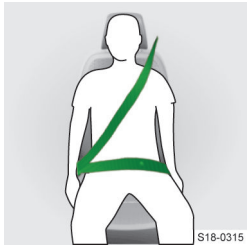
- Stand the backrests upright. If the front passenger seat backrest has been folded forward, only the seat behind the driver's seat may be used for transporting passengers.
- Engage the rear seat backrests correctly.

- ▶ Adjust the height-adjustable headrest so that the top of the headrest is as close as possible to the top of the head.
- ▶ On the occupied rear seat, the headrest should not be in the lower position although the upper edge of the headrest should be at the same height as the top of the head.
- ▶ Keep your feet in the footwell.
- ▶ Use the entire seat.
- ▶ Do not lean forward or sit to the side.
- ▶ Do not hold your limbs out the window.



- › Adjust the driver's seat in the longitudinal direction so that the pedals can be fully pushed through with slightly bent legs.
- › Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A between the steering wheel and sternum is at least 25 cm.
- › For vehicles with driver's knee airbag, adjust the driver's seat longitudinally so that the distance B from the legs to the dash panel in the area of the knee airbag is at least 6 cm.
- › Adjust the angle of the backrest so that the steering wheel can be reached at the top with your arms slightly bent.
- › Move the passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a minimum distance of 25 cm from the dash panel.

Correct belt webbing arrangement



The webbing arrangement is extremely important for the seat belts to offer the best possible protection.

- ▶ The shoulder strap must run over the middle of the shoulder, must never run over the neck, and must lie firmly against the body (it must not run over loose layers of clothing).
- ▶ The lap belt part must be placed in front of the pelvis and fit tightly.
- ▶ In pregnant women, the lap belt part must be as low as possible on the pelvis, so that no pressure is exercised on the abdomen.
- ▶ The webbing must not be pinched or twisted and rub against sharp edges.
- ▶ The webbing must not pass over solid or fragile objects in clothing, such as a key ring, etc.
- ▶ The tongue may only be inserted into the buckle of the associated seat.
- ▶ The webbing must be tight. Therefore, do not attach clamps or similar items to the webbing for adjusting the seat belt according to body size.

Correct steering wheel position

- ▶ Hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position. Otherwise, you may experience serious injury to the arms, hands and head when deploying the airbag.

Be mindful of the effect of the airbag system

Airbag systems can only properly protect if all occupants have been secured and they are in the correct seating position.

No persons, animals or objects such as cup holders or hangers for clothes may be in the deployment area of the airbags » page 46.

- ▶ Do not cover or stick anything over the steering wheel or the dash panel. The front airbags were not able to deploy.

The front passenger airbag should be switched off in some situations » page 47.

Securing children properly

- ▶ Do not carry a child on your lap, and secure the child and yourself with a seat belt.
- ▶ Only transport children in a suitable child seat » page 43.

Children under 150 cm tall will not be properly protected without a child seat. Children that have been inadequately secured can be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident or a sudden manoeuvre. You can cause life-threatening injuries to yourself and other occupants.

If children lean forward or assume a wrong sitting position while driving, they are more likely to be injured in the event of an accident. This is especially true for children who are carried in the passenger seat - when the airbag system triggers, they can be seriously injured or killed!

A child that has been incorrectly secured in the wrong sitting position - endangered by the side airbag

The child should not be in the deployment area of the side airbag.

A child that has been properly secured in a child seat

There must be enough room between the child and the exit area of the side airbag for the side airbag to offer the best possible protection.

Transporting objects safely
When moving heavy objects, there is a shift in emphasis. Thus, the driving behaviour of the vehicle changes.

- ▶ Adjust driving speed and driving style to this changed driving behaviour.

Unsecured or misplaced items may be thrown around in the event of an accident or sudden manoeuvre. There is a risk of serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle!

In a rear-end collision at 50 km/h unsecured objects are thrown forward with up to 50 times their weight. A 1.5 litre water bottle is thrown up to 75 kg.

- ▶ Transport objects securely.
- ▶ Stow objects so they do not hinder the driver. Keep the driver footwell clear.
- ▶ Stow small items in the storage compartments.
- ▶ Do not leave lockable storage compartments open.
- ▶ Do not let items protrude out of the slots. This note does not apply to bottles in bottle trays.
- ▶ Do not place any objects on the dash panel or on the luggage compartment cover.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of fasteners and shelves.
- ▶ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment and fasten it so it cannot slip.
- ▶ Place heavy objects in the luggage compartment as far forward as possible.

Safe driving

Introductory notes
- ▶ Pay attention when you are driving! As a driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.
- ▶ Always adjust driving speed to the road conditions as well as the traffic and weather conditions.

Paying attention to warning signals
The driver information system warns you with indicator lights and messages in the event of any faults.

Failure to follow the warnings may increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

- ▶ If the vehicle issues a warning signal, then park the vehicle safely and follow the information in the instrument cluster, and in this manual.

Using assistance systems in a clever way
The assistance systems are only for support and do not absolve you from your responsibility for driving the vehicle.

The assistance systems are subject to physical and technical limitations. Therefore, in certain situations, system reactions may be perceived as undesirable or delayed.

- ▶ Stay alert and be ready to intervene.
- ▶ Familiarise yourself with the assistance systems, their limitations and operating conditions.
- ▶ Activate, deactivate and adjust the assistance systems so that you have full control of the vehicle in any traffic situation.

Driving with a substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel
A substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel is only used to reach the nearest specialist garage.

- ▶ Inflate the wheel with the max. prescribed inflation pressure.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the warning label on the rim.
- ▶ Do not cover the warning sign.
- ▶ Avoid full accelerations, strong braking and fast cornering.
- ▶ Do not drive with more than one mounted spare wheel.
- ▶ Avoid using snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.

Driving with a loaded roof rack
When transporting objects on the roof rack, the vehicle's driving behaviour changes.

- ▶ Adapt your speed and driving style to this.

Towing a trailer
The vehicle's handling characteristics change with a trailer. The assistance systems may behave differently.

- ▶ Drive more slowly, excessive speed can lead to loss of control of the vehicle.
- ▶ Keep a larger distance from the vehicle in front.
- ▶ Do not exceed the max. vertical load and the permissible trailer load.

Driving through water
There must be no water ingress into the vehicle systems e.g. into the engine's air intake system!

- ▶ Therefore, determine the water depth before driving through water. The water level must not exceed the lower edge of the lower beam.
- ▶ Drive at max. walking speed. Otherwise, a wave may form in front of the vehicle, increasing the water level.
- ▶ Never stop in the water, do not drive backwards and never stop the engine.

Vehicle operation in different weather conditions
If you wish to operate your vehicle in countries with different weather conditions from those specified, please contact a ŠKODA Partner. They will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle or to prevent damage (e.g. coolant, battery replacement, etc.).

Is something wrong?
- ▶ Pay attention to changes in vehicle handling.
- ▶ If in doubt about safety, stop driving and seek the help of a specialist garage.
- ▶ Unusual vibrations or the vehicle 'pulling' to the side may indicate a puncture.
- ▶ If tyre pressure loss is very quick, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.
- ▶ Immediately remove foreign bodies stuck in the tyre tread.
- ▶ Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated into the tyre. Check the tyre pressure and seek the help of a specialised garage.
- ▶ Immediately remove any objects jammed under the floor of the vehicle. These can damage the vehicle or ignite and cause a fire.

Parking the vehicle safely
A vehicle that has not been secured may roll away and cause accidents.

- ▶ For parking, look for a place with suitable ground. Do not park the vehicle on flammable materials such as dried leaves, spilt fuel. Hot vehicle parts can cause a fire.

Carry out the following activities in the specified order when parking.

- › Stop the vehicle and keep the brake pedal depressed.
- › Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- › For vehicles with an automatic gearbox, put the selector lever in the **P** position.
- › Turn off the engine.
- › For vehicles with manual transmission, engage 1st gear or reverse gear.
- › Release the brake pedal.

Exiting the vehicle
Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle!

- ▶ Children may injure themselves when handling the seats, releasing the parking brake etc.
- ▶ In emergency situations, children are not able to leave the vehicle on their own or help themselves.
- ▶ At very high or very low temperatures, there is danger to life!
- ▶ When locking the vehicle, the SAFE function switches on. As a result, no doors or windows can be opened from the inside. Turn off the SAFE function if people are left behind in the locked vehicle » page 23.

Emergency call

⚠ **WARNING**
Availability of a mobile network is indispensable for establishing a connection to the emergency number.

⚠ **WARNING**
This emergency service is only available in some countries.

⚠ **WARNING**
If the vehicle is located in an area without a functioning emergency call system infrastructure, no vehicle data shall be transmitted to the emergency call centre.

After the start of the conversation, the emergency call centre also contains information as to the accident location and the severity of the accident, the number of occupants with seatbelts on and the vehicle identification number (VIN).

Once the connection has been established, communication with the emergency call centre takes place via the loudspeaker and microphone installed in the vehicle.

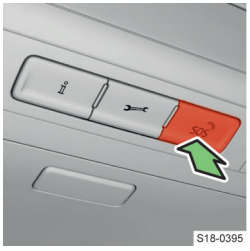
Personal data
Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions in the area of personal data protection.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data can be found on the following website: https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data.

Serious accident - automatic call
In the event of an accident where the airbag or belt tensioner activates, a call is automatically started with the emergency call centre.

Minor accident - call option
The Infotainment screen displays the option to set up a connection to the emergency call centre or breakdown service.

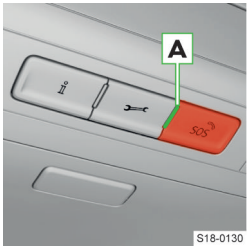
Manual call



› Keep the SOS key pressed down.
› Confirm the connection to the emergency call centre in the Infotainment screen.
› To cancel the connection to the emergency call centre before starting the call, press the SOS button again or confirm the cancellation of the connection in the Infotainment screen.

Starting a manual conversation can then be used, for example, if you also report an accident in which you are not directly involved.

Indicator light



The system state is displayed after the ignition is switched on by the warning light A illuminating.

▸ Green - lit up - the system is functional.
▸ Green - flashing - a call is being made to the emergency call centre.
▸ Red - lit up - there is a system failure, immediately seek the help of a specialist garage.
▸ Not lit up - the system is out of order due to a long term unavailable mobile network, if this circumstance persists, the system will require the assistance of a specialist garage.

⚠ **WARNING**
If there is a system fault, no emergency call is possible.

After an accident

What to do after an accident
Where possible, please observe the following instructions.

› Switch off the ignition.
› Turn on the hazard warning lights.
› Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
› Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
› Report the accident to the emergency services.
› Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

Safety systems
After an accident, the safety systems of the vehicle, e.g. seatbelts and airbag system, may be out of action.

▸ Have the vehicle's safety systems checked by a specialist garage, even if no load or trip has occurred.
▸ Have damaged, loaded or triggered components of the safety systems replaced by a specialist garage.

What to do in the event of a fire
Where possible, please observe the following instructions.

› Switch off the ignition.
› Turn on the hazard warning lights.
› Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
› Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
› Report the fire to the emergency services.
› Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

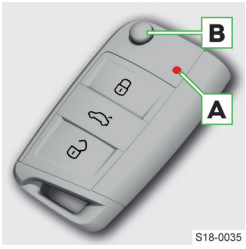
Keys, locks and alarm system

Key

Key Overview

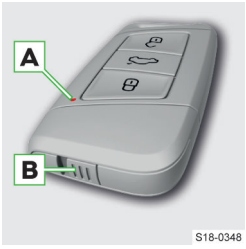
The vehicle has one of the following keys.

Key with pop-out key bit



- Locking the vehicle
- Operating the boot lid
- Unlocking the vehicle
- A Battery status warning lamp
- B Locking button for folding the key bit in/out

Key with removable key bit



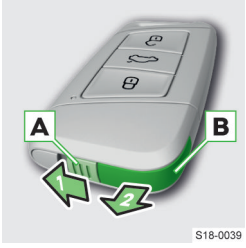
- Locking the vehicle
- Operating the boot lid
- Unlocking the vehicle
- A Battery status warning lamp
- B Locking tab for removal of the key bit

NOTICE

- Protect the key from moisture and strong vibrations.
- Keep the grooves in the key clean.

The effective range of the key signal is about 30 m. The effective range can be reduced, e.g. due to signal interference from other transmitters.

Removing the key bit



› Unlock the securing tab A.

› Remove the key bit B.

Troubleshooting

The battery in the key is almost empty

- After pressing a button on the key, the warning light does not flash.

Or:

- A message stating it is necessary to change the battery will be displayed.

› Replace the battery » page 22.

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control

There may be the following reasons.

- The battery in the key is empty.

› Replace the battery » page 22.

- The key is not synchronized.

Synchronize the key as follows.

› Press one of the buttons on the key.

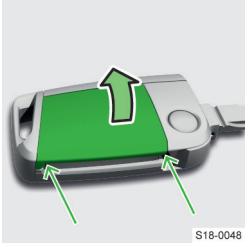
› Unlock the door within 1 minute with the key via the locking cylinder » page 25.

If necessary, the key must be synchronized if one of the buttons on the key has been repeatedly pressed outside of the effective range of the remote control.

Changing the key battery

The new battery must comply with the specification of the original battery.

Key with pop-out key bit



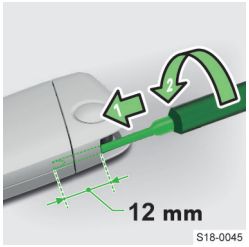
› Fold out the key bit.

› Release the battery cover with your thumbnail or by inserting a flat-head screwdriver at the marked points.

› Open the battery cover.

› Remove the battery.
› Press any button on the remote key to reset the key.
› Insert the new battery.
› Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks into place.

Key with removable key bit



› Remove the key bit.
› Insert a small flat-head screwdriver into the resulting opening.
› Loosen the battery cover by turning the screwdriver.

› Slide off the battery cover.

› Remove the battery.
› Press any button on the remote key to reset the key.
› Insert the new battery.
› Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks into place.

Memory function of the key

Functionality

Applies to vehicles that do not have the personalisation function.

Each time the vehicle is locked, the position of the driver's seat and rearview mirror are stored in the memory of the remote key being used to lock the vehicle.

Operation

Retrieve stored position
› Unlock the vehicle and open the driver's door.

The driver's seat and the exterior mirrors occupy the position assigned in the memory to the key used to unlock the vehicle.

Stop position change
› Press any button on the seat to be adjusted.

Or:

› Press the button on the key.

Settings

Activate and deactivate the memory function of the key
The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror position for driving forwards
Storing takes place automatically every time the vehicle is locked.

The seat position can be stored if the angle of inclination of the seat back relative to the seat surface is less than approximately 110° and the seat is not in any of the end positions.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror position for reversing
› Unlocking the vehicle with the key.
› Turn on the ignition.
› Activate the folding function of the mirror in the Infotainment in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

› Turn the exterior mirror knob to the position R.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear.

The set mirror position is saved.

Central locking

Functionality

Central locking system
The system unlocks and locks all doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid at the same time.

Unlock indicator: double flashing of the indicator lights.

Lock indicator: single flashing of the indicator lights.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then it will start flashing regularly at longer intervals.

If none of the doors or the boot lid is opened within 45 seconds of unlocking, the vehicle automatically locks again.

SAFE function
Depending on the equipment, the SAFE function can be integrated into the central locking system.

The SAFE function prevents the doors from opening from the inside once the vehicle is locked.

The SAFE function switches on when the vehicle is locked.

In the display of the instrument cluster after the ignition is switched off, a message regarding the SAFE function is displayed.

⚠ **DANGER**
Risk of death!
▶ When the vehicle is locked and the SAFE function is switched on, nobody is allowed to remain in the vehicle.

Turn off the SAFE function
▶ By double locking within 2 seconds.

Or:

▶ Together with the deactivation of the interior monitoring » page 26, *Settings*.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then goes out and starts flashing regularly at longer intervals after about 30 secs.

When the SAFE function is switched off, the door can be opened from the inside by pulling once on the opening lever.

The SAFE function is switched on again after unlocking and locking the vehicle.

Operation

Ways in which central locking operates
Depending on the equipment:
▶ Key » page 22.
▶ Keyless locking (KESSY)» page 25
▶ Central locking button.

Lock/unlock using the central locking button
› Press the button in the centre console.

The symbol in the button comes on when locked.

The button locks all of the doors and the boot lid.

Unlocking of the vehicle also takes place when opening a door from the inside or when removing the key from the ignition.

⚠ **WARNING**
A locked vehicle with a central locking button makes it difficult for responders to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

Setting the unlocking and locking function

The lock and unlock functions are set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

All doors
Unlocking of all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Single door
Using the button on the key, the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the door near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by touching the door handle.

When unlocked again, the other doors and the boot lid are unlocked.

Doors on one side of the vehicle
Using the button on the key, the doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the doors on the passenger's side near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by touching the door handle.

When unlocked again, the other doors and the boot lid are unlocked.

Automatic locking after starting
After starting, all doors and the boot lid are locked when a speed of 15 km/h is reached.

Unlocking of the vehicle takes place when opening a door from the inside or when removing the key from the ignition.

⚠ **WARNING**
An automatically locked vehicle makes it difficult for responders to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

Troubleshooting

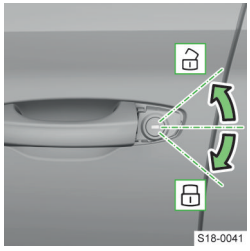
Central locking fault
▶ The warning light in the driver's door first flashes for 2 secs in quick succession.

▶ Then it lights up continuously.
▶ After 30 secs, it flashes slowly.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Mechanically unlocking and locking the door

Unlocking and locking the door with the lock cylinder

Remove the cover
› Pull on the door handle of the vehicle and hold it.
› Insert the key bit into the recess on the underside of the cover.
› Lift the cover in the direction of the arrow.
› Release the door handle.

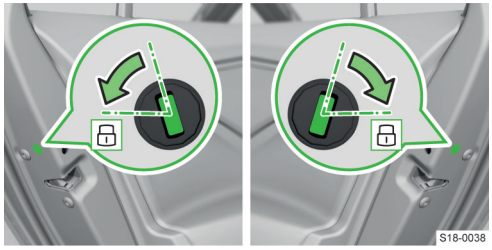


Unlocking and locking using a key with a fold-out key bit
› Left-hand drive: Insert the key with the buttons facing **upwards** into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock.
› Right-hand drive: Insert the key with the buttons facing **downwards** into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock.

Unlocking and locking using a key with a removable key bit
› Insert the removed key bit with the handle facing **downwards** into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock it.

Install cover
› Pull on the door handle and hold it.
› Replace the cover.
› Release the door handle.

Locking the door without the lock cylinder



› Open the door.
› For vehicles with a panel over the opening, remove the panel.
› Insert the key or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
› Turn the key or flat-head screwdriver towards the outside of the vehicle (spring-loaded position).

After closing, the door is locked.

Keyless locking (KESSY)

Usage

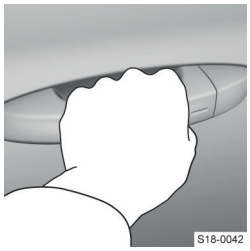
The keyless locking system, KESSY, enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

Operation

Keep the key with you when unlocking and locking.

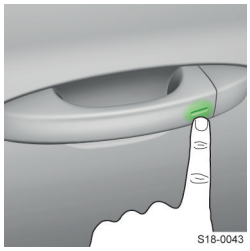
The sensors on the handle are intended to be operated with bare hands, e.g. wearing gloves may affect the function of the sensors.

Unlocking



› Grab the door handle.
› Open the door.

Locking



› Touch the sensor.

After locking, it is not possible to unlock within 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

Unlocking the boot lid

› Press the handle of the boot lid.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle

If the key is locked inside the vehicle, the vehicle will unlock itself automatically. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

If the key is locked in the boot, the boot lid will automatically unlock itself.

Deactivate keyless locking

› Lock the vehicle with the button on the key.
› Within 5 s, touch the sensor on the door handle with your finger.

Deactivation is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.

› To check the deactivation, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the door handle.

The door must remain locked.

Keyless locking is automatically activated once again after the vehicle is unlocked.

Troubleshooting

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked using the sensors on the handle

› Lock or unlock the vehicle with the button on the key.
› Then try to unlock or lock the vehicle using the sensors on the handle.
› If keyless locking does not work, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Alarm system

Functionality

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals during a break-in or towing attempt.

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

The alarm system is automatically deactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Alarm triggering

The activated alarm system triggers an alarm when one of the following events occurs.

▸ Opening the bonnet.
▸ Opening the boot lid.
▸ Opening the door.
▸ Manipulation of the ignition lock.
▸ Towing the vehicle.
▸ Movement in the vehicle.
▸ Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system.
▸ Uncoupling the trailer.
▸ Opening the door unlocked via the lock cylinder.

Switching off the triggered alarm

› Unlock the vehicle.

Or:

› Turn on the ignition.

Operating conditions

For the correct functioning of the alarm system, all windows must be closed.

A trailer is integrated into the alarm system under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with a towing device.
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle via the trailer socket.
✓ The trailer is not equipped with LED taillights.

If the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted on a vehicle with an activated alarm system, warning signals are triggered.

Disable the alarm before connecting or disconnecting a trailer.

Settings

The following functions of the alarm system can be deactivated at the same time.

▸ Interior monitoring.
▸ Towing protection.

Deactivation will also switch off the SAFE function » page 23, *Functionality*.

Deactivation

▸ By double locking within 2 seconds.

Or:

▸ In Infotainment, in the menu: CAR > > > menu item for interior monitoring.

Or:

▸ In Infotainment, in the menu: MENU > > > > menu item for interior monitoring.

The deactivated functions are reactivated after the vehicle is unlocked and locked again.

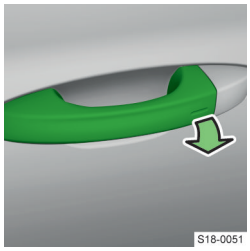
Deactivation is to be carried out if the vehicle is, for example, towed or transported.

Doors, windows and boot lid

Doors

Opening/closing the door

Opening from the outside



› Unlock the vehicle and pull on the door handle.

Opening from the inside

› Pull the door opening lever and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

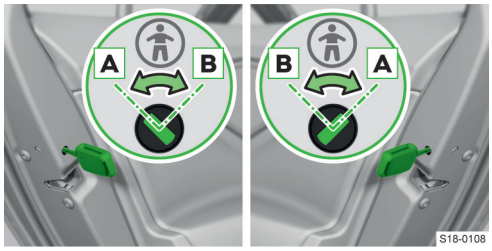
› Grasp the pull handle and close the door.

Child safety lock on the rear doors

Operation

The child lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

Switching on and off



› Turn the fuse with the vehicle key or a flat-head screwdriver.

A Child lock switched off

B Child lock switched on

Electrically operated fuse

› Press the **left** button to switch on/off the fuse in the **left** rear door.

› Press the **right** button to switch on/off the fuse in the **right** rear door.

The fact that the fuse is switched on can be seen by the illuminated displayed in the button.

The fact that the fuse is switched on can be seen by the illuminated displayed in the button.

Protective door strip

What you should be mindful of

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the strip, the door and the body!

- Do not open the door too hastily or abruptly.
- Do not hold the door on the strip when opening and closing, as the strip must be able to move in and out freely.
- If the strip prevents the door from closing freely, do not close the door forcefully! Remove the strip, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Functionality

Depending on the trim level, the doors can each be equipped with a protective strip. This moves out when opening the door and protects the central area of the door edge from damage.

When the door closes the protective strip retracts.

Self-help

Replacing the damaged strip

CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- Be careful when handling the strip.

› Remove the strip from the door.

NOTICE

▸ If any part of the strip remains in the door, seek the help of a specialist garage.

› Insert a new strip in the grooves.
› Press in the strip.

A new strip can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.

Window - with electrical operation

What you should be mindful of

Force limiter
To reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the windows, the vehicle has a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the window closing process is stopped and the pane retracts by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the it from being closed for the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

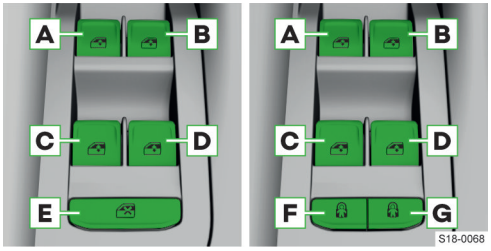
If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time, it is not possible to automatically close the windows by pulling the button all the way. The force limiter is, however, switched on.

The force limiter is only not operational if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – the window will now close with full force! If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

CAUTION
Risk of injury!

▸ Close the windows carefully, even though they have a force limiter.

Overview of the operating buttons on the driver's door



Depending on the equipment:

A Window on the front left
B Window on the front right
C Rear left window
D Rear right window
E Deactivation/activation of the buttons in the rear doors
F Deactivation/activation of the key in the left rear door (part of the child safety lock with electric operation)
G Deactivation/activation of the key in the right back door (part of the child safety lock with electric operation)

Operation

Opening
› Press the corresponding button slightly downwards and hold it until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

› Press the corresponding button until it stops; the window opens automatically. Pressing the button again will stop the opening process.

Closing
› To close, pull gently upwards on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

› Pull the corresponding button until it stops; the window closes automatically. By pressing the button again, the closing process is stopped.

After switching off the ignition, the windows can still open and close for about 10 minutes so long as none of the doors are opened.

Open all of the windows at the same time

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and hold down the driver's window button until it stops.

Depending on the setting, only the driver's window can be opened in this way.

Close all of the windows at the same time

› Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

› Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and pull upwards on the driver's window button until it stops.

Or:

› For vehicles with a keyless locking system, hold one finger on the sensor on the outside of the handle on the front door.

Depending on the setting, only the driver's window can be closed in this way.

Settings

The window operation is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > > > Menu item for window operation

Or:

MENU > > > > Menu item for window operation

Troubleshooting

The window regulator has stopped working after repeated opening and closing

The window regulator mechanism could have overheated.

› Allow the window regulator mechanism to cool down.

The automatic window operation does not work after disconnecting the vehicle battery

› Enable automatic window operation » page 29.

Activation after disconnecting the vehicle battery

Activate automatic window operation

› Turn on the ignition.

› Pull the corresponding button upwards and the window closes.

› Release the button.

› Pull up the respective button and hold for 1 second.

Sliding/tilting roof

What you should be mindful of

Force limiter

To reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the tilt/slide sunroof, the vehicle has a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the glass panel closing process is stopped and the pane retracts by several centimetres.

If the obstacle is not removed, the force limiter will be disabled during the third closing attempt. The sliding/tilting roof will then close with full force.

⚠ **CAUTION**

Risk of injury!

▸ Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully, even though there is a force limiter.

Ⓘ **NOTICE**

▸ During winter time, if necessary, remove any ice and snow around the area of the sliding/tilting roof before opening.

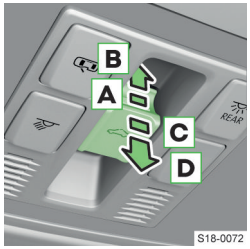
▸ Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

Operating conditions

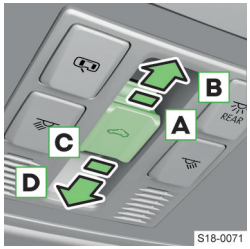
✓ The ignition is switched on.

✓ The outside temperature is higher than -20 °C (applicable for the opening of the sliding/tilting roof).

Operation



A Gradual opening
B Complete opening
C Gradually reset
D Fully reset



A Gradual opening
B Full opening
C Gradual closing
D Complete closing

After moving the switch to the position B the sliding/tilting roof is in the low-noise position (at a speed of about 80 km/h).
After another movement to position B the sliding/tilting roof opens completely.

After switching off the ignition, the sliding/tilting roof can still open and close for about 10 minutes so long as none of the doors are opened.

Comfort operation of the tilting/sliding sunroof
The comfort operation makes it possible to lock the sliding/tilting roof with the key if necessary.

› Press and hold the button to **turn it off**.
› Press and hold the button to **close** it.

On vehicles with a keyless locking system, it is possible to **close** the sliding/tilting roof via the sensor in the door handle of the front door.

› Hold one finger on the sensor on the outside of the handle on the front door.

Troubleshooting

Operation of the sliding/tilting sunroof does not work after disconnecting the vehicle battery
› Activating operation of the sliding/tilting sunroof » page 30.

Activation after disconnecting the vehicle battery

Activating operation of the sliding/tilting sunroof

› Turn on the ignition.
› Pull the switch all the way down and hold it down.
After about 10 secs, the sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again.
› Release the switch.

Sunblind - with electrical operation

Operation

Opening
Closing

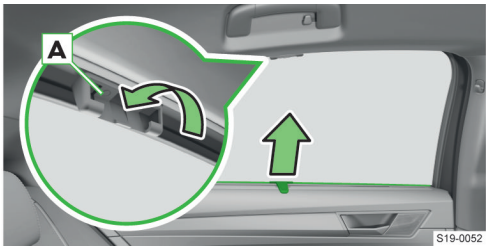
› Press or hold the button to **move** the roller blind.
› Press or release the button to **stop** the roller blind from moving.

Activation after disconnecting the vehicle battery

› Turn on the ignition.
› Keep the button pressed down. The sunblind opens and closes again.
› Release the button.

Sun protection roller blinds for the rear door panes

Operation

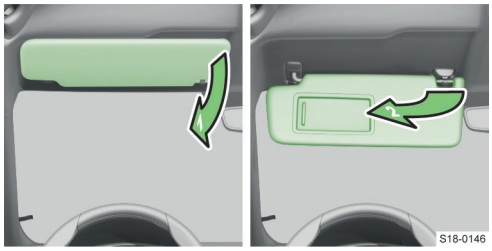


Brightness protection
› Pull out the sun protection blind by the handle and hang it into the holder A.

Rolling up
› Remove the sun protection blind from the holder at the handle and let it roll in slowly.

Sun visors

Folding up and folding down



1 Swivel the front visor towards the windscreen
2 Swivel the visor towards the door

Heated windscreen

Usage

Windscreen heating is used for defrosting or ventilating the windscreen.

Conditions

✓ The engine is running.

Operation

Heated rear window

› Press the key to turn on the heated rear window.

Heated windscreen

› Press the key to turn on the heated windscreen.

Windscreen heating switches off automatically after 10 minutes.

Settings

Automatic heated windscreen

The heated windscreen switches on automatically if the windscreen mists up.

This function is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

› Press the key MENU on the Climatronic control panel >, tap in the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Tap on MENU > > in the Infotainment screen.

Troubleshooting

The indicator light in the button or below the button flashes

The heating does not work as the battery charging level is low.

Boot lid - with manual operation

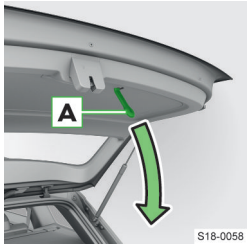
Operation

Opening

› Press the handle and lift the lid.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once a speed of 5 km/h is reached. This is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Closing



› Grasp the fixture A and pull the lid down.

⚠ **CAUTION**

Danger of opening the lid while driving!

▸ Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid.

Set a delayed lid lock

If the lid is unlocked with the button on the key, the lid is automatically locked again after closing.

The period after which the lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

Boot lid - with electrical control

Operation

⚠ CAUTION
Risk of injury!
▸ Only operate the flap when there is nobody or no objects in the swivel area.

⚠ CAUTION
Danger of opening the lid while driving!
▸ Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid.

NOTICE
▸ Do not manually close the tailgate when moving.
▸ Before operating the tailgate, check that there are no objects in the swivel area that could damage the tailgate. Also check that there are no objects within the immediate vicinity of the vehicle that could damage the vehicle interior and the transported objects.

If the tailgate hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

When automatically closing the tailgate, e.g. under the weight of snow, a broken beep sounds.

Handle in the tailgate

› Press the handle to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once a speed of 5 km/h is reached. This is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Button in the tailgate

› Press the button to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

Button in the door

› To open the tailgate, pull and hold the button until the tailgate starts to open.
› To close the tailgate, pull and hold the button until the tailgate is fully closed.
› To stop the movement of the tailgate, pull or release the button.

Button on the key

› Press the button to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

The option to lock exists only on vehicles with a keyless locking system. The key must not be in the vehicle and must be at a distance of max. 2 m from the tailgate.

The tailgate can also be closed by pulling it briefly downwards.

Settings

Set the uppermost position of the tailgate and store it
It makes sense to set the top position of the tailgate, e.g. setting for the opening of the tailgate in a limited space due to the garage height.

› Stop the lid in the desired position.
› Press the button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

Re-adjusting the top starting position of the lid
› Carefully raise the flap manually to the limit.
› Press the button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

Troubleshooting

The tailgate does not react to the opening signal
› There is a possible obstacle, e.g. snow; remove it.

Or:

› Press the handle in the tailgate and lift the lid.

Or:

› Mechanically unlock the flap » page 33.

The tailgate does not react to the closing signal
› Close the tailgate manually.

NOTICE
▸ Close the tailgate slowly, push down the tailgate and push in the lock on the centre of the rear edge of the tailgate.

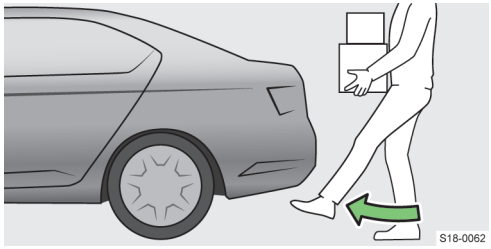
Electrically operated contactless boot lid

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition switched off.
✓ You have the vehicle key with you.
✓ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

Opening/closing the lid



› Quickly swing a foot under the rear bumper in the sensor area.

If the lid doesn't move, wait a few seconds and repeat the swing motion.

Closing display
When you close the lid, audible signals are sounded.

Stopping/ restoring lid movement
The lid movement can be stopped by a rapid swinging motion with your foot. Lid movement is restored by a subsequent swinging motion with your foot.

Restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases.

▸ Downpour.
▸ Dirty rear bumper.

Settings

Activating and deactivating
The function is activated and deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

We recommend that the function is deactivated in the following cases:

▸ Installation of a roof rack.
▸ Coupling a trailer or another accessory to the hitch.
▸ Car wash.
▸ Maintenance and repair work in the back of the vehicle.

Unlocking the boot lid

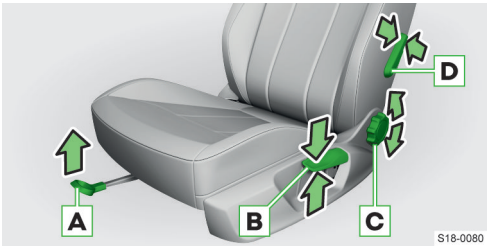
Unlocking

› Insert a screwdriver into the opening in the panel.
› Release the flap by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Seats, steering wheel and mirror

Front seat - with manual operation

Controls on the seat



A Adjusting the seat in the longitudinal direction - after releasing the operating lever, the lock must audibly click into place

B Adjusting the height

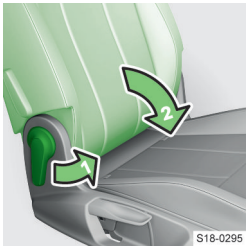
C Adjusting the angle of the backrest - do not lean against the backrest during adjustment

D Adjusting the extent of the curvature of the lumbar support

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Folding passenger seat backrest

Folding down



› Pull on the operating lever.

› Fold the backrest forwards until it clicks into place.

Folding back up

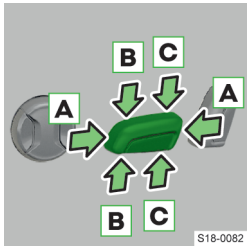
› Pull on the operating lever.

› Press the backrest backwards until it audibly clicks into place.

Front seat - with electrical operation

Controls on the seat

Adjusting the seat

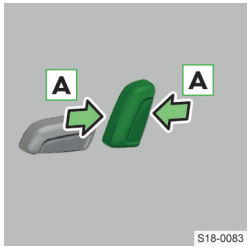


A Adjust in a longitudinal direction

B Adjust the inclination

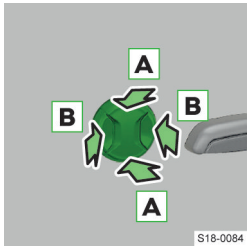
C Adjusting the height

Adjusting the seat back



A Adjust the inclination

Adjusting the lumbar support



A Set the position of the curvature

B Set the extent of the curvature

Memory function of the seat

Functionality

Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

Each of the memory buttons on the driver's seat can be used to store and recall the set driver's seat and exterior mirror position.

Depending on the equipment, the front passenger seat may also have a memory function.

Operation

Retrieve stored position

› With the ignition off and the driver's door open, **press** the desired memory button.

› In other instances, **hold** the key for example with the ignition switched on or the driver's door closed.

The passenger seat position can be retrieved in the same way.

Stop position change

› With the ignition off and the driver's door open, **press** any button on the seat to be adjusted.

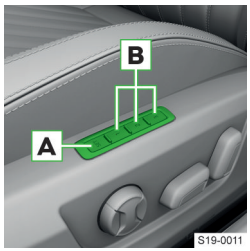
Or:

› Press the button on the key.

› In other cases, **release** the held memory button.

Settings

Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror position for driving forwards



› Turn on the ignition.

› Adjust the seat and the exterior mirrors.

› Press the button A and within 10 seconds one of the memory buttons B.

Storing is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

The seat position can be stored if the angle of inclination of the seat back relative to the seat surface is less than approximately 110° and the seat is not in any of the end positions.

Save front passenger seat position

Storing the passenger seat position is analogous to storing the driver's seat position.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror position for reversing

› Turn on the ignition.

› Activate the folding function of the mirror in the Infotainment in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

› Turn the exterior mirror knob to the position R.

› Engage reverse gear.

› Adjust the mirror to the desired position.

› Disengage reverse gear.

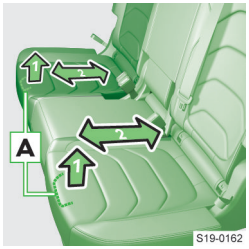
The set mirror position is saved.

When changing the stored seat and exterior mirror position for forward driving, the passenger exterior mirror position for reverse driving must be restored.

Second row of seats

Setting the second row of seats

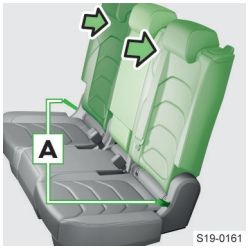
Move seats in a longitudinal direction



› Pull on the lever A and move the seat.

The seat must audibly click into place.

Adjusting the inclination of the seat backrests



› Pull on the loop A and adjust the inclination of the seat backrests.

The rest must click into place.

Access to the third row of seats

Applicable to the seven-seater variant of the vehicle.

› Pull the release handle.

› Fold the seat back forwards and move the seat forwards.

› To get to the third row of seats more easily, attach the seat belt to the strap.

Set the seat in the starting position

› Adjust the seat forwards/backwards

› Fold the seat backrest back up.

› Check this by pulling on the seat and on the seat backrest.

Folding down the seat backs

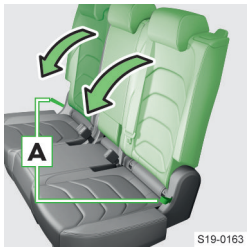
Before folding down

NOTICE

Risk of damaging the fins of the air outlet nozzles and the front seats.

- ▸ Adjust the headrests of the second row of seats so that they are as low as possible.
- ▸ Adjust the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded-down seat backrests.

Folding the backrests forwards from the passenger compartment



- › Pull on the loop A.
- › Fold the backrest forwards until it clicks into place.

Folding the backrests forward from the luggage compartment

- › Pull on the lever.

  The backrest is unlocked and partly folded forwards.
- › Fold the backrest forwards until it clicks into place.

Fold back the backrests

- › Pull on the loop.
- › Press the backrest backwards until it audibly clicks into place.

Fold the middle backrest forwards

- › Press the safety button and fold the backrest forwards.

Fold the middle backrest backwards

- › Press the backrest backwards until it audibly clicks into place.

Park position of rear seat belts

Third row of seats

Folding the third row of seats upwards and forwards

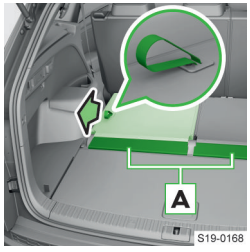
Before folding down

- › Move the second row of seats forwards.
- › Remove the roll-up luggage compartment cover.

Folding down

- › Press the release handle.
- › Fold the seat backs forwards.

Folding back up



- › On vehicles with a variable loading floor, the folding components A are placed on the variable loading floor.
- › Pull on the loop.

  The seat backrest mechanism must audibly snap into place.

Before folding up

- › Release the latches of the seat belts.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to belt buckles, buckle tongues and seats.

- ▸ The straps must be fully retracted.
- › Fold the seat backs forwards.

Folding up

› Pull on the loops at the same time.

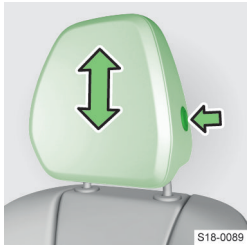
Folding down

› Press on the seats.

Headrests

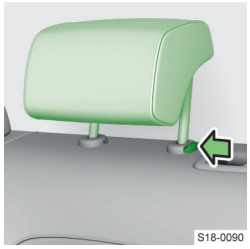
Adjusting the height of the headrests

Front headrests



› Hold the safety button and move the headrest in the desired direction.

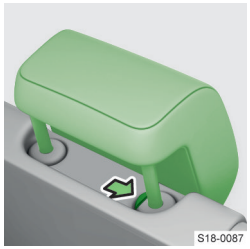
Headrests in the second row



› Move the headrest in the desired direction.

When pushing down, press and hold the safety button.

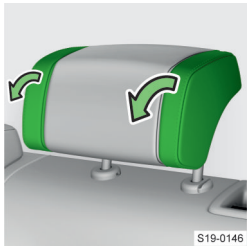
Headrests in the third row



› Move the headrest in the desired direction.

When pushing down, press and hold the safety button.

Folding side bolsters on the rear headrest



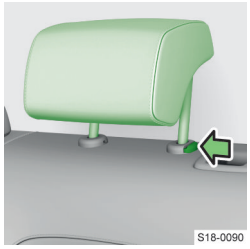
The folded down side bolsters reduce uncontrolled sideways head movement , e.g. when sleeping.

› Adjust the headrest to the initial pulled out position.
› Fold down the side bolsters on the head rest.

Removing and inserting the rear headrests

Removing

Applies to the second row of seats.



› Partially fold the respective seat back forwards.
› Move the headrest up to the stop.
› Press the safety button and remove the support.

Inserting

› Insert the headrest into the seat backrest.

The safety button must click into place.

Front armrest

Settings

Adjusting the height
› Raise the backrest to one of the locked positions.

Folding down
› Raise the backrest beyond the highest locked position and fold it down again.

Adjust in a longitudinal direction
› Move the backrest to the desired position.

Rear armrest

Settings

› Fold down the armrest.

The folded-down armrest can be used as a storage table.

Seat heating and ventilation

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of burns!
▸ Do not switch on the seat heater for persons with limited perception of pain or temperature.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of seat damage!
▸ Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise puncture them.
▸ Do not turn on the heater in the following situations.
  ▸ The seat is not occupied.
  ▸ There are objects on the seat, such as a child seat.
  ▸ There are additional seat covers or protective covers on the seat.

Conditions

✓ The engine is running.

Operation

Depending on the equipment, the front seats can be heated or heated and ventilated. The outer rear seats can only be heated.

Models without seat ventilation
› Press the or key to switch on the seat heating.

The seat heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

The heat output is determined by the number of illuminated indicator lights that are shown in the key or in the Climatronic display.

Models with seat ventilation
› Press the or button.

The Infotainment screen displays a menu for operating the front seat heater and ventilation.

› Adjust the heating output/ventilation level.

If the seat heating and ventilation functions are both switched on at the same time, the heating output/ventilation level can only be adjusted in the Infotainment screen.

Display heating output/ventilation level from the button
– – – Seat heating switched on
– – – Seat ventilation switched on
– – – Seat heating and ventilation switched on

Settings

Lock increases in heat output for the rear seat heater
› To turn the function on or off, press the MENU button on the Climatronic > REAR/REAR in the Infotainment screen.

Or:

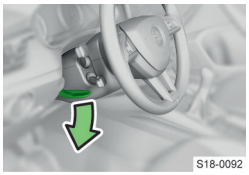
› Tap on MENU > ❄ > REAR/REAR in the Infotainment screen.

When the function is switched on, the heating output can only be turned down.

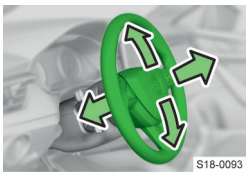
Steering wheel

Adjust the steering wheel

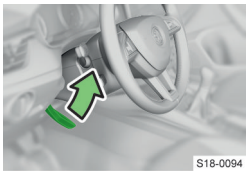
⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
▸ Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.



› Swing the safety lever downwards.



› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



› Press the safety lever as far as it will go.

Troubleshooting

Power assisted steering faulty

illuminates - total failure of the power assisted steering, failure of steering assistance

› Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few meters.
› If the indicator light does not go out, stop driving. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

illuminates - partial failure of the power assisted steering, possible reduction in power steering

› Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few meters.
› If the indicator light does not go out, continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Steering column lock faulty

flashing
Message regarding a fault in the steering column lock

› Stop the vehicle.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching off the ignition, it is then no longer possible to switch on the ignition, to lock the steering and to switch on the electrical components.

flashing
Message regarding a fault in the steering lock

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Steering column lock not unlocked

flashing
Message concerning the required steering wheel movement

› Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth.
› If the steering does not unlocked, stop the vehicle and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Heated steering wheel

Conditions

✓ The engine is running.

Operation

Turn steering wheel heating on/off
Applies to Climatronic.

› Press the MENU key on the Climatronic, tap the › / on the Infotainment screen to turn on steering wheel heating.

Or:

› tap MENU › ❄ › / in the Infotainment screen, to turn on steering wheel heating.

Adjust the heating output of the heated steering wheel

› Tap › *Steering wheel heating* on the Infotainment screen to adjust the heating level.

The output level of the heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the switch.

Settings

Steering wheel heating together with driver's seat heating
Applies to Climatronic.

When the function is switched on, pressing the button for the driver's seat heating also turns steering wheel heating on or off.

Turn on the function as follows.

› Press the MENU button on the Climatronic in the › Infotainment screen and select the menu item for coupling the seat and steering wheel heating.

Or:

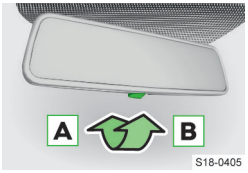
› Tap on MENU › ❄ › in the Infotainment screen and select the menu item for the coupling of the seat and steering wheel heating.

When the function is switched on, the function surface is displayed in the Infotainment screen. This can be used to switch steering wheel heating on or off.

Interior rear-view mirror

Operation

Interior mirror with manual darkening



A Mirror is not darkened
B Mirror darkens

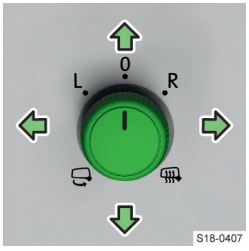
Interior mirror with automatic darkening
Darkening of the mirror is automatically controlled through the sensors in the mirror once the engine is started.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of an accident!
A glowing display e.g. a mobile phone or navigation device may affect the function of the automatic mirror darkening.
▸ Do not attach these devices close to the mirror.

Exterior mirror

Operation

Positions of the rotary knob
The mirrors can be folded manually or electrically, depending on the equipment.



L Adjust the left mirror
0 Switch off operation
R Adjust the right mirror
Fold mirror in electrically (to fold back out, select a different position)
Heat the mirror when the engine is running

Adjusting the mirror surface
› Select position L or R.
› Turn the rotary knob in the direction of the arrows.

Folding electrically folding mirrors automatically
The mirrors fold in when the vehicle is locked and fold back out when the vehicle is unlocked, if this feature is activated.

Locking of the vehicle is not indicated by the fact that the mirrors fold in. Locking of the vehicle is indicated by the turn signal lights flashing.

Manually foldable mirrors
› Fold the mirror towards the side window by applying pressure with your hand.

Setting the mirror surfaces synchronously
When adjusting the mirror surface of the driver's mirror, the mirror surface of the front passenger's mirror is adjusted at the same time if this function is activated.

Mirror with memory function
Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The current setting for the exterior mirror surfaces can be stored in the memory of the driver's seat » page 35 or the remote key » page 23.

Lower the passenger mirror surface when reversing
Valid for vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The mirror surface of the passenger mirror takes in the memory of the driver's seat » page 35 or the remote key » page 23 stored position to improve visibility when reversing.

Conditions
✓ The function can be activated in Infotainment.
✓ The mirror position is saved.
✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
✓ The adjustment knob is in the R position.

The mirror automatically resumes the home position when driving forward at speeds above 15 km/h or after the ignition is switched off.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
The exterior mirrors make objects appear farther away.
▸ Use the rear-view mirror to determine the distance from vehicles behind.

NOTICE
Danger of mirror damage!
▸ If the electrically foldable mirror is swung out by external influences (e.g. due to an impact during manoeuvring), fold the mirror in using the rotary knob and wait for an audible folding sound.

Settings

Activation or deactivation of the automatic folding of the exterior mirrors, the synchronous adjustment of the mirror surfaces as well as the lowering of the passenger-side mirror surface when reversing are carried out in the Infotainment in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Troubleshooting

Electric mirror operation impaired

› Adjust the mirror surface by pressing it lightly with your finger.

⚠ **CAUTION**

Risk of burns!

▸ Do not touch heated exterior mirror surfaces.

Restraint systems and airbags

Seat belts

Functionality

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer very good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

⚠ **WARNING**

▸ The seat belts must not be removed or altered in any other way.

▸ Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself. Have a damaged seat belt replaced immediately by a specialist garage.

Automatic belt retractor

The automatic retractor locks the belt in the event of a jerky pull on the belt. The belts lock when full braking, for example when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

⚠ **WARNING**

▸ If the seat belt does not lock when pulled jerkily, have the retractor checked by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

The safety for the driver, front passenger and the two passengers on the outer seats of the second row of seats **who are wearing seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front seats and the outer seats of the second row of seats.

If there is a collision with a certain severity, the seat belt is tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body movement is prevented.

The belt tensioner can also be deployed when the seat belt is not fastened.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of a roll-over, **minor** collisions or in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

ⓘ Smoke is released when the belt tensioner is deployed. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Reversible belt tensioner

Vehicles with a proactive occupant protection system include reversible belt tensioners » page 183.

The reversible belt pretensioners increase safety for the belted driver and front passenger by automatically tightening the seat belt tightly over the body in critical driving situations and then releasing it again.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

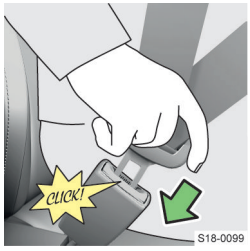
illuminated – a front seat belt is not fastened

illuminated – a rear seat belt is not fastened

illuminated – a rear seat belt is fastened.

Operation

Fastening the seat belt

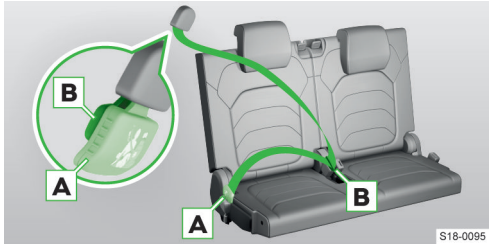


› Grasp the buckle latch and slowly pull the belt over the chest and pelvis towards the buckle.
› Insert the buckle latch into the buckle until there is an audible click.
› Pull on the belt to ensure that the buckle is securely fastened.

Unfastening the seat belt

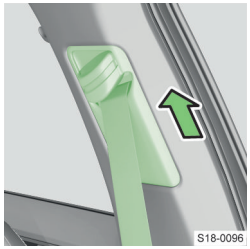
› Grasp the buckle latch and release it by pressing the red button.
› Hold the belt so it does not twist when rolling up.

Put on belt with two buckle latches and put down

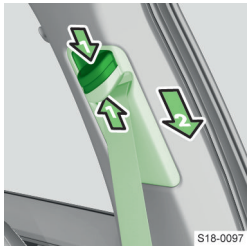


› Pull the belt slowly by the buckle latch A to **put it on**.
› Insert the buckle latch A into the buckle until there is an audible click.
› Use the buckle latch B to slowly pull the belt over your chest and pelvis.
› Insert the buckle latch B into the second buckle until there is an audible click.
› Pull on the belt to ensure that the buckle latch is securely fastened.
› **To take it off** take the buckle latch B and release by pressing the red button.
› Grasp the buckle latch A and release it by pressing the red button.
› Hold the belt so it does not twist when rolling up.

Setting



› Move the seat belt height adjuster upwards to increase the height.



› Press the safety button and move the seat belt height adjuster down to reduce the height.
› After adjustment, firmly pull on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place and that the belt is locked securely.

Troubleshooting

Blocked belt retractor

› Grasp the strap in the middle and pull quickly in the direction of the arrow.
› Hold the strap and let it roll up slowly.
› Pull on the strap to see if the retractor is working properly.
› If the strap is still blocked, repeat the unlocking procedure once or twice.
› If the strap is still blocked, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Child seat

What you should be mindful of

For how to install and use the child seat, please follow the instructions in this Owner's Manual as well as the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

For safety reasons, we always recommend that children are transported on the back seats. Carry children on the front passenger seat only in exceptional cases.

Use child seats in accordance with the ECE-R 44 European Economic Commission standard.

Child seats according to in accordance with the ECE-R 44 standard are marked with the test symbol: a large E in a circle, with the test number below.

We recommend using child seats from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories range. These child seats have been developed and tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the standard ECE-R 44.

⚠ WARNING

- When installing the child seat on a seat in the second or third row of seats, adjust the corresponding seat in front so that there is no contact between the child seat and the seat in front, or the child being carried in the child seat.
- Before installing a forward-facing child seat, adjust the headrest so that it is as low as possible.
- If the headrest prevents the child seat from being fitted, then the headrest must be removed.

  After removing the child seat, reinstall the headrest.
- If using a separate child seat cushion, adjust the headrest so that the child's head is flush with, but not protruding above the height of the top of the headrest.

Using a child seat on the front passenger seat

Never use a child seat in which the child is carried with his or her back to the direction of travel on a seat protected by an active airbag placed in front of the seat. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

This is also indicated by the following stickers.

Sticker on the passenger sun visor.

Sticker on the central body pillar on the passenger side.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

- When using a rear-facing child seat, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated.
- If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is vertical, to ensure that there is secure contact between the backrest and the child seat.
- If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- Adjust the height-adjustable front passenger seat as much as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the seat belt causing a neck injury to the transported child!

- For child seats in groups 2 and 3, ensure that the guide fitting attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the seat belt height adjuster on the central body pillar.
- Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt passes through the guide fitting without kinking and is not bent over the edge of the guide fitting.

⚠ WARNING

- As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the front passenger seat, activate the front passenger airbag again.

Recommended child seats

Grouping of child seats according to standard ECE-R 44.

Group	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9-18 kg
2	15-25 kg
3	22-36 kg

Recommended child seats

Group	Manufacturer	Type	Attachment	Order number	Approval number (E1 ...)
0+ up to 13 kg	Britax Römer	Baby Safe Plus	Isofix base frame	1ST019907	04 301146
1 9-18 kg	Britax Römer	Duo Plus TT	ISOFIX and TOP TETHER	DDA000006	04 301133
2-3 15-36 kg	Britax Römer	Kidfix XP [a)]	Safety belt and ISOFIX/safety belt [b)]	000019906K	04 301198
	Britax Römer	Kidfix II XP	Safety belt and ISOFIX/safety belt [b)]	000019906L	04 301323

[a)] For optimum protection, especially in the event of a side impact, it is recommended that you use this child seat complete with the backrest.

[b)] Use the seatbelt attachment only when the seat is not equipped with an ISOFIX system.

Fasteners for child seats

Use of child seats

Overview of usability of child seats according to standard ECE-R 16.

Child seats that use the ISOFIX System

Group	Size category of child seat [a)]	Passenger seat with activated front airbag [b)]	Passenger seat with deactivated front airbag [b)]	Second row of seats - outer seats [c)]	Second row of seats - middle seat	Third row of seats
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	X	IL	X	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E D C	X	X	IL	X	X
1 9-18 kg	D C B B1 A	X	X	IL IUF	X	X
2 15-25 kg	-	X	X	IL	X	X
3 22-36 kg	-	X	X	IL	X	X

[a)] The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat label.

[b)] If the passenger seat is equipped with ISOFIX system holding eyelets, it is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with “Semi-Universal” approval.

[c)] The seat is suitable for an ISO / R3 fixing.

IL The seat is suitable for the ISOFIX child seats with “Semi-Universal” approval.

IUF The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats and is permitted for use in this weight category.

X The seat is not equipped with eyelets for the ISOFIX System.

i-Size

Passenger seat with activated front airbag	Passenger seat with deactivated front airbag	Second row of seats - outer seats	Second row of seats - middle seat	Third row of seats
X	X	i-U	X	X

i-U The seat is suitable for forward- and backward-facing i-Size child seats of the “Universal” category.

X The seat is not suitable for i-Sizechild seats of the “Universal” category.

Child seat fastened with a safety belt

Group	Passenger seat with activated front airbag	Passenger seat with deactivated front airbag	Second row of seats - outer seats	Second row of seats - middle seat [a]	Third row of seats [a] [b]
0 up to 10 kg	X	U [c]	U	U	X
0+ up to 13 kg	X	U [c]	U	U	X
1 9-18 kg	UF	U	U	U	X
2 15-25 kg	UF	U	U	U	L
3 22-36 kg	UF	U	U	U	L

[a] It is prohibited to install a child seat with a foot support on the middle seat of the second row and on the seats of the third row.

[b] To get to the third row of seats, follow the instructions in this Owner's Manual. When using recommended child seats on the third row of seats, adjust the second row as far forward as possible in a longitudinal direction. » page 35, *Setting the second row of seats*

[c] Adjust the height-adjustable front passenger seat as much as possible.

U The seat is suitable for the child seat category “Universal” and is permitted for use in this weight group.

UF The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats in the “Universal” category and is permitted for use in this weight group.

L The seat is only suitable for recommended child seats in category 2-3 » page 43.

X The seat is not suitable for children in this weight group.

Overview

ISOFIX

⚠ WARNING

▸ Do not attach any other child seats, straps or objects to the holding eyelets provided for the installation of a child seat using the ISOFIX system.

The ISOFIX system allows for the fast and secure installation of the child seat. The eyelets for installing the child seat using the ISOFIX system are located on the outer seats in the second row and possibly on the front passenger seat.

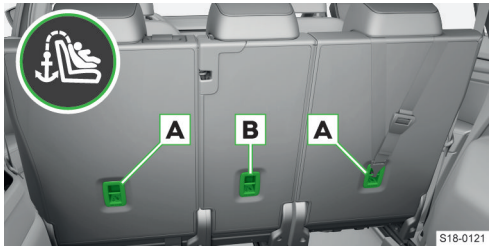
A child seat that uses the ISOFIX system can only be installed in the vehicle if it is approved for this vehicle type. Further information can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner or from a list of vehicles enclosed with the child seat.

Holding eyelets for installing the child seat using the ISOFIX system.

TOP TETHER

⚠ **WARNING**

- Child seats that use the TOP TETHER system should only be used on those seats that are fitted with holding eyelets bearing the TOP TETHER symbol.
- Only attach one fastening strap on the child seat to the holding eyelet in the TOP TETHER system.
- When attaching the child seat with the TOP TETHER system, no other object must be attached to the TOP TETHER system holding eyelet.



Holding eyelets on the rear seats in the second row

The belt fastened into the TOP TETHER system restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat. The holding eyelets for attaching the belt are located on the outer rear seats on the second row A, as well as on the middle rear seat B of the second row when necessary.

Airbags

Usage

The airbag system offers additional occupant protection in the event of severe frontal and side collisions, as a supplement to the seat belts.

The best possible protective effect of the airbag is achieved only when the seat belt is also worn. The airbag system is no substitute for the seat belts.

Functionality

When sinking into the inflated airbag, the forward movement of the body is damped and the risk of injury is reduced.

As the airbags inflate, smoke is released. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Airbag deployment in the event of an accident
Airbag deployment is influenced by many factors. The deceleration rate at the time of impact is crucial.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of serious or fatal injuries!

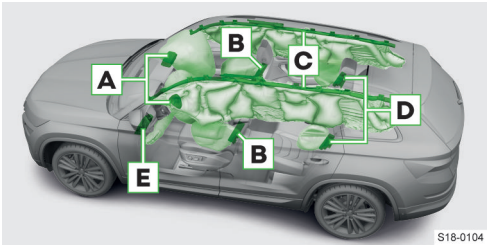
- Maintain the correct seating position.
- Do not keep your limbs in the deployment area of the airbags.

In the following situations, **no** airbags are deployed.

- Minor frontal and side collisions.
- Rear-end collision.
- Vehicle rollover.

If the measured deceleration rate is below the reference values programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be deployed despite possible serious vehicle damage.

Airbag overview



A Front airbags
B Side airbags - front
C Head airbags
D Side airbags - rear
E Driver's knee airbag

The installation location of the airbags is marked with the lettering AIRBAG.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of a functional restriction of the side airbags!

- Do not exert excessive forces, e.g. impacts, on the seat backs.
- Do not use seat covers that have not been made by ŠKODA.
- Have damaged seat covers at the installation location of the side airbags repaired by a specialist garage.

Deactivating the airbags
We recommend having airbags other than the front passenger airbag deactivated » page 47, *Operation*by a ŠKODA service partner.

Deactivation of the airbags is provided for the following cases, for example.

- If the driver's seat adjustment is correct, the distance of at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the sternum can not be maintained.
- Additional operating controls for a physically disadvantaged driver are installed in the vehicle.

▸ The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.

illuminates for 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for 12 seconds - Airbag or belt tensioner deactivated with the diagnostic device
Message regarding the deactivated airbag or belt tensioner

⚠ **WARNING**
If an airbag is deactivated during the sale of the vehicle, inform the buyer!

Conditions

✓ The ignition is switched on.

Troubleshooting

Airbag system faulty
illuminates
Message regarding an airbag fault

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Key switch for the front passenger airbag

Usage

Deactivation of the front passenger airbag is provided for the following cases, for example.

▸ A rear-facing child seat is mounted on the front passenger seat.
▸ The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of fault in the passenger airbag deactivation system!
▸ Only deactivate the airbag when the ignition is switched off!

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of unexpected deployment of the passenger airbags in an accident!
▸ If the front passenger airbag has been deactivated with the key, do not leave the key in the key switch while driving. Vibrations can cause the key to turn in the slot and activate the airbag!

Operation

Before switching off/switching on the front passenger airbag
Depending on the key type:

› Completely fold out the key bit.

Or:

› Remove the key bit.

Switch front passenger front airbag on/off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the passenger door.
› Insert the key bit into the slot in the key switch as far as it will go.
› To **Switch off**, carefully rotate the key switch into the position **OFF**.
› To **Switch on**, carefully rotate the key switch into the position **ON**.
› Remove the key bit from the slot.
› Close the passenger door.
› Turn on the ignition and check that the front passenger airbag indicator lights are lit up.

Status display in the instrument cluster display
lights up 4 secs after the ignition is switched on – passenger front airbag switched off

Indicator lights

▸ After switching on the ignition, the two indicator lights light up briefly.
▸ If the system is OK, both of the indicator lights go out.
▸ One of the indicator lights then lights up again depending on the position of the key switch.

OFF Lights up - front passenger airbag switched off

ON Lights up 65 secs after the ignition is switched on – passenger front airbag switched on

Troubleshooting

Key switch for airbag deactivation is faulty
ON flashes together with OFF
The front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident!

› Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers

Exterior lighting

Functionality

Unless otherwise stated, the light works when the ignition is switched on.

Daylight running lights
The daytime running lights illuminate the area in front of the vehicle.

For vehicles for certain markets, they also illuminate the rear vehicle area.

Operating conditions
✓ The lights switch is in position **0**, **AUTO** or .

Switching the low beam on/off automatically
The low beam is automatically switched on or off depending on the lighting conditions.

Operating conditions
✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

The automatic headlight circuit is indicated by the illumination of the symbol in the light switch.

Switching low beam on/off automatically in rain
Operating conditions
✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.
✓ The function is activated.
✓ The windscreen wipers are switched on for longer than 30 seconds.

The automatic headlight circuit is indicated by the illumination of the symbol in the light switch.

Full LED headlights
When the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the headlights provide the best possible beam of light in front of the vehicle.

CORNER function
The CORNER function is intended for turning or manoeuvring (e.g. when parking).

The function illuminates the vicinity of the vehicle front in the direction of travel.

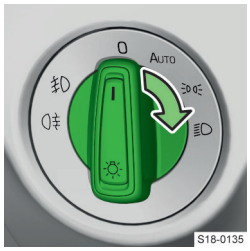
Operating conditions
✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are steered sharply.
✓ The low beam is switched on.
✓ The fog lights are not switched on.
✓ The driving speed is lower than 40 km/h.

When no light is switched on
The symbol in the light switch may also light up in the instrument cluster, indicating that it is necessary to switch on the light.

illuminates

› Switch on the light.

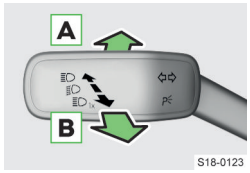
Operation



0 Switching off the lights except the daytime running lights
AUTO Switching the low beam on/off automatically
Switching on the parking lights
Switching on the low beam

As the basic position of the light switch, use position **AUTO**.

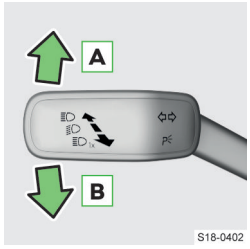
Main beam
The high beam works when the low beam is on.



A Switch on the high beam - the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates
B Switch off the high beam - in the instrument cluster, the indicator light goes out. Switch on the headlight flasher - the warning light is illuminated

⚠ CAUTION
Risk of an accident!
▶ Do not dazzle other road users with the high beam.

Turn signal



A Switching on the indicator light on the right - the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster
B Switching on the indicator light on the left - the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster

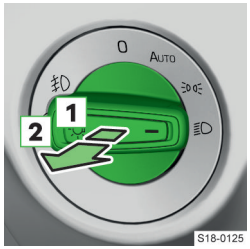
Turn signal - convenience signalling
Convenience signalling enables three flashes of the turn signal lights without having to move the lever up or down.

› Tap the control lever up or down.

The corresponding turn signal lights flash three times.

Tap the lever in the opposite direction ahead of time to stop signalling.

Fog light



Positions for pulling out the light switch

1 Fog lights - the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates

2 Rear fog light - the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates

› Turn the light switch to position **AUTO**. or .
› Pull the light switch to the appropriate position.

The rear fog light does not illuminate when an accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Hazard warning light system

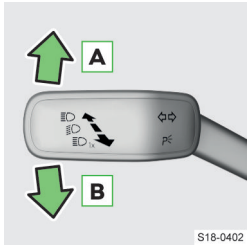
› To switch on or off, press the button in the central part of the dash panel.

When the hazard warning system is on and the turn signal is switched on, the hazard warning lights will be switched off temporarily and only the turn signal will flash on the relevant side of the vehicle.

The hazard warning lights can be switched on automatically during hard braking. The hazard warning lights are then switched off again automatically when starting off or accelerating.

One-sided parking light

The one-sided parking light allows one side of the parked vehicle to be illuminated through activation of the corresponding sidelights.



A Switch on the sidelights on the right

B Switch on the sidelights on the left

› Switch off the ignition.
› Move the lever to the appropriate position.
› Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds and the driver's door is opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

Double-sided parking light

The two-sided parking light allows the parked vehicle to be illuminated through activation of the sidelights.

› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn the light switch to position .
› Switch off the ignition.
› Lock the vehicle.

The light may switch off automatically if the battery is low. If the two-sided parking light is switched on when the ignition is switched off, the light will not switch off automatically.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

Settings

Activating/deactivating the automatic headlights system in rain
The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Activating/deactivating convenience signalling
The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Headlight range control of the Halogen headlights
The headlight range control is carried out in the Infotainment system in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

› Select the position of the control according to the vehicle's current load status.

0 Front seats occupied, boot empty
2 All seats occupied, boot empty
4 All seats occupied, boot loaded
6 Driver's seat occupied, boot loaded

In the event of another vehicle loading condition, the positions **1**. **3**. **5** can be used.

For the Full LED headlights, the headlight range control is adjusted automatically.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of an accident!
An incorrectly adjusted headlight range can cause insufficient vehicle lighting or can dazzle other road users.
▸ Adjust the headlight range correctly.

Converting the Full LED headlights for the opposite direction of traffic - driving abroad
› Switch on travel mode in the Infotainment in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Troubleshooting

Turn signal light defective

 flashes faster - turn signal light on the right defective

› Check the turn signal light on the right.

 flashes faster - turn signal light on the left defective

› Check the turn signal light on the left.

 does not flash when the trailer is hitched - trailer turn signal light defective

› Check the trailer lighting.

Light bulb or LED bulb is defective

 or illuminates

Information appears in the display regarding the affected lights.

› Replace the defective bulb.

› In case of a defective LED bulb, contact a specialist garage for help.

The headlights are misted up on the inside

Inside the headlights, moisture may occur. This is not a defect.

Malfunction of the automatic headlight circuit

› Clean the windscreen in the area of the rain/light sensor.

Beam of light in front of the vehicle has shortened

Headlight defective.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Driving lights defective

If a message regarding the failed driving lights is displayed, the light will work in emergency mode.

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME exterior lighting

Functionality

The COMING HOME function turns on the light after turning off the ignition and opening the driver's door. The light switches off automatically after the set lighting time has elapsed.

The LEAVING HOME function switches on the light when unlocking the vehicle with the wireless remote control.

Operating conditions

✓ Visibility has worsened.

✓ The light switch is in the AUTO position.

Settings

This function is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Light Assist high-beam assist system

Functionality

The high beam assist system automatically switches the high beam on and off.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

▸ If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

✓ The system is activated.

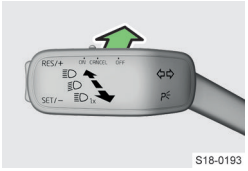
✓ The light switch is in the AUTO position.

✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h (for some countries, higher than 40 km/h).

✓ The low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



› Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

 in the instrument cluster lights up.

Switching off

› Manually switch the high beam on or off.

Settings

Activation/deactivation
The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Replace light bulbs

What you should be mindful of

DIY replacement of the following bulbs is possible. Have the remaining light sources replaced by a specialist garage.

The new bulb must conform to the specification of the original light bulb. The name of the bulb is marked on the bulb socket.

After changing a bulb in the low beam light, the main beam or fog light, have the headlights adjusted by a specialist garage.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Halogen lamps are pressurised and can burst during replacement!
▸ Wear gloves and safety goggles.

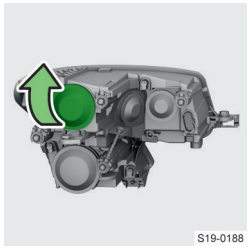
ⓘ **NOTICE**
Contamination of the halogen lamp reduces the life of the lamp!
▸ Do not touch the glass of the light bulb with your bare fingers.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Danger of headlight damage due to the ingress of water and dirt!
▸ Always fit the protective cap on the headlight correctly after changing a bulb.

Conditions for changing a bulb

✓ Ignition switched off.
✓ Light switched off.

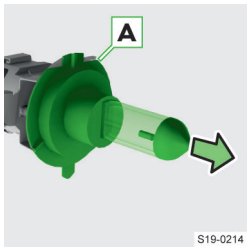
Low beam


S19-0188

› Remove the protective cap from the headlight.

S19-0196

› Turn and remove the socket with the bulb.

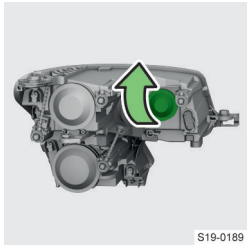


S19-0214

› Remove the bulb from the socket.
› Insert a new bulb into the socket so that the fixing lug A snaps into the recess on the bulb.
› Insert the socket with the light bulb into the headlight and turn it clockwise ↻ to secure.
› Fit the protective cap on the headlight again.

Main beam and side lights

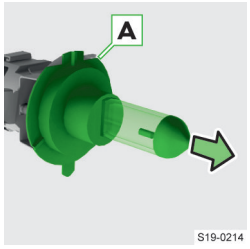
Remove protective cap from headlight


S19-0189

› Remove the protective cap.

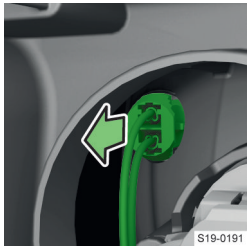
Changing the bulb for the main beam

› Turn and remove the socket with the bulb.



› Remove the bulb from the socket.
› Insert a new bulb into the socket so that the fixing lug A snaps into the recess on the bulb.
› Insert the socket with the light bulb into the headlight and turn it clockwise ↻ to secure.

Change the light bulb for the parking light



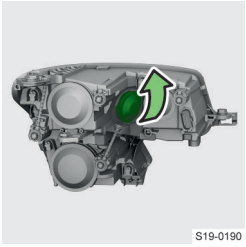
› Remove the base with the bulb.

› Change the bulb in the socket.
› Push the base with the bulb into the headlight as far as it will go.

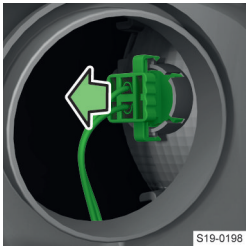
Insert the protective cap on the headlight

› Reinstall the protective cap.

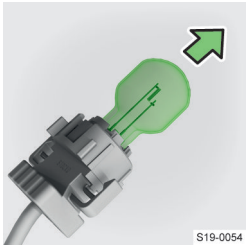
Front turn signal



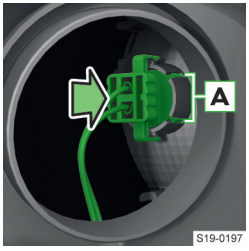
› Remove the protective cap from the headlight.



› Remove the base with the bulb.



› Change the bulb in the socket.



› Insert the socket with the light bulb into the light so that the fixing lugs A fit into the recesses on the headlight.
› Fit the protective cap on the headlight again.

Fog lights

Removing the cover cap from the wheel housing

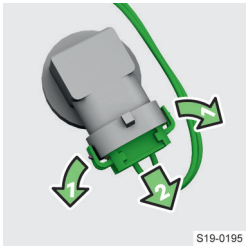
› Adjust the front wheels so that the cover cap is accessible.

› Insert the bracket from the tool kit into the recess in the cover cap.
› Remove the cover by pulling on the bracket.

Removing the defective light bulb

› Remove the rubber protective cap from the headlight.

› Turn the bulb and remove it.



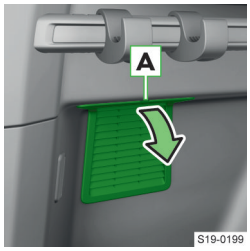
› Release the connector and remove it from the bulb.

Inserting a new bulb and cover cap in the wheel arch

› Insert the plug into the new bulb until it clicks into place.
› Insert the new bulb into the headlight so that the guide lugs on the bulb are aligned with the corresponding openings in the headlight.
› Turn the bulb clockwise ↻ to secure.
› Replace the rubber protective cap on the headlight.
› Insert the cover in the wheel arch and lock into place.

Rear turn signal

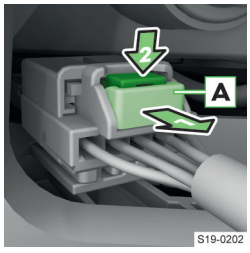
Loosen and remove the light



› Loosen and remove the grid in the area A.

› Unscrew the screw.

› Remove the light.



› Slightly pull out the lock A at the plug.
› Press the safety button and remove the plug.

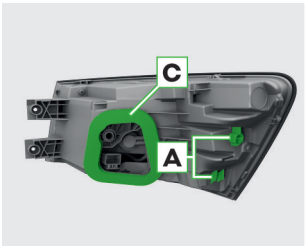
Replacing the light bulb

› Turn and remove the socket with the bulb.

› Change the bulb in the socket.
› Insert the socket with the new bulb into the light so that the guide lugs on the socket are aligned with the corresponding openings in the light.
› Turn the socket clockwise ↻ to secure.

Insert and fix the light

› Insert the connector into the light until it clicks into place.
› Push in the slightly pulled out locking device on the plug.



› Insert the lamp with the holes A onto the pins B in the body.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system due to water ingress!

▸ Make sure that the seal is inserted correctly when installing the light C.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system!

▸ Make sure that the cables between the light and the body are not pinched when the light is inserted.

› Screw the light into place.
› Reinstall the grid.

Interior lighting

Operation

Operation of the lighting

Lighting in front and rear
REAR Rear lighting
Reading lights
Automatically switch on and switch off
When the front light is set to , the rear light is automatically switched on or off.

Switching on automatically

The light switches on when one of the following events occurs.

▸ The vehicle is unlocked.
▸ One of the doors is opened.
▸ The ignition key is removed (vehicle without starter button).
▸ The ignition is switched off (vehicle with starter button).

Automatic switch off

The light switches off when one of the following events occurs.

▸ The vehicle is locked.
▸ The ignition is switched on.
▸ About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

If a door remains open and the ignition is switched off, the lights will turn off automatically after 10 minutes.

Automatic switching on/off of the footwell lighting

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

The lighting is also switched on automatically after opening the door (e.g. when getting in or out).

Turn on the lighting for the make-up mirror in the sun visors on the windscreen

› Slide on the cover of the make-up mirror.

Settings

The footwell lighting is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR › › menu item for interior lighting.

Or:

MENU › › › menu item for interior lighting.

Interior ambient light

Usage

The ambient lighting ensures a comfortable atmosphere in the vehicle interior.

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

The lighting is also switched on automatically after opening the door.

Settings

The ambient lighting is set in the Infotainment system, in the following menu.

CAR › › ☼

Or:

MENU > > >

Windscreen wipers and washers

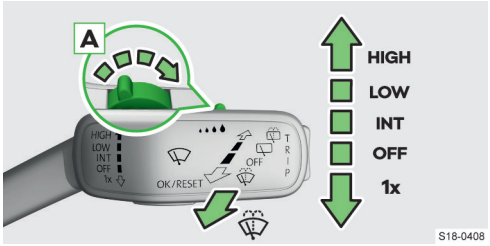
Operating conditions

✓ Engine compartment flap closed.
✓ Boot door closed.
✓ Ignition is switched on.

Operation

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
At low temperatures, windscreen washer fluid can freeze on the windscreen and restrict visibility.
▸ Only use the windscreen washer when the windscreen is warm.

Wipe and wash the windscreen



HIGH Fast wiping

LOW Slow wiping

INT Depending on the equipment:
▸ Intermittent wiping
▸ Automatic wiping controlled by the rain sensor

OFF Switching off

1x Tip-wiping (spring-loaded position)

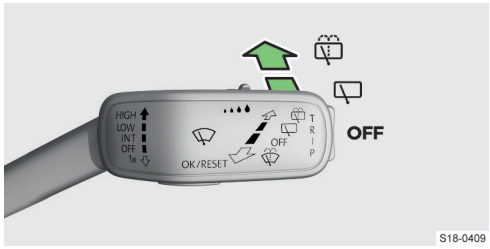
A Setting the wiping speed for the position **INT**

Washing and wiping (spring-loaded position)

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the windscreen washer nozzles of the windscreen can be heated automatically after starting the engine.

Clean headlights
When the headlights are switched on, they are cleaned the first time and after every tenth wash of the windscreen. The cleaning interval can be set by a specialist company.

Wipe and wash the rear window



Washing and wiping the window (spring-loaded position)
Washing the reversing camera (spring-loaded position)

Wiping

OFF Switching off

Automatic rear window wiping
If the windscreen wiping is performed without interruption, then the automatic regular intermittent wiping of the rear window takes place.

When the windscreen wipers are switched on, the rear window is automatically wiped when the reverse gear is engaged.

Settings

Activating/deactivating automatic wiping
The functions for automatic rear window wiping and automatic wiping in the rain can be activated and deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Refilling windscreen washer fluid

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
▸ Use windscreen washer fluid that is suitable for the weather conditions.

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the windscreen washer system!
▸ When refilling the washer fluid, do not remove the strainer from the neck of the container.

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the headlights!
▸ Only use washer fluid that does not attack polycarbonates.

NOTICE
Risk of damage to engine compartment components!
▸ Close the container after refilling the windscreen washer fluid.

The windscreen washer tank is located in the engine compartment » page 10.

The container can hold a volume of 3 litres and 5 litres for vehicles with a headlight cleaning system. For some countries where vehicles have the headlamp cleaning system, the volume is 7 litres.

› Open the engine compartment lid » page 192.
› Gently open the top of the lid.
› Top up the windscreen washer fluid.

Troubleshooting

Windscreen washer fluid level too low

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Top up the windscreen washer fluid.

Frozen windscreen wipers

› Carefully remove frozen windscreen wipers from the windscreen before switching on the ignition and free them from snow and ice.

Folding down windscreen wiper arms and replacing windscreen wiper blades

Fold the windscreen wiper arms away from the windscreen

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the windscreen wipers and the engine compartment flap!
▸ Close the engine compartment flap before the windscreen wiper arms are folded away from the windscreen.
▸ Do not turn on the ignition when the windscreen wiper arms are folded away.

› Switch the ignition on and off again.

› Within 10 seconds, press the control lever down and hold for about 2 seconds.

The windscreen wiper arms are in the folded position.

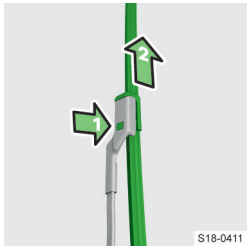
› Fold the windscreen wiper arms away from the windscreen.

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the windscreen wipers and the engine compartment flap!
▸ Close the engine compartment flap before the windscreen wiper arms are folded away from the windscreen.
▸ Do not turn on the ignition when the windscreen wiper arms are folded away.

Replace the windscreen wiper blade

⚠ CAUTION
Risk of an accident!
▸ Change the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year.

› Fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.



› Press the catch and remove the wiper blade.
› Insert the new wiper blade until it clicks into place.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and push the control lever down.

Heating and air conditioning system

Manual air conditioning

What you should be mindful of

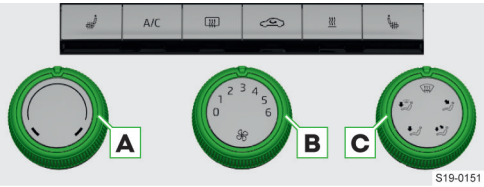
- We recommend a difference of max. 5°C between the outside temperature and the interior temperature.
- We recommend switching the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.
- Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

⚠ WARNING
Danger of misting!
- Always keep the fan on.

Operating conditions for the cooling system

✓ The outside temperature is below 2 °C.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The blower is switched on.

Overview of the controls for the manual air conditioning



A Set the temperature
B Set the blower speed
C Set the direction of the air outlet
Switch recirculated air mode on/off
A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

After pressing the A/C button, the indicator light in the button illuminates, even if the conditions for switching on the cooling system are not met. The cooling system switches on when the conditions for switching on the cooling system are met.

During operation of the air conditioning system, there may be an automatic increase in the engine idle speed.

Automatic activation of the cooling system
Automatic activation of the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up. The system switches on in the following cases.

- When the fan is on and the air distribution controller is in the position.

  In this case, the recirculation mode is switched off.
- When the air distribution controller is not in the position, and recirculated air mode is switched on.

Recirculated air mode
The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle.

Briefly switching on recirculation mode can increase the cooling effect.

Under certain circumstances, the recirculation mode may be switched on or off automatically.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of an accident!
In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.
- Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle
When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip off the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging
› Increase the blower speed and switch on the cooling system.

Automatic switch-off of the cooling system
If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

Climatronic automatic air conditioning system

What you should be mindful of

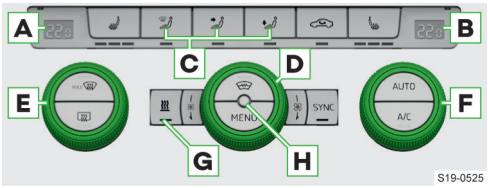
- We recommend a difference of max. 5°C between the outside temperature and the interior temperature.
- We recommend switching the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.
- Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

⚠ WARNING
Danger of misting!
- Always keep the fan on.

Operating conditions for the cooling system

✓ The outside temperature is below 2 °C.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The blower is switched on.

Operation



A Set the temperature for the left side

B Set the temperature for the right side

C Set the direction of the air outlet

D Set the blower speed

E Set the temperature for the left side

F Set the temperature for the right side

G Depending on the equipment:

- ▸ Switch auxiliary heating and ventilation on/off
- ▸ **REST** Use of residual engine heat for maintaining heat in the vehicle interior

  It is possible to switch on within 30 minutes of switching off the ignition.

  Switching off the function takes about 30 minutes.

H Interior temperature sensor

Switch recirculated air mode on/off

MAX Switch the windscreen ventilation/defrosting mode on/off

MENU Operate Climatronic in the Infotainment system

SYNC Switch maintenance of the interior temperature on/off according to the temperature setting for the driver's side

AUTO Press - Switch on automatic mode

This function keeps the temperature constant and prevents the windows from misting.

Hold - Maintain the interior temperature in accordance with the temperature setting for the driver side (SYNC function)

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

With a temperature setting outside of the number range, one of the following icons will be displayed in the Climatronic display.

LO Maximum cooling power
HI Maximum heating power

During operation of the air conditioning system, there may be an automatic increase in the engine idle speed.

Recirculated air mode
The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle.

Briefly switching on recirculation mode can increase the cooling effect.

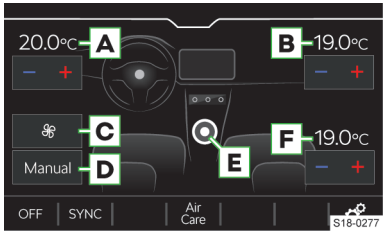
⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.
▸ Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Settings

Displaying the settings menu
› Tap the **MENU** button on the Climatronic.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > ❄ in the Infotainment screen.



A Set the temperature for the left side

B Set the temperature for the right side

C Set operating power in automatic mode

D Select Climatronic mode

E Cooling system, switching circulating air operation on/off, setting blower speed and air distribution

F Set the temperature at the back

OFF Switch Climatronic on/off

SYNC Switch maintenance of the interior temperature on/off according to the temperature setting for the driver's side

Air Care The function reduces the penetration of pollutants into the vehicle interior. At the same time, the air is both circulated and cleaned.

The air purification process is displayed in the Infotainment.

For proper operation, the doors and windows must be closed.

› To turn on/off, tap *active*.

Further Climatronic settings

› To make further settings, press the MENU button on the Climatronic >, tap on in the Infotainment screen.

▶ *Applies to Infotainment Swing.*

Climate profile - Setting the operating power in automatic mode.

▶ *Automatic air recirculation* - Automatic re-circulated air mode on/off.

▶ *Automatic supplementary heater* - Switch fast interior heating on/off.

▶ *Automatic windscreen heating* - Switch automatic windscreen heating on/off.

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip off the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

› Increase the blower speed and switch on the cooling system.

Automatic switch-off of the cooling system

If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

Auxiliary heating and ventilation

Usage

The auxiliary heater heats the vehicle interior and the engine.

The auxiliary ventilation makes it possible to supply fresh air to the vehicle interior when the engine is switched off. As a result, the interior temperature is lowered, e.g. when the vehicle is parked in the sun.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **DANGER**

Risk of poisoning!

▶ The auxiliary heater must not be operated in enclosed spaces.

⚠ **DANGER**

Risk of fire!

▶ Switch off the auxiliary heater before refuelling.

▶ The exhaust pipe for the auxiliary heater is located on the underside of the vehicle. Therefore, do not stop the vehicle in places where the exhaust gases could come into contact with easily flammable materials, e.g. dry grass, spilled fuel etc.

Functionality

The system heats or ventilates the vehicle interior depending on the settings of the air conditioning system and the air outlet nozzles before the ignition is switched off.

The system consumes fuel from the fuel tank when operating the heating.

Operating conditions

✓ The battery charge is sufficient.

✓ The fuel supply is sufficient, the instrument cluster does not light up.

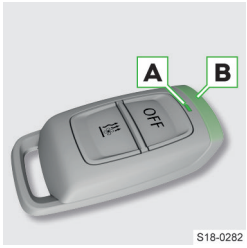
Operation

Switching on/off via the control panel of the air conditioning system

› Press the button.

Switch on/off with the radio remote control

› Hold down the corresponding key.



A Indicator light

B Antenna

OFF Switching off

Switching on

Hold the radio remote control with the antenna facing upwards.

Keep a distance of at least 2 m from the vehicle.

NOTICE

▶ Protect the remote control from moisture, strong vibrations and direct sunlight.

Display of the radio remote control indicator light

▶ Lit up green for 2 seconds - switch on.

▶ Lit up red for 2 seconds - switch off.

Range of the radio remote control

The range of the wireless remote control is a few hundred meters when the battery is full. For example, obstacles or weather conditions can reduce the range.

Set automatic switch on

Show the menu for vehicles with manual air conditioning

The automatic switching on is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > 🚿

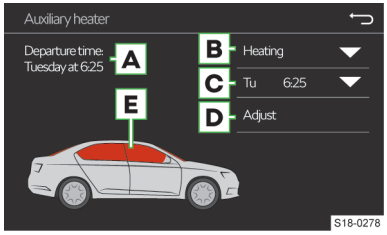
Or:

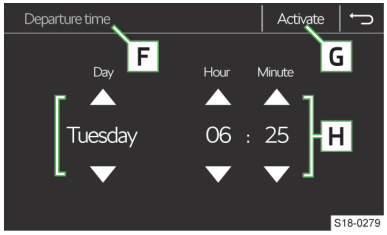
MENU > 🚗 > 🚿

Show menu for vehicles with Climatronic

› Press the key MENU on the Climatronic control panel >, tap 🚿 in the Infotainment screen.

Settings and information in the Infotainment screen





A Day and time when the vehicle is to be ready for use

B Setting the heating/ventilation

C List of pre-selected times, activation / deactivation of the preset time

D Set the selected choice of time and the duration (10-60 minutes)

E When the heating is running, the windows are displayed in red

When ventilation is running, the windows are displayed in blue

F Currently displayed preset time

G Activation of the currently displayed preset time

H Setting the departure time

When automatic switching on is activated, the warning light in the 🚿 symbol button lights up after the ignition is turned off.

Only one preset time can be active. The activated preset time will be deactivated again after it has started automatically. To start the next pre-set time, this pre-set time must be activated.

When selecting the day in the preset time, there is an option between Sunday and Monday without the specified day. When this position is selected, the system is switched on every day without the need to select a day.

Troubleshooting

Steam in the engine compartment

In the engine compartment, steam may form during the operation of the heater. This is not a defect.

Running the auxiliary heater after stopping the engine

After switching off the system, the coolant pump and the auxiliary heating will continue running a little while longer in order to burn the remaining fuel in the heating.

Indicator light in the radio remote control

▸ Flashes green in a slow sequence - the switch-on signal was not received.

▸ Flashes red in a slow sequence - the switch-off signal was not received.

▸ Flashing green in rapid succession - the parking heater is locked, e.g. because the fuel tank is almost empty or there is an error.

› Check the level of fuel.

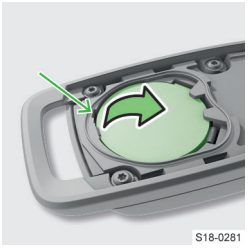
› If the fuel quantity is OK, seek the help of a specialist company.

▸ If the indicator is orange or flashing - the battery is almost discharged.

Change the battery in the remote control

› Use a thin screwdriver to remove the cover in the marked area.

› Open the cover and push it out.



› Use a screwdriver to loosen the battery in the marked area.

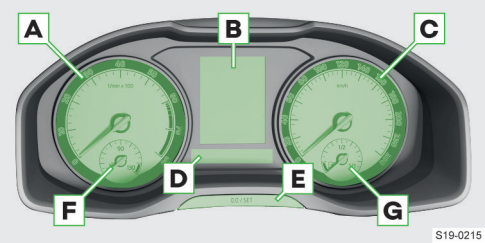
› Replace the battery.

› Insert the guard and push it until it audibly locks into place.

Driver information system

Analogue instrument panel

Overview



A Tachometer with indicator lights
B Display
C Speedometer with indicator lights
D Bar with indicator lights
E Multifunction button:
- ▸ Set time
- ▸ Reset odometer (trip)
- ▸ Show distance and days until next service appointment

F Coolant temperature gauge
G Fuel gauge

ⓘ In poor visibility and with dipped headlights off, the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting is reduced to remind the driver to turn on the light.

Settings

Setting the language
The language is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

MENU > ⚙

Resetting the odometer

0.0/SET › Briefly press the button in the instrument cluster.

Set time

0.0/SET › Press and hold the button in the instrument cluster until the **Time** menu item is shown in the display.

› Release the button, the display shows the hour setting.
› Press the button repeatedly to set the hours.
› Wait 4 seconds, the display shows the minute setting.
› Press the key repeatedly to set the minutes.
› Wait 4 seconds, the display shows the initial setting.

The time is set in the Infotainment system in the following menu.

MENU > ⚙

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting
The brightness of the instrument lighting is adjusted automatically according to the given lighting conditions.

When low beam is switched on, the brightness of the instruments lighting can be adjusted in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

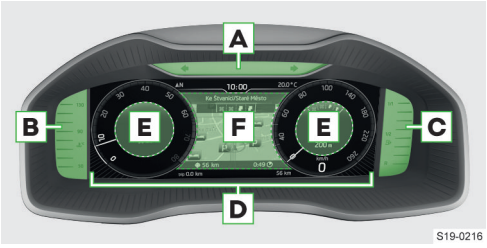
CAR > ⚙ > ☼

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > ⚙ > ☼

Digital instrument cluster

Overview



A Bar with indicator lights
B Coolant temperature gauge
C Fuel gauge
D Display - 5 possible display variants
E Additional Information
F Central display area

Settings

Setting the language
The language is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

MENU > ⚙

Resetting the odometer
The counter is reset in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > ⚙ > 🔧

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > ⚙ > 🔧

Set time
The time is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

MENU > ⚙

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting
The brightness is adjusted automatically according to the given lighting conditions.

The brightness is adjusted with the dipped beam switched on in the infotainment in the following menu.

CAR > ⚙ > ☼

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > ⚙ > ☼

Set the variant of the display
› Press the VIEW button on the multifunction steering wheel to change the variant of the display presentation.

Select displayed variants
› Press and hold the VIEW button on the multifunction steering wheel.
› Select and confirm the menu item for the display variants.
› Select one of the following variants of the display and confirm.

A Classic display
B Advanced display
C Modern display
D Basic display
E Sporty display

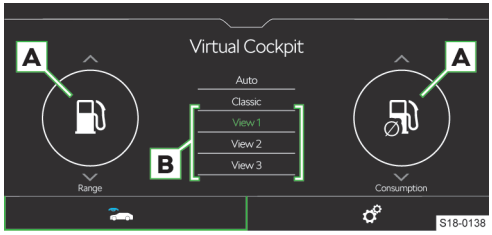
Choose display of additional information
› Press and hold the VIEW button on the multifunction steering wheel.
› Select and confirm one of the following prefix options (the scope of the prefix options depends on the type of Infotainment).
▸ **Auto** - Information depending on the selected driving mode
▸ **Classic** - Information about the selected gear and the current speed
▸ adjustable pre-selection options

Setting the pre-selection option for the display of additional information
The pre-selection option for displaying additional information is set in the Infotainment system in the following menu.

CAR > 🚗 > Menu item for the virtual cockpit

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > 🚗 > Menu item for the virtual cockpit

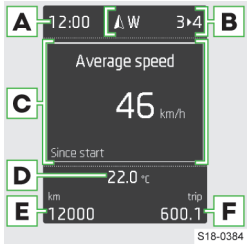


› Select the desired additional information in the A areas.
› The desired function area for the preselection option in the area B hold to save the selection (the scope of the preset options depends on the type of Infotainment).

Instrument cluster display

Display overview and overview of the menu items in the main menu

Depending on the equipment, the following information is shown in the display.



A Time
B Compass direction display
Selected gear/gear recommendation
Automatic gearbox selector lever positions
Detected traffic signs
C Menu, indicator lights and information
D Outside temperature
❄ or ❄ - low outside temperature
E Total distance travelled
F Trip - Distance travelled after resetting the memory

Main menu items

- Driving data » page 63
- Assist systems - Activate/deactivate assist systems
- Navigation - e.g. Display driving recommendations, compass, list of destination
- Audio - Using radio and media
- Telephone - Call list, accept or reject an incoming call
- Vehicle - Vehicle condition » page 65
- Lap timer - Stopwatch » page 65

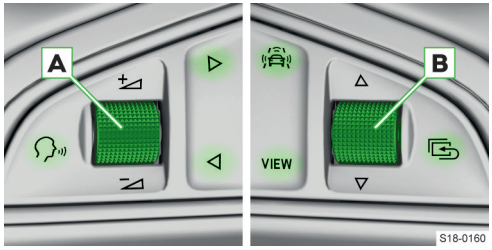
Operation

Operation via the control lever

A **Press** - Switch between menu items/set values
Hold - Show main menu

B **Press** - Confirm the menu item

Operation via the multifunction steering wheel



Switch voice control on/off

A **Rotate** - Adjust the volume
Press - Switch the sound off/on

Switch to the next track/station

Switch to the previous track/station

Show menu of assist systems

VIEW Depending on the equipment:

- **Press** - Show previous menu (if one has been selected) / Show telephone menu

  Or:

- **Press** - Change the display
- **Hold** - Display the menu of preset options with additional information

B **Rotate** - Switch between menu items/Set values/Manually change map scale
Press - Confirm the menu item
Turn and press - Activate automatic map scale changing

Press - Return to the menu one level higher
Hold - Show main menu

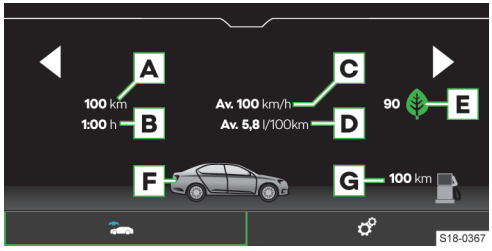
Driving data

Overview

The driving data display works with the ignition switched on.

In the instrument cluster display
Depending on the equipment, the display of the instrument cluster shows information such as speed, fuel consumption, range, etc.

In infotainment



A Distance travelled

B Driving time

C Average speed

D Average fuel consumption

E Evaluation of driving economy - **DriveGreen**Function (depending on Infotainment type) » page 169

F Graphical fuel gauge - If the expected range is less than 300 km, the vehicle slowly approaches the symbol

G Range

Memory
The system saves the driving data in the following memories.

Since start

- Driving data from the time of switching on the ignition until the ignition is switched off again is stored in the memory. If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the memory will be reset.

Long-term

- The driving data of all trips up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 9999 km driving distance is stored in the memory. If one of the listed values is exceeded, the memory is reset.

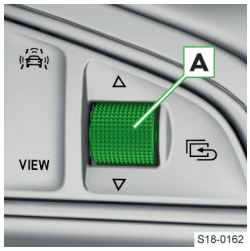
Since refuel

- Driving data from the time the fuel tank was last filled is stored in the memory. The memory is reset the next time the tank is filled.

Operation

Display driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multi-functional steering wheel

› The menu item for the driving data in the main menu in the display of the instrument cluster.



A **Rotate** - Select information/Set values
Press - Confirm information

Display driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the operating lever

› The menu item for the driving data in the main menu in the display of the instrument cluster.

A **Press** - Select information/Set values
B **Press** - Confirm information

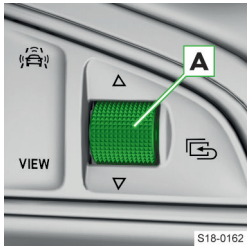
Displaying driving data in the infotainment system
The driving data is displayed in the menu in the infotainment system.

CAR > > Menu item for driving data

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for the driving data

Select memory for driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multifunction steering wheel and reset it



› To **set** the memory for the displayed driving data, press selection wheel A repeatedly.
› To **reset**the memory , hold the dial A.

Select and reset the memory for driving data in the display of the instrument cluster using the control lever

› To **set** the memory for the displayed driving data, press button A repeatedly.
› To **reset** the memory, press and hold button A.

Selecting the memory in the infotainment system
To select the memory, use the functional areas ◄ ► in the following menu in the infotainment system.

CAR > > Menu item for driving data

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for the driving data

Resetting the memory in the infotainment system
The memory is reset in the following menu in the infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Settings

Select driving data to be displayed
The driving data to be displayed is selected in the following Infotainment menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Setting units
The units are set in the following Infotainment menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Speed limit warning

Usage

The system offers the possibility to set a speed limit beyond which an acoustic warning signal will sound and the following warning message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Settings

Setting the speed limit

› Select and confirm the *Warning* menu item at or (depending on display type).
› **When the vehicle is stationary**, set the desired speed limit and confirm.
› **While driving**, drive at the desired speed and confirm it as the speed limit.

Resetting the speed limit

› Select and confirm the *Warning* menu item at or (depending on display type).
› To reset the speed limit, confirm the stored value.

If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the set limit is deactivated, but the set value remains stored.

Vehicle condition

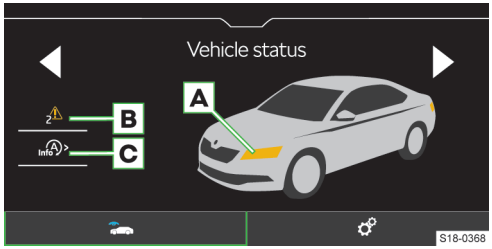
Display

The vehicle status is displayed in the following menu in the infotainment system.

CAR › 🚗 › Menu item for the vehicle status

Or:

MENU › 🚗 › 🚗 › Menu item for the vehicle status



A Vehicle areas displayed in colour indicate associated warnings

B ✓ No notification

⚠ Warning messages regarding the vehicle condition and their quantity

C Display of information about the condition of the START-STOP system

- Activation/deactivation of information regarding the messages of the START-STOP system in another screen display

Functionality

In the event of a system fault, messages regarding the fault in question are displayed on the instrument cluster display when the ignition is switched on.

Messages in relation to faults can also be displayed in the Infotainment.

The warning messages will continue to be displayed until the malfunctions have been remedied. After the message is displayed for the first time, only the indicator lights ⚠ (Hazard) or ⚠ (Warning) remain displayed.

Stopwatch in the instrument cluster

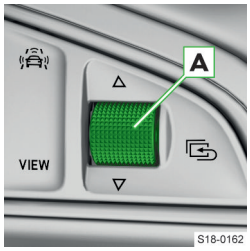
Usage

The function Laptimer offers the possibility to use up to 11 lap times, e.g. when driving on a race track, to measure and display in the display of the instrument cluster.

Operation

› Select the menu item *laptimer* in the main menu in the display of the instrument cluster.

Displaying functions via the multifunction steering wheel



A **Rotate** - Select information/Set values
Press - Confirm information

Displaying functions via the control lever

A **Press** - Select information/Set values

B **Press** - Confirm information

Overview of functions

- **Start time** - start the timing manually / continue the interrupted measurement
- **Since start** - Start the timer automatically upon start-up
- **Statistics** - Evaluate and reset the measured times
  - Fastest - the fastest lap
  - Slowest - the slowest lap
  - Average - the average lap time
  - Overall time - the total of all the lap times
  - Reset - reset all measured times
- **New lap** - Start measurement of the next lap time
- **Split time** - show the split time
- **Stop** - interrupt the time measurement
  - Continue - Continue measurement of the current lap time
  - New lap - Start measurement of the next lap time
  - Abort lap - cancel the time without saving the measured time
  - Exit - cancel the time and save the measured time

Stopwatch in the Infotainment

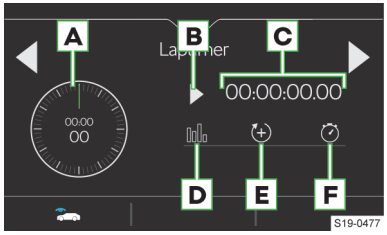
Overview

The stopwatch display is shown in the menu in the Infotainment.

CAR > > Sport

Or:

MENU > > > Sport



A Overall time

B ▶ Start the measurement

⏸ Stop the measurement

C Current lap time

D Evaluate/reset split times

⛒ End the measurement (the current lap time is not stored)

E Start measurement of the next lap time

F ⏲ The split time is briefly shown in the display A

☐ End the measurement (the current lap time is stored)

Information Sport

Settings

The Sport information display is shown in the menu in the Infotainment.

CAR > > Sport

Or:

MENU > > > Sport

A swipe of the finger vertically across the screen allows three of the following displays to be shown.

- ▸ Charge pressure.
- ▸ Acceleration.
- ▸ Output.
- ▸ Coolant temperature.
- ▸ Oil temperature.

Personalisation

Usage

The personalization feature allows each vehicle key to be assigned a user account.

In the user account, settings can be assigned regarding e.g. light function, driver's seat and exterior mirror position, assistance systems, radio, navigation, etc.

Functionality

After opening the driver's door, all the personalised functions are adjusted according to the user account that is assigned to the key which was used to unlock the vehicle.

There are three user accounts and a guest account.

A change to the set personalised functions is automatically stored in the active user account.

Change user account

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

- ▸ Carry out the account change while the vehicle is stationary.

In the instrument cluster display

› Switching to a different user account is in the instrument cluster display within 10 seconds after turning on the ignition.

In infotainment

› The system settings are made in the Infotainment in the following menu.

CAR > > Vehicle status>

Or:

MENU > > > Vehicle status>

ⓘ The account changes e.g. when changing drivers while traveling. This avoids unwanted re-setting of the personalized functions in the active user account.

Settings

This function is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

- ▸ **Key assignment** - Options for assigning the recognised key to the active user account

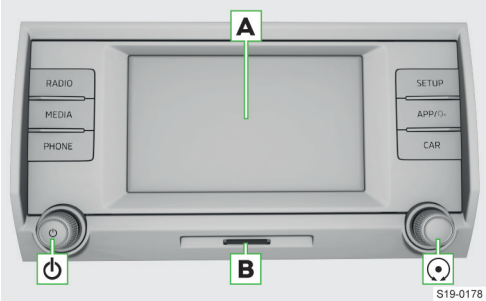
- Manual - the key must be manually assigned to the active account
- Automatic - detected key automatically assigned to a different account of the active account

▸ **Assign the key to the current user account** - Manual assignment of the key to the active account

To maintain the assignment of the selected user account to the selected key, we recommend that you select the manual key assignment.

Infotainment Swing

Infotainment overview



A Touchscreen

B SD card slot

Rotary control on the left
- ▸ **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off
- ▸ **Turn:** Adjust Volume

Rotary control on the right
- ▸ **Press:** Confirm menu item
- ▸ **Turn:** select menu item/set value

RADIO **Radio** menu

MEDIA **Media** menu

PHONE **Phone** menu

SETUP **Infotainment settings** menu

APP/ **SmartLink** menu
- ▸ **Press:** Display menu
- ▸ **Hold:** switch voice control for the SmartLink application on/off

SOUND Sound settings

CAR Information about vehicle settings

System

Restriction

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions
The following Infotainment functions are set in the menu **SETUP**.

- ▸ Time and date.
- ▸ Language.

- Units.
- Restore factory settings.

Sound settings
The Infotainment sound is set in the menu **SETUP** > *Sound*.

The following menu items can be set.

- Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on.
- Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions.
- Setting the equalizer.
- Adjusting the volume ratio.

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set.

- Setting the sound system.
- Setting the sound space optimisation for the driver.
- Turn on/off and adjust the subwoofer volume.

Configuration wizard
The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration wizard is automatically displayed if, after switching on the Infotainment system, there are at least two menu items that have not been set or if a new user account has been selected.

› To **switch off the automatic display**, tap on *Don't show again* when the configuration wizard is displayed.
› For **manual display**, tap on **SETUP** > *Configuration wizard*.

Safely disconnect the connected USB device

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the data on the connected device!
To safely disconnect/remove the device, proceed as follows.
› Tap **SETUP** > *Remove safely*.
› Select the desired device.
› Disconnect/remove the device.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding
The Infotainment system must be restarted.
› Press ⏻ for more than 10 s.
› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

The system update ensures optimal function of the Infotainment system, e.g. compatibility with new phones.

Determine system version
› Tap **SETUP** > *System information*.

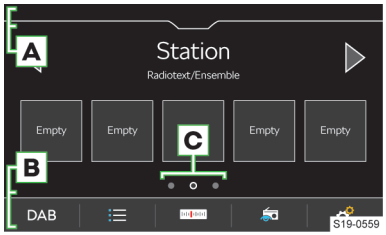
Manual update
For information on available updates, please refer to the ŠKODA internet pages.

- **http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal**

› Visit available updates.
› Save the update to a USB source.
› Insert the USB source into the front USB input.
› Tap **SETUP** > *System information* > *Update software*.
› Select the connected USB device as the update source.
› Go to the update file and confirm the update.
› Confirm any messages and wait for the update process to be completed.

Screen

Overview



A Status bar
B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
C Other pages of the menu

Operation

NOTICE
Danger of screen damage!
- The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the **SETUP** › *Screen* menu.

- Brightness level of the screen.
- Switch off the screen.
- Display the time.
- Confirmation sounds and animations.

Infotainment keyboard

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keypad characters depends on the Infotainment language that has been set.

In Infotainment, the following types are used, depending on the context.

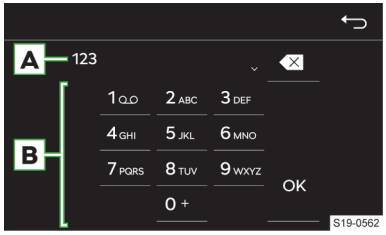
- Alphanumeric.
- Numeric.
- Keypad for input.
- Keypad for search.

Keypad example

A Input line
- Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters in sequence
- Show list of searched entries

B Keypad functional surfaces
- Change to lowercase
- Switch to the first capital letter, followed by lowercase letters
- **ABC/AÄB** Switch to the language keypad
- **123** Switch to the numeric and character keypad
- Show additional keypad languages
- Insert a space
- **Hold:** Show additional character variants
- Move cursor to the left
- Move cursor to the right
- OK Confirm the characters that have been entered

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
- Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

- OK Confirm the characters that have been entered

If context-sensitive, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a functional surface with a digit.

Operation

The Infotainment keypad is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keypad will be **automatically displayed** when Infotainment prompts for characters.

Find
During the character input, a search for corresponding entries takes place.

The entry to be searched can be entered, including diacritics.

The keypad will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display the searched entries**, tap .

Show additional keypad languages
To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› Tap or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants
› Press and hold the sign with the symbol .
› Select the desired symbol.

Setting additional keypad languages

› Tap **SETUP** › *Additional keypad languages*.

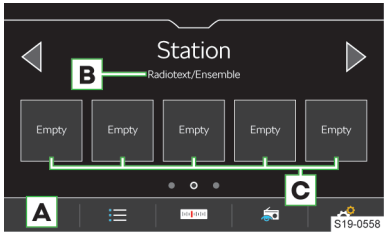
Radio

Overview

Display main menu

› Tap on **RADIO**.

Analogue and digital radio reception



A Select frequency range

B Depending on the frequency range
FM: Radio text
DAB: Name of the station group

C Preset buttons for preferred stations

List of available stations

Manual station search

Display information about the station (applies to DAB)

Settings

Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

List of available stations

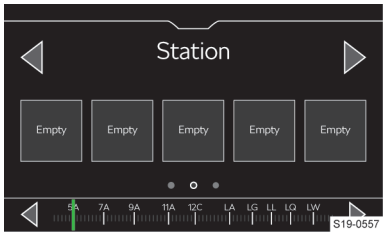
› To **display**, tap .

Played station
★ Station stored on the presets
TP A traffic radio station is set
DAB signal is not available
The DAB station reception is not stable
Filtering the stations in the list according to the programme type.
To filter the FM stations, the RDS and AF function must be switched on.
To filter the DAB stations, the alphabetical sorting function of the stations must be activated.
Manual update of the station list

In the FM station list, information about the programme type and the type of the regional station can be displayed.

Operation

Select station



› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start automatic play** press > Scan or the right rotary control.

› To **end automatic play** press SCAN or the right rotary control.

Find stations manually

› In the Radio main menu, tap .

› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Or:

› Turn the right rotary control.

Restriction

▸ Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

▸ Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.

▸ In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.

▸ The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu

› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
› Tap the desired preset button.

Delete favourites
› In the **Radio** main menu , tap ⚙ › *Delete presets*.
› To delete **one** preset button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** preset buttons for preferred stations, tap *All* and confirm the deletion.

Buttons ◁ ▷
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using buttons ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** main menu is set as follows.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Arrow buttons:*.
› Choose the change variant.

Traffic reception (TP) for FM stations on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Traffic program (TP)*.

Switch traffic reception for DAB stations on/off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

› In the **Radio** main menu, turn on menu item ⚙ › *Traffic Radio (TP)*.
› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *DAB traffic programme announcements (TP)* on/off.

Assign station logo from an external source
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option to assign logos from the pictures on an external source to the station buttons.

For station logos, images in jpg, png format with a maximum resolution of 400x240 pixels can be used.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Station logos*.
› Tap the desired preset button.
› Select the external source with the logo.
› Find the desired logo and confirm.

Delete station logos
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Station logos:*.
› To delete **a logo**, tap the desired preset button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** logos, tap on *All* and confirm the deletion.

Turn on/off radio text reception
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and station presets are displayed, detailed information about the broadcast content of the FM station being listened to, or the name of the station group for the DAB station, is displayed.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Radio text*.

Switch automatic frequency control (AF) on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, Infotainment automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Automatic frequency control (AF)*.

Sort stations in the list of available stations
Applies to the FM frequency range.

▶ In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Sort station list:*.
▶ Select the sorting of stations in alphabetical order or by group.

Automatic change of frequency to a regionally linked FM station
Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of automatically switching to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss of the FM station being listened to.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *RDS Regional:*.
› Select one of the following menu items.
▶ *Fixed* - If there is a loss of signal, another station must be set manually.
▶ *Automatic* - automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

If reception is lost in the given region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Switch RDS on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Radio Data System (RDS)*.

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available.

▶ Traffic programme (TP).
▶ Radio text.
▶ RDS Regional.
▶ Automatic frequency change (AF).

Switch additional DAB announcements on/off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. For example, weather news, sports reports, financial news, etc.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Other DAB announcements*.

Enable/disable automatic programme tracking of a DAB station
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same station with a better signal in a different DAB station group.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *DAB - DAB station tracking*.

Turn on/off automatic switching from a DAB station to the same FM station
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station being listened to is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same FM station. The symbol (FM) is displayed after the station name.

When the corresponding DAB station can be received again, the station automatically changes from FM to DAB.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Automatic DAB - FM switching*.

Media

What you should be mindful of

- Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
- The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

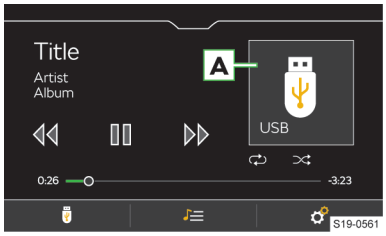
Overview

Display main menu
› Tap on **MEDIA**.

A Select source
Manage files / multimedia database
⚙ Settings

Operation

Operation - Basics



A Album image / symbol of the connected source
Tap: display available albums
▷ **Tap:** start playback
▯▯ **Tap:** pause
◁◁ **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song
◁◁ **After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap** to play the current title from the beginning
◁◁ **Hold:** fast rewind within the title
▷▷ **Tap:** play the next song
▷▷ **Hold:** fast forward within the title

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Extended operation
↻1 Turn repeat playback of the current track on/off
↻ Turn repeat playback of the current album/folder on/off
⤮ Turn random playback of the current album/folder on/off

Restriction

NOTICE
The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

Settings

Turn title playback including subfolders on/off
› In the **Media** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Mix/Repeat including subfolders*.

Traffic
› To **turn on/off** the traffic monitoring during the playback of media files, go to the **Media** main menu and tap on ⚙ > *Traffic programme (TP)*.

Safely disconnect the connected device

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the data on the connected device!
To safely disconnect/remove the device, proceed as follows.
› In the **Media** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Safely remove:*.
› Select the desired device.
› Disconnect/remove the device.

Bluetooth® player
Infotainment allows audio files of a connected Bluetooth® player to play using the A2DP and AVRCP audio profile.

With Infotainment, multiple devices can be paired using Bluetooth®, but only one of them can be used as a Bluetooth® player.

› For **connecting the Bluetooth® player**, pair and connect the device via Bluetooth®.
› In the **Media** main menu , tap on ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *paired devices*.
› In the list, choose the device with the symbol ♫.

If a device is connected to Infotainment using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, then it cannot be connected using Bluetooth®.

SD card

NOTICE
Risk of damaging the SD card reader!
▸ Do not use SD cards with a broken slide for write protection.

› To **insert** the SD card, with the bevelled corner to the right, push into the slot in the external module until it snaps into place.
› To **remove**, first disconnect the SD card safely. To do this in the **Media** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Remove safely:* and select the SD card.
› Press on the inserted SD memory card.

The SD card moves to the eject position.

NOTICE
When using an SD card with an adapter, vehicle vibrations might cause the card to fall out of the adapter.

USB device
› To **connect**, insert the USB device into the appropriate port.

To play audio files, use USB ports that support data transfer.

› To **disconnect** disconnect the USB device first. To do this in the **Media** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Remove safely:*and select the USB device.
› Disconnect the USB device.

A USB device can be connected directly to the USB port or via a connection cable.
We recommend that you use extension cables from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
USB extension cables or reducers may affect the playback function of the connected device.

Load USB audio source
After connecting the USB device, charging will start automatically when the following conditions are met.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The USB device allows charging.

The charging efficiency can be different compared to the charging from the usual mains power supply.

Depending on the type of the connected USB device and the frequency of use, the charging current may not be sufficient to charge the battery of the connected device.

Some connected audio sources may not be recognised and cannot be charged.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD card reader	Standard size	SD SDHC SDXC	FAT16 FAT32 exFAT
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that use the USB mass storage support protocol	
		MTP	Devices running the Android or Windows Phone operating system that support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices with an iOS operating system	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.5)	-

The GPT standards (GUID partition table) method structured audio sources are not supported by Infotainment.
Viewing images on the Infotainment screen is not supported by connected Apple devices.

Compatibility of mobile devices
It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility**

All information given is incidental and is for information purposes.

The company, ŠKODA AUTO, cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software update of infotainment and mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
MPEG	MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3	32 - 320	32, 44, 48	Mono, dual mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 3	mp3	8 - 160	16, 22, 24	Mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2.5 Layer 3			8, 11, 12	
WMA	Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	wma	8 - 384	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	Windows Media Audio 9.2		8 - 320		
	Windows Media Audio 10		8 - 384	32, 44, 48, 96	

Files that are protected by **DRM**- and **iTunes®** methods are not supported by Infotainment.

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

Mobile device management

Overview

Mobile device management

› In the **Telephone** main menu , tap on the functional surface › *Bluetooth* › *paired devices.*

In the list of paired mobile devices, the following symbols may appear for the individual devices.

White icon - the device can be connected as a telephone.
Green icon - the device is connected as a telephone.
White icon - the device can be connected as a Bluetooth® player.
Green icon - the device is connected as a Bluetooth® player.

Possible functions of the connected mobile device

The functions of a device connected via over the **HFP** Bluetooth profile depends on the following connection types.

First device Main phone	Second device Additional phone
incoming / outgoing calls Telephone contacts Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth® player

With Infotainment only **a mobile device** can be connected as a Bluetooth® player.

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Connection restrictions

- With Infotainment, a max. of 20 mobile devices are paired.
- The range of the connection of the mobile device to Infotainment is limited to the passenger compartment.
- After reaching the maximum number, the pairing of the next mobile device will replace that of the device that has not been used for the longest period of time.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility**

All information given is incidental and is for information purposes.

The company, ŠKODA AUTO, cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software update of infotainment and mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee total Bluetooth® compatibility with Infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends

on the Bluetooth® version as well as the implementation of Bluetooth® protocols by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices
Mobile devices can be used to install applications that allow you to view additional information on the Infotainment screen, or to operate the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications, as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not function on all mobile devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper functioning.

The scope of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the type of Infotainment, as well as the vehicle and country.

Information about ŠKODAapplications
Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps**

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment
› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on Infotainment **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® visibility of the Infotainment **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Visibility:* Turn on > *Visible*.
› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found by tapping **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Name:*.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

The mobile device is connected to the Infotainment or just paired, depending on the number of devices that are already connected.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device
› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on Infotainment **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.
› Tap on **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Search for devices*.
› Ensure the visibility of the device to be connected.
› Select the desired device from the list of Bluetooth® devices.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a mobile device that is already paired
The connection with an already paired mobile device is made automatically after switching on the ignition; if necessary the device can be connected manually as follows.
› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on Infotainment **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.
› Tap **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices*.
› In the device list, select the desired device and the Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

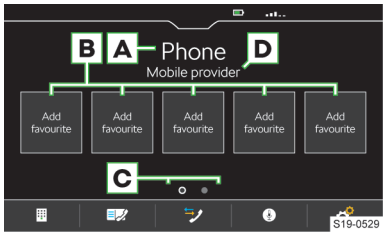
Disconnect from a mobile device
› Tap **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices*.
› Tap on the Bluetooth® profile icon of the desired mobile device.

Delete a paired mobile device
› Tap **SETUP** > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices*.
› To **delete a** mobile device, tap 🗑 and confirm the deletion.
› To **delete all** mobile devices, tap on *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

Telephone

Telephone main menu

Display main menu
› Tap on **PHONE**.



A Name of the connected telephone
▸ **Tap:** Show list of previously connected phones
B Preset buttons for preferred contacts

C Choice of storage group for the preferred contacts

D Name of telephone service providers

▶ If the symbol ▷ is displayed in front of the name, roaming is active.

Enter telephone number

Contact list

Call lists

Switch on voice control for the connected telephone

Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The ignition is switched on.

✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **SETUP** › *Bluetooth* › *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **SETUP** › *Bluetooth* › *Visibility:*› *Visible*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

✓ Through Infotainment, no mobile device can be connected using Apple CarPlay.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap .

› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
If, for example, the digits 32 are entered, contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. are displayed next to the numeric keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **telephone** main menu, tap .

› To **find** details within the list, tap *Find*.

› Enter the details you wish to find.

› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap ›.

Telephone conversation

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected.

End connection / reject incoming call / end call

Answer an incoming call / return to the held call

Switch the ringer off / on

Hold a call

Switch the microphone off / on

Show details of the caller

› To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the telephone**, go to the **telephone** main menu and tap on › *hands-free*.

› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap .

Settings for Infotainment telephone functions

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts

› To **save** the desired preset button, press and hold.

› Select a contact from the displayed list.

› If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.

› To **delete** tap on **Telephone** › *User profile* ›*Manage favourites* in the main menu.

› To delete **one** preset, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** presets, tap on *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

Import telephone contacts

After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 2000 telephone contacts. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For a **manual** update of the list in the **telephone** main menu, tap on › *User profile* › *Import contacts*.

Sort contacts in the phone book

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap on › *User profile* › *Sort by:*.

› Select the type by which to sort.

Ringer
Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› To **set the Infotainment ringer** in the **Telephone** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *User profile* > *Select ringtone*.
› Select the ringtone.

Simultaneous calls
This applies to some countries.

Depending on the connected telephone, it is possible to answer the next incoming call and hold the previous call.

› To **switch on/off** simultaneous calls, tap on **telephone** ⚙ > *Simultaneous calls*.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable.

Supported connection types
SmartLink supports the following connection types.

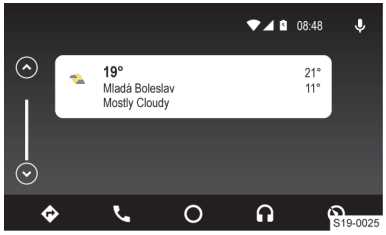
▸ Android Auto.
▸ Apple CarPlay.
▸ MirrorLink.

Overview of the SmartLink connection

Main menu SmartLink
› Tap on **APP/**.

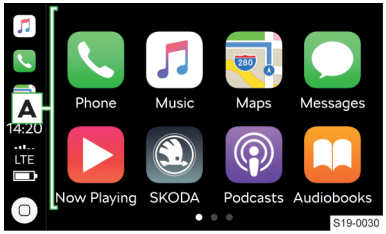
A Previously connected device
B Currently connected device
ⓘ Display information about SmartLink
⊗ Separation of the active connection
⚙ Settings for the SmartLink menu

Android Auto



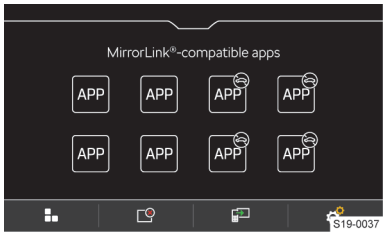
◈ Navigation applications
✆ Telephone applications
○ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.
∩ Music applications
◔ Display of other available applications as well as the option to return to the SmartLink main menu
🎙 Turn on voice control (Google Voice)

Apple CarPlay



A List of available applications
○ Depending on the duration of operation:
▸ **Tap:** Return to the Apple CarPlay main menu
▸ **Hold:** Switch on voice control (Siri)

MirrorLink



◈ It is not possible to operate the application while driving
Return to the SmartLink main menu
List of running applications
Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices
⚙ Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the following SmartLink connection types: Android Auto. Apple CarPlay and MirrorLink.

✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLinkconnection, are supported in the respective market.

✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

✓ The device to be connected must have Android AutoSupport.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc..

✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

✓ The device to be connected must have Apple CarPlaySupport.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc..

✓ Siri voice control is on.

✓ The data connection is switched on in the mobile device.

Conditions for MirrorLink

✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLinkSupport.

A list of devices and applications that the MirrorLink connection supports can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.

✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

< Move the functional areas to the left edge of the screen

> Move the functional areas to the right edge of the screen

∧ Move the functional areas to the top of the screen

∨ Move the functional areas to the bottom of the screen

Return to the MirrorLink main menu

Restriction

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For safety reasons, operation of some SmartLinkapplications while driving is not possible or is restricted.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an Android Auto connection

▸ For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.

▸ By connecting the device, all currently connected Bluetooth® devices will be disconnected and the device will automatically be connected as the main telephone.

▸ For the duration of the connection, no other Bluetooth® devices can be connected to the Infotainment system.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an Apple CarPlay connection

▸ For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.

▸ Connecting the device disconnects all currently connected Bluetooth® devices.

▸ For the duration of the connection, no Bluetooth® devices can be connected to the Infotainment system.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an MirrorLink connection

▸ For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.

▸ By connecting the device, all currently connected Bluetooth® devices will be disconnected and the device will automatically be connected as the main telephone.

Depending on the device to be connected, a connection confirmation may be required.

Settings

Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.

› Turn on the mobile device.

› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.

› Choose to connect via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Disconnection

› In the Apple CarPlay main menu, tap on the “ŠKODA” functional area.

› Tap on ⊗.

Android Auto - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.

› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect via Android Auto.

Android Auto - Disconnection
› In the main menu of Android Auto › tap on “Return to ŠKODA”.
› Tap on ⊗.

MirrorLink - Connection via USB
› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect through MirrorLink.

MirrorLink - Disconnection
› In the MirrorLink main menu, tap .
› Tap on ⊗.

Change to another device / connection type
Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.
› Tap on APP/.
› Select the desired device or connection type.

ŠKODA Connect online services

Functionality

ŠKODA Connect online service offer the option of connecting the vehicle to the online world. They thus represent an extension of the vehicle and Infotainment functions.

For the functionality of the ŠKODA Connect Online Services, the vehicle must be within range of a mobile network through which the services are provided. The availability, the connection speed and the technology used in the mobile network can be different in the respective countries and are dependent on the mobile network operator.

The ŠKODA Connect online services are not included in the equipment of the vehicle. They can be ordered separately on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.

The offer of ŠKODA Connect online services depends on the type of vehicle and its trim level, Infotainment and country. Availability in each country can be checked on the ŠKODA Connect website.

The rights and obligations of the Parties with respect to the provision of these services are governed by a separate agreement. Current legal documents regarding the online services can be found on the ŠKODA Connect Portal as well as the ŠKODA Connect application.

ŠKODA Connect website
▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect**

For example, the ŠKODA Connect website contains the latest information about the online services, a link to the ŠKODA Connect Portal as well as the option of downloading the ŠKODA Connect application.

ŠKODA Connect Portal website
▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/connect-portal**

The ŠKODA Connect Portal website is used, for example, for registration, activation and ordering of online services. It also provides the option of remote access to the vehicle.

Information call
The information call may be used in the case of problems with the online services or for information regarding the products and services of the ŠKODA brand.

✓ The functional condition represents the active online ŠKODA Connect services.

› Press the button.

Breakdown call
The breakdown call can be used in the event of a breakdown.

✓ The functional condition represents the active online ŠKODA Connect services.

› Press the button.

ŠKODA Connect Application
The ŠKODA Connect application enables remote access to the vehicle using a mobile device. It can also be used for user registration and to activate and configure the online services.

The application can be downloaded to the mobile device after scanning the following QR code or link.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/skodaconnectapp**

Settings

Registration and activation of online services
User registration, as well as the activation of the ŠKODA Connect online services, is completed on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.

In order to complete user registration, you will need to access your e-mails.

In order to activate ŠKODA Connect, proceed as follows.

› Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment.
› Tap **SETUP** > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Registration*.
› Enter and confirm the registration PIN you have received during user and vehicle registration on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.
› Wait for the registration completion message to appear.
› Confirm any messages on the screen.

Delete user
› Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment.
› Tap **SETUP** > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Registration*.
› Tap *Delete user* > *Delete*.
› Confirm the deletion.

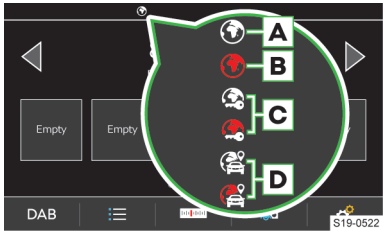
By deleting the registered vehicle in the user account on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal the user is also deleted in Infotainment.

Changing the user
› Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment.
› Tap **SETUP** > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Registration*.
› Tap *New owner* > *Change ownership*.
› Enter and confirm the registration PIN code received during registration of the new user and during vehicle registration on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website.
› If necessary, confirm the change by tapping the function surface *Change main users*.

Management of online services
In the service management, it is possible to display information about the online services, the validity of their licence, or to switch the services on/off.

› Tap **SETUP** > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Privacy settings and manage services*.
› To **display the designations and the status of the services**, select the desired service.
› For **detailed information about the service** tap >.
› To **switch the services on/off**, tap the Checkbox.

Connection status of the online services
The connection status of the online services of ŠKODA Connect online services is indicated by an icon in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.



A The ŠKODA Connect online services are available.
At the same time the symbol of the data connection type can be displayed.

B The ŠKODA Connect online services are not available.

C Localisation services are restricted or disabled.
Detailed information about the online services can be viewed in the Online Services Administration.

D Localisation services are enabled.
Detailed information about the online services can be viewed in the Online Services Administration.

Localisation services
For the complete functionality of some online services, activated localisation services are required.

Localisation services include, for example, information on the last parking position, area notification or speed notification.

When localisation services are active, the symbol will be displayed in the status line in the Infotainment screen.

Switch Private mode function on/off
By switching the Private mode function on, the services relating to sending vehicle information and personal data, which are essential for the provision of online services, are deactivated.

› Tap **SETUP** > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Services Management* > *Private mode*.

NOTICE
The emergency call remains fully functional after turning on the private mode feature.
The functions of the information and breakdown call are limited.

Switch Care Connect function on/off
By switching the Care Connect services off, the services relating to sending vehicle information and personal data, which are essential for the provision of Care Connect online services, are deactivated.

› Tap **SETUP** > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Services Management* > *Care Connect*.

NOTICE
The emergency call remains fully functional after turning off the Care Connect feature.
The functions of the information and breakdown call are limited.

Switch online services on/off
It is possible to have the online services switched off/on exclusively by a ŠKODA service partner.

After turning off the online services, **none of the** ŠKODA Connect **online services, including the emergency calls** are functioning.

S19-0527

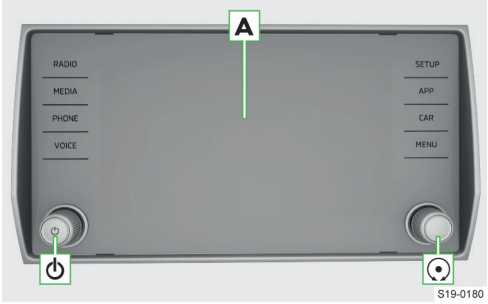
To inform the vehicle user that the ŠKODA Connect online services are **out of order**, the service partner applies the sticker at a visible point in the vehicle (e.g. on the roof cladding).

This sticker **must not be removed**as long as the online services are off.

NOTICE
It should be noted that the emergency, information and breakdown calls are not available after switching off the online services.
For this reason, **no** automatic emergency call is made in the event of a serious car accident.

Infotainment Bolero

Infotainment overview



S19-0180

A Touchscreen

Rotary control on the left
- ▸ **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off
- ▸ **Turn:** Adjust Volume

Rotary control on the right
- ▸ **Press:** Confirm menu item
- ▸ **Turn:** select menu item/set value

RADIO **Radio** menu

MEDIA **Media** menu

PHONE **Phone** menu

VOICE Voice control

SETUP Infotainment settings

APP **SmartLink** menu

CAR Information about vehicle settings

MENU Overview of Infotainment menus

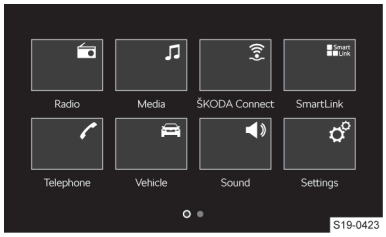
System

Infotainment Menus

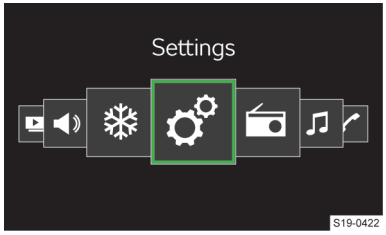
MENU menu
The MENU menu contains all available Infotainment menus.

› To **Display the menu** tap **MENU**.

The graphic display type for the MENU menu can be set.



Grid display



List

Restriction

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions
The following Infotainment functions are set in the MENU > menu.

- Time and date.
- Language.
- Units.
- Restore factory settings.

Sound settings
The Infotainment sound is set in the menu MENU > .

The following menu items can be set.

- Setting the equalizer.
- Adjusting the volume ratio.
- Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions.

  Some are adjustable, for example the following menu items.

  - Volume adjustment of voice commands.
  - Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on.
  - Speed-dependent volume setting.
  - Setting the Infotainment to mute with the parking aid switched on.

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set.

- Setting space optimisation.
- Setting the audio profiles according to genre.
- Adjusting the subwoofer volume.

Configuration wizard
The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration wizard is automatically displayed if, after switching on the Infotainment system, there are at least two menu items that have not been set or if a new user account has been selected.

› To **switch off the automatic display**, tap on *Don't show again* when the configuration wizard is displayed.
› For **manual display**, tap on MENU > > *Configuration wizard*.

Setting the MENU
The graphic display type for the MENU menu can be set as follows.

› MENU > > *Screen* > *Menu:*
› Select one of the following menu items.

- *Grid display* – Grid display.
- *Horizont. Display* – horizontal display.

Safely disconnect the connected USB device

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the data on the connected device!
To safely disconnect/remove the device, proceed as follows.

› Tap MENU > > *Remove safely:*.
› Select the desired device.
› Disconnect/remove the device.

Electronic voice amplification for driver and passenger
The voice enhancer allows transmission of the driver's and passenger's voice on the speakers in the rear.

› For **volume adjustment of voice amplification** MENU > > *volume*, tap > *Electronic voice enhancement*.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding
The Infotainment system must be restarted.

› Press for more than 10 s.
› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

The system update ensures optimal function of the Infotainment system, e.g. compatibility with new phones.

Determine system version

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *System information*.

Manual update

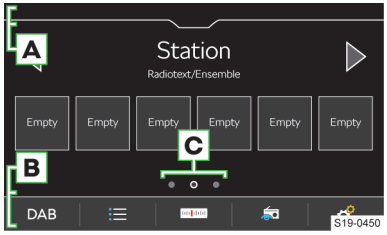
For information on available updates, please refer to the ŠKODA internet pages.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal**

› Visit available updates.
› Save the update to a USB source.
› Insert the USB source into the front USB input.
› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *System information* > *Update software*.
› Select the connected USB device as the update source.
› Go to the update file and confirm the update.
› Confirm any messages and wait for the update process to be completed.

Screen

Overview



A Status bar
B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
C Other pages of the menu

Operation

NOTICE

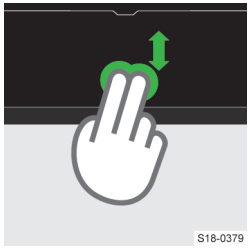
Danger of screen damage!

▸ The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

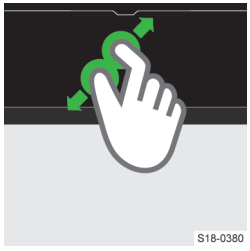
The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Dragging up or down with two fingers



▸ Quickly review the list of phone contacts.

Pulling apart with two fingers



▸ Enlarge image.

Pulling together with two fingers

▸ Minimize image.

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the MENU > ⚙ > *Screen* menu.

▸ Brightness level of the screen.
▸ Switch off the screen.
▸ Display the time.
▸ Confirmation sounds and animations.

Infotainment keyboard

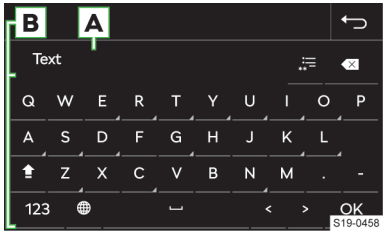
Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keypad characters depends on the Infotainment language that has been set.

In Infotainment, the following types are used, depending on the context.

▸ Alphanumeric.
▸ Numeric.
▸ Keypad for input.

▸ Keypad for search.

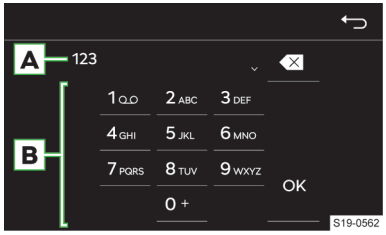


Keypad example

A Input line
- ▸ ⌫ Delete characters before the cursor
  - ▸ **Tap:** delete the last character
  - ▸ **Hold:** delete all characters in sequence
- ▸ ≔ Show list of searched entries

B Keypad functional surfaces
- ▸ ⇧ Change to lowercase
- ▸ ⇪ Switch to the first capital letter, followed by lowercase letters
- ▸ ABC/АБВ Switch to the language keypad
- ▸ 123 Switch to the numeric and character keypad
- ▸ ⊕ Show additional keypad languages
- ▸ ⎵ Insert a space
- ▸ Ä **Hold:** Show additional character variants
- ▸ < Move cursor to the left
- ▸ > Move cursor to the right
- ▸ OK Confirm the characters that have been entered

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
- ▸ ⌫ Delete characters before the cursor
  - ▸ **Tap:** delete the last character
  - ▸ **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

▸ OK Confirm the characters that have been entered

ⓘ If context-sensitive, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a functional surface with a digit.

Operation

The Infotainment keypad is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keypad will be **automatically displayed** when Infotainment prompts for characters.

Find
During the character input, a search for corresponding entries takes place.

The entry to be searched can be entered, including diacritics.

The keypad will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display the searched entries**, tap ≔.

Show additional keypad languages
To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› Tap ⊕ or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants
› Press and hold the sign with the symbol Ä.
› Select the desired symbol.

Setting additional keypad languages

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Additional keypad languages.*

Voice control

Functionality

Voice control principle
Voice control works according to the principle of dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user says a voice command. The Infotainment system responds or executes the voice command.

Conditions

✓ Ignition is switched on.
✓ Infotainment is switched on.
✓ No telephone conversation can be held via Infotainment.

Operation

Voice control process

› To **turn on** voice control, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Tap on **VOICE**.

After switching on, the icon is displayed.

› Say a voice command.

During recognition of the voice command, the icon is displayed.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays the message. During the message, the icon is displayed.

After the execution of the voice command, voice control is switched off.

Correcting a voice command

› During voice command input, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control

Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the *"pause"* voice command.

Resuming stopped voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Tap on in the Infotainment screen.

Stopping the played back message

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Ending voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

› Say the voice command *"cancel"* during voice command input.

Restriction

For some Infotainment languages, no voice control is available. The Infotainment system will indicate this.

The messages are generated by the Infotainment system. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

You cannot use voice control while a phone call is in progress.

Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > *Voice control*.

▸ Confirmation tones.

▸ Display of sample commands.

Self-help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say *"Help"*.

The *"Help"* voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Activate/deactivate the display of example voice commands in the Infotainment screen.

The system offers the option of displaying example voice commands after switching on the voice control in the Infotainment screen.

› To **turn on/off** **MENU** > > *voice control* > tap on *Example commands (Infotainment system)*.

Activate/deactivate display of example voice commands in the instrument cluster display

The system offers the option of displaying example voice commands after switching on the voice control in the Instrument cluster screen.

› To **turn on/off** **MENU** > > *voice control* > tap on *Example commands (Instrument cluster)*.

Radio

Overview

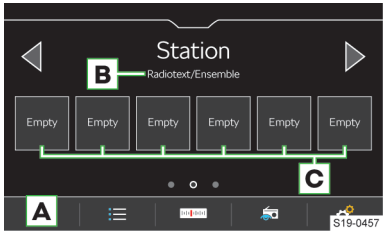
Display main menu

› Tap on **RADIO**.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > .

Analogue and digital radio reception



A Select frequency range

B Depending on the frequency range
FM: Radio text
DAB: Name of the station group

C Preset buttons for preferred stations

List of available stations

Manual station search

Display information about the station (applies to DAB)

Settings

Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

List of available stations
› To **display**, tap .

Played station
★ Station stored on the presets
TP A traffic radio station is set
DAB signal is not available
The DAB station reception is not stable
To filter the FM stations into alphabetical order, tap according to group or genre.
The prerequisite for the filtering option is ensuring RDS and AF functions are activated.
Manual update of the station list

In the FM station list, information about the programme type and the type of the regional station can be displayed.

Operation

Select station

› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

SCAN function
The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start automatic play** press > *Scan* or the right rotary control .
› To **end automatic play** press SCAN or the right rotary control .

Find stations manually
› In the Radio main menu, tap .
› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Or:

› Turn the right rotary control .

Restriction

▸ Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
▸ Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
▸ In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.

▸ The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu
› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
› Tap the desired preset button.

Delete favourites
› In the **Radio** main menu , tap > *Delete presets*.
› To delete **one** preset button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** preset buttons for preferred stations, tap *All* and confirm the deletion.

Buttons ◁ ▷
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using buttons ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** main menu is set as follows.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap > *Arrow buttons:*.
› Choose the change variant.

Traffic reception (TP) for FM stations on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap > *Traffic program (TP)*.

Switch traffic reception for DAB stations on/off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

› In the **Radio** main menu, turn on menu item ⚙ > *Traffic Radio (TP)*.
› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *DAB traffic programme announcements (TP)* on/off.

Assign station logo from an external source
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option to assign logos from the pictures on an external source to the station buttons.

For station logos, images in jpg, gif, png, bmp format with a maximum resolution of 500x500 pixels can be used.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Station logos*.
› Tap the desired preset button.
› Select the external source with the logo.
› Find the desired logo and confirm.

The information for updating station logos is taken from the ŠKODA web pages.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal**

Delete station logos
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Station logos:*.
› To delete **a logo**, tap the desired preset button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** logos, tap on *All* and confirm the deletion.

Activating / deactivating automatic station logo assignment
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Autostore station logos*.

Regional FM station logo
Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Region for station logo:*.
› Choose the country.

Turn on/off radio text reception
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and station presets are displayed, detailed information about the broadcast content of the FM station being listened to, or the name of the station group for the DAB station, is displayed.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Radio text*.

Switch automatic frequency control (AF) on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, Infotainment automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Automatic frequency control (AF)*.

Automatic change of frequency to a regionally linked FM station
Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of automatically switching to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss of the FM station being listened to.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *RDS Regional:*.
› Select one of the following menu items.

▸ *Fixed* - If there is a loss of signal, another station must be set manually.
▸ *Automatic* - automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

If reception is lost in the given region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Switch RDS on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Radio Data System (RDS)*.

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available.

▸ Traffic programme (TP).
▸ Radio text.
▸ RDS Regional.
▸ Automatic frequency change (AF).
▸ Regional station logo.

Switch additional DAB announcements on/off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. For example, weather news, sports reports, financial news, etc.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Other DAB announcements*.

Enable/disable automatic programme tracking of a DAB station
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same station with a better signal in a different DAB station group.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *DAB - DAB station tracking*.

Turn on/off automatic switching from a DAB station to the same FM station
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station being listened to is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same FM station. The symbol (FM) is displayed after the station name.

When the corresponding DAB station can be received again, the station automatically changes from FM to DAB.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Automatic DAB - FM switching*.

Activating/deactivating reception of DAB transmitter in the L band
In some countries, the DAB radio reception is only available as a so-called LBand.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *L-Band:*.

ⓘ If there is no DAB radio reception available in the L-band in your country, we recommend turning the L-band reception off. The DAB channel scan is therefore faster.

Media

What you should be mindful of

- Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
- The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

Display main menu
› Tap on **MEDIA**.

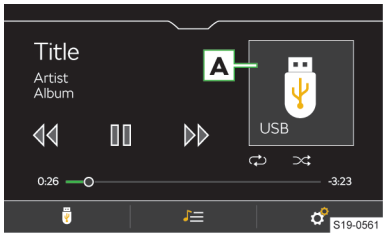
Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > ♫.

A Select source
♫ Manage files / multimedia database
⚙ Settings

Operation

Operation - Basics



A Album image / symbol of the connected source
Tap: display available albums
▷ **Tap:** start playback
▯▯ **Tap:** pause
⏮ **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song
⏮ **After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap** to play the current title from the beginning
⏮ **Hold:** fast rewind within the title
⏭ **Tap:** play the next song
⏭ **Hold:** fast forward within the title

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Extended operation
🔁 Turn repeat playback of the current track on/off
🔁 Turn repeat playback of the current album/folder on/off
🔀 Turn random playback of the current album/folder on/off

Restriction

NOTICE
The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

Settings

Turn title playback including subfolders on/off
› In the **Media** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Mix/Repeat including subfolders*.

Traffic
› To **turn on/off** the traffic monitoring during the playback of media files, go to the **Media** main menu and tap on ⚙ › *Traffic programme (TP)*.

Safely disconnect the connected device

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the data on the connected device!
To safely disconnect/remove the device, proceed as follows.
› In the **Media** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Safely remove:*.
› Select the desired device.
› Disconnect/remove the device.

Bluetooth® player
Infotainment allows audio files of a connected Bluetooth® player to play using the A2DP and AVRCP audio profile.

With Infotainment, multiple devices can be paired using Bluetooth®, but only one of them can be used as a Bluetooth® player.

› For **connecting the Bluetooth® player**, pair and connect the device via Bluetooth®.
› In the **Media** main menu , tap on ⚙ › *Bluetooth* › *paired devices*.
› In the list, choose the device with the symbol ♫.

If a device is connected to Infotainment using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, then it cannot be connected using Bluetooth®.

SD card

NOTICE
Risk of damaging the SD card reader!
▸ Do not use SD cards with a broken slide for write protection.

› To **insert** the SD card, with the bevelled corner to the right, push into the slot in the external module until it snaps into place.
› To **remove**, first disconnect the SD card safely. To do this in the **Media** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Remove safely:* and select the SD card.
› Press on the inserted SD memory card.

The SD card moves to the eject position.

NOTICE
When using an SD card with an adapter, vehicle vibrations might cause the card to fall out of the adapter.

USB device
› To **connect**, insert the USB device into the appropriate port.

To play audio files, use USB ports that support data transfer.

› To **disconnect** disconnect the USB device first. To do this in the **Media** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Remove safely:*and select the USB device.
› Disconnect the USB device.

A USB device can be connected directly to the USB port or via a connection cable.
We recommend that you use extension cables from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
USB extension cables or reducers may affect the playback function of the connected device.

Load USB audio source
After connecting the USB device, charging will start automatically when the following conditions are met.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The USB device allows charging.

The charging efficiency can be different compared to the charging from the usual mains power supply.

Depending on the type of the connected USB device and the frequency of use, the charging current may not be sufficient to charge the battery of the connected device.

Some connected audio sources may not be recognised and cannot be charged.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD card reader	Standard size	SD SDHC SDXC	FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that use the USB mass storage support protocol	
		MTP	Devices running the Android or Windows Phone operating system that support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices with an iOS operating system	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.5)	-

The GPT standards (GUID partition table) method structured audio sources are not supported by Infotainment.
Viewing images on the Infotainment screen is not supported by connected Apple devices.

Compatibility of mobile devices
It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility**

All information given is incidental and is for information purposes.

The company, ŠKODA AUTO, cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software update of infotainment and mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
MPEG	MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3	32 - 320	32, 44, 48	Mono, dual mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 3	mp3	8 - 160	16, 22, 24	Mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2.5 Layer 3			8, 11, 12	
WMA	Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	wma	8 - 384	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	Windows Media Audio 9.2		8 - 320		
	Windows Media Audio 10		8 - 768	32, 44, 48, 96	

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
FLAC	FLAC	flac	defined by the format Approx. 5.5 Mbps	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 64, 88, 96	Mono, stereo, 5.1, 7.1
OGG-Vorbis	OGC-Vorbis	ogg	defined by the format Approx. 5.5 Mbps	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Mono, Stereo
ADTS	AAC LC	aac	16 - 400	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Mono, Stereo
	AAC HE			16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	AAC HEv2				
RIFF	WAV	wav	64 - 3072	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo

Files that are protected by **DRM**- and **iTunes®** methods are not supported by Infotainment.

Supported playlists

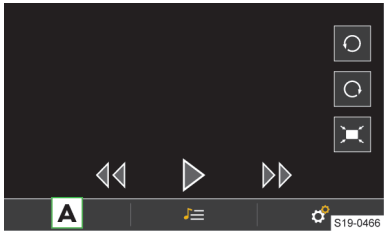
Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx
PLA	pls

Images

Overview

Display main menu

› Tap on MENU > .



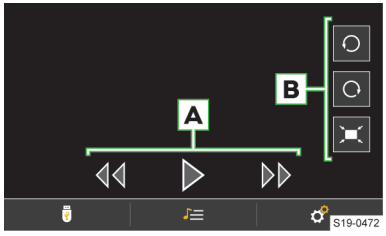
A Select source

Manage files

Settings

Operation

Touch operation



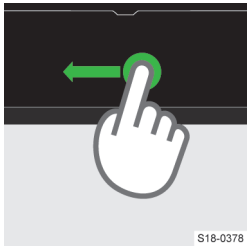
A Look at images

- ▶ Show the next image
- ▶ Show the previous image
- ▶ Start slideshow
- ▶ Stop slideshow

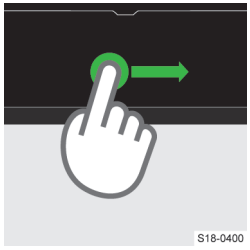
B View image

- ▶ Turn to the left
- ▶ Turn to the right
- ▶ Display in initial size

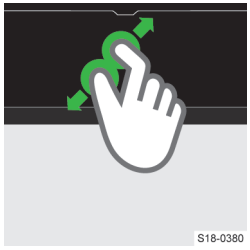
Gesture control



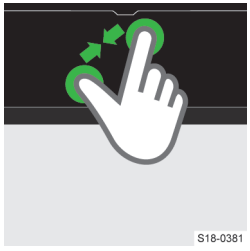
▶ Show the next image.



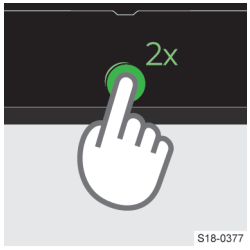
▶ Show the previous image.



▶ Enlarge view.



▶ Zoom out.



▶ Maximize image/ display image size.

Settings

The following Infotainment functions are set in the MENU > > menu.

▶ Display image size.
▶ Display image duration during the slideshow.
▶ Slideshow repeat.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Specification	File system
SD card	SD card reader	Standard size SD SDHC SDXC	FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	USB stick	
		HDD (without special software)	

Supported files

Codec type	File extension	Max. resolution [Mpx]
BMP	bmp	4
JPG; JPEG	jpg; jpeg	4 (Progressive Mode) 64
GIF	gif	4
PNG	png	4

The maximum supported image size is 20 MB.

Mobile device management

Overview

Mobile device management

› In the **Telephone** main menu , tap on the functional surface ⚙ › *Bluetooth* › *paired devices*.

In the list of paired mobile devices, the following symbols may appear for the individual devices.

- **Grey icon** - the device can be connected as a telephone.
  Green icon - the device is connected as a telephone.
- **Grey icon** - the device can be connected as a Bluetooth® player.
  White icon - the device is connected as a Bluetooth® player.

Possible functions of the connected mobile device

The functions of a device connected via over the **HFP** Bluetooth profile depends on the following connection types.

First device Main phone	Second device Additional phone
incoming / outgoing calls SMS Telephone contacts Bluetooth® player	incoming calls Bluetooth® player

With Infotainment only **a mobile device** can be connected as a Bluetooth® player.

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Connection restrictions

- With Infotainment, a max. of 20 mobile devices are paired.
- The range of the connection of the mobile device to Infotainment is limited to the passenger compartment.
- After reaching the maximum number, the pairing of the next mobile device will replace that of the device that has not been used for the longest period of time.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

- **http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility**

All information given is incidental and is for information purposes.

The company, ŠKODA AUTO, cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software update of infotainment and mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee total Bluetooth® compatibility with Infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version as well as the implementation of Bluetooth® protocols by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices

Mobile devices can be used to install applications that allow you to view additional information on the Infotainment screen, or to operate the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications, as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not function on all mobile devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper functioning.

The scope of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the type of Infotainment, as well as the vehicle and country.

Information about ŠKODAapplications
Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps**

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment
› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on Infotainment **MENU** > > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® visibility of the Infotainment **MENU** > > *Bluetooth* > *Visibility:* > *Visible*.
› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found by tapping **MENU** > > *Bluetooth* > *Name:*.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

The mobile device is connected to the Infotainment or just paired, depending on the number of devices that are already connected.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device
› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on Infotainment **MENU** > > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.
› Tap on **MENU** > > *Bluetooth* > *Search for devices*.
› Ensure the visibility of the device to be connected.
› Select the desired device from the list of Bluetooth® devices.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a mobile device that is already paired
The connection with an already paired mobile device is made automatically after switching on the ignition; if necessary the device can be connected manually as follows.

› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on Infotainment **MENU** > > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.
› Tap **MENU**> > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices*.
› In the device list, select the desired device and the Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Disconnect from a mobile device
› Tap **MENU**> > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices*.
› Tap on the Bluetooth® profile icon of the desired mobile device.

Delete a paired mobile device
› Tap **MENU**> > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices*.
› To **delete a** mobile device, tap and confirm the deletion.
› To **delete all** mobile devices, tap on *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

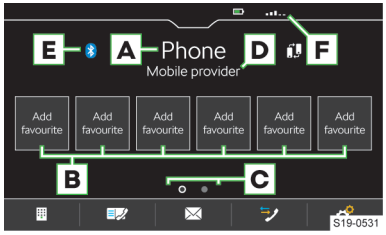
Telephone

Telephone main menu

Display main menu
› Tap on **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > .



A Name of the connected telephone
▸ **Tap:** Show list of previously connected phones
B Preset buttons for preferred contacts
C Choice of storage group for the preferred contacts
D Name of telephone service providers
▸ If the symbol ▷ is displayed in front of the name, roaming is active.
E Symbol for the connection type
F Status symbol of the phone
Change the main phone to the extension telephone
Enter the telephone number

- Contact list
- Text messages
- Call lists
- Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item MENU > > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item MENU > > *Bluetooth* > *Visibility:.*> *Visible*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.
✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.
✓ Through Infotainment, no mobile device can be connected using Apple CarPlay.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap .
› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
If, for example, the digits 32 are entered, contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. are displayed next to the numeric keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **telephone** main menu, tap .
› To **find** details within the list, tap *Find*.
› Enter the details you wish to find.
› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap > .

Telephone conversation

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected.

End connection / reject incoming call / end call
Answer an incoming call / return to the held call
/ Switch the ringer off / on
Hold a call
/ Switch the microphone off / on
Show details of the caller
Set up a conference call

› To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the telephone**, go to the **telephone** main menu and tap on > *hands-free*.
› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap .

Conference call

A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/ conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping the function area .
› To **start** a conference call, tap on the functional area .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context.

Hold the conference call and leave temporarily (the conference will continue in the background)
Return to the conference being held
/ Switch the microphone off / on
End the conference
Show details of the conference call

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected.

Show details of the conference call participants
End conversation with the conference call participant
Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Send a text message

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap > *New text message*.
› Write a text message and confirm; a view of the message is displayed.

The message can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Consult or select the recipient of the message, if necessary tap to enter the phone number.
› Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.

› Tap on .

Display received text messages

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap > *E-mails* .

› To **display the Message**, select the desired message.

The message content and the following menu with functions is displayed.

- Read the text message using the generated Infotainment voice.
- **Display the menu with the following functions of an accepted message.**
  Option to answer the message by means of a template.
  Delete message.
  Recognise phone numbers in the message.
- Forward message, with the option to edit the message before sending.
- Reply to the sender by sending a message.

Settings for Infotainment telephone functions

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts

› To **save** the desired preset button, press and hold.

› Select a contact from the displayed list.

› If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.

› To **delete** tap on **Telephone** > *User profile* >*Manage favourites* in the main menu.

› To delete **one** preset, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** presets, tap on *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

Import telephone contacts

After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 2000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For a **manual** update of the list in the **telephone** main menu, tap on > *User profile* > *Import contacts*.

Show pictures on phone contacts

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap > *User profile* > *Show pictures for contacts*.

Sort contacts in the phone book

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap on > *User profile* > *Sort by:*.

› Select the type by which to sort.

Ringer

Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› To **set the Infotainment ringer** in the **Telephone** main menu, tap on > *User profile* > *Select ringtone*.

› Select the ringtone.

Number for the voice mailbox

› To **set the voice mailbox number** in the **Telephone** main menu, tap on > *User profile*> *Mailbox number:*.

› Enter the number of the voice mailbox.

Conference calls

› To **enable/disable the option for conference call setup** in the **phone** main menu, tap > *conference*.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable.

Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types.

▸ Android Auto.

▸ Apple CarPlay.

▸ MirrorLink.

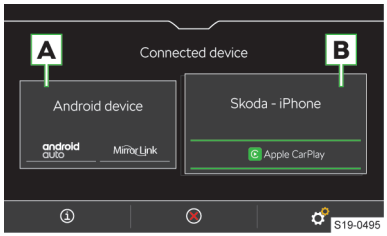
Overview of the SmartLink connection

Main menu SmartLink

› Tap on **APP**.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > .



A Previously connected device

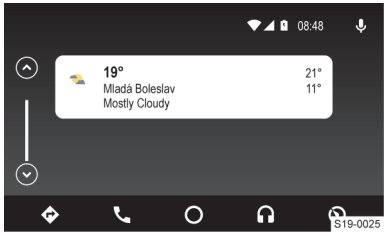
B Currently connected device

ⓘ Display information about SmartLink

⊗ Separation of the active connection

Settings for the SmartLink menu

Android Auto



Navigation applications

Telephone applications

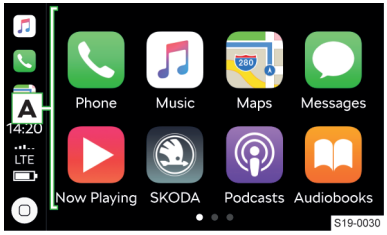
○ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.

Music applications

Display of other available applications as well as the option to return to the SmartLink main menu

Turn on voice control (Google Voice)

Apple CarPlay

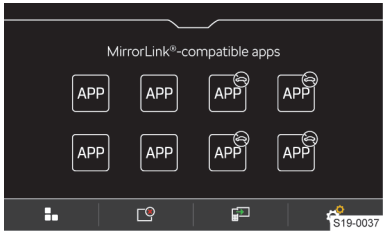


A List of available applications

○ Depending on the duration of operation:

- ▸ **Tap:** Return to the Apple CarPlay main menu
- ▸ **Hold:** Switch on voice control (Siri)

MirrorLink



It is not possible to operate the application while driving

Return to the SmartLink main menu

List of running applications

Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices

Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the following SmartLink connection types: Android Auto. Apple CarPlay and MirrorLink.

✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLinkconnection, are supported in the respective market.

✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

✓ The device to be connected must have Android AutoSupport.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc..

✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

✓ The device to be connected must have Apple CarPlaySupport.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc..

✓ Siri voice control is on.

✓ The data connection is switched on in the mobile device.

Conditions for MirrorLink

✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLinkSupport.

A list of devices and applications that the MirrorLink connection supports can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.

✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

› To display the following operation surfaces, press the right rotary control.

Display of control surfaces at the bottom
Display of control surfaces at the top
Return to the MirrorLink main menu

Restriction

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For safety reasons, operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or is restricted.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an Android Auto connection

▸ For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.

▸ By connecting the device, all currently connected Bluetooth® devices will be disconnected and the device will automatically be connected as the main telephone.

▸ For the duration of the connection, no other Bluetooth® devices can be connected to the Infotainment system.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an Apple CarPlay connection

▸ For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.

▸ Connecting the device disconnects all currently connected Bluetooth® devices.

▸ For the duration of the connection, no Bluetooth® devices can be connected to the Infotainment system.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an MirrorLink connection

▸ For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.

▸ If you wish to use the device to be connected in the **Telephone** menu, the device must be paired with and connected to the Infotainment system by Bluetooth® before establishing the MirrorLink connection.

Settings

Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Disconnection

› In the Apple CarPlay main menu, tap on the “ŠKODA” functional area.
› Tap on ⊗.

Android Auto - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect via Android Auto.

Android Auto - Disconnection

› In the main menu of Android Auto › tap on “Return to ŠKODA”.
› Tap on ⊗.

MirrorLink - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect through MirrorLink.

MirrorLink - Disconnection

› In the MirrorLink main menu, tap .
› Tap on ⊗.

Change to another device / connection type

Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

› Tap on MENU › .
› Select the desired device or connection type.

ŠKODA Connect online services

Functionality

ŠKODA Connect online service offer the option of connecting the vehicle to the online world. They thus represent an extension of the vehicle and Infotainment functions.

For the functionality of the ŠKODA Connect Online Services, the vehicle must be within range of a mobile network through which the services are provi-

ded. The availability, the connection speed and the technology used in the mobile network can be different in the respective countries and are dependent on the mobile network operator.

The ŠKODA Connect online services are not included in the equipment of the vehicle. They can be ordered separately on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.

The offer of ŠKODA Connect online services depends on the type of vehicle and its trim level, Infotainment and country. Availability in each country can be checked on the ŠKODA Connect website.

The rights and obligations of the Parties with respect to the provision of these services are governed by a separate agreement. Current legal documents regarding the online services can be found on the ŠKODA Connect Portal as well as the ŠKODA Connect application.

ŠKODA Connect website

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect**

For example, the ŠKODA Connect website contains the latest information about the online services, a link to the ŠKODA Connect Portal as well as the option of downloading the ŠKODA Connect application.

ŠKODA Connect Portal website

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/connect-portal**

The ŠKODA Connect Portal website is used, for example, for registration, activation and ordering of online services. It also provides the option of remote access to the vehicle.

Information call

The information call may be used in the case of problems with the online services or for information regarding the products and services of the ŠKODA brand.

✓ The functional condition represents the active online ŠKODA Connect services.

› Press the ℹ button.

Breakdown call

The breakdown call can be used in the event of a breakdown.

✓ The functional condition represents the active online ŠKODA Connect services.

› Press the 🔧 button.

ŠKODA Connect Application

The ŠKODA Connect application enables remote access to the vehicle using a mobile device. It can also be used for user registration and to activate and configure the online services.

The application can be downloaded to the mobile device after scanning the following QR code or link.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/skodaconnectapp**

Settings

Registration and activation of online services

User registration, as well as the activation of the ŠKODA Connect online services, is completed on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.

In order to complete user registration, you will need to access your e-mails.

In order to activate ŠKODA Connect, proceed as follows.

› Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment.
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Registration*.
› Enter and confirm the registration PIN you have received during user and vehicle registration on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.
› Wait for the registration completion message to appear.
› Confirm any messages on the screen.

Delete user

› Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment.
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Registration*.
› Tap *Delete user* > *Delete*.
› Confirm the deletion.

ⓘ By deleting the registered vehicle in the user account on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal the user is also deleted in Infotainment.

Changing the user

› Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment.
› Tap MENU > > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Registration*.
› Tap *New owner* > *Change ownership*.
› Enter and confirm the registration PIN code received during registration of the new user and during vehicle registration on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website.
› If necessary, confirm the change by tapping the function surface *Change main users*.

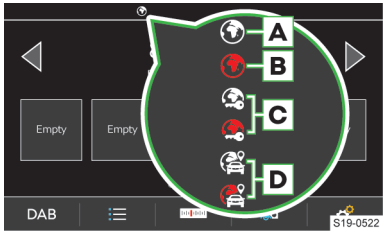
Management of online services

In the service management, it is possible to display information about the online services, the validity of their licence, or to switch the services on/off.

› Tap MENU > > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Privacy settings and manage services*.
› To **display the designations and the status of the services**, select the desired service.
› For **detailed information about the service** tap >.
› To **switch the services on/off**, tap the Checkbox.

Connection status of the online services

The connection status of the online services of ŠKODA Connect online services is indicated by an icon in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.



A The ŠKODA Connect online services are available.
At the same time the symbol of the data connection type can be displayed.

B The ŠKODA Connect online services are not available.

C Localisation services are restricted or disabled.
Detailed information about the online services can be viewed in the Online Services Administration.

D Localisation services are enabled.
Detailed information about the online services can be viewed in the Online Services Administration.

Localisation services

For the complete functionality of some online services, activated localisation services are required.

Localisation services include, for example, information on the last parking position, area notification or speed notification.

When localisation services are active, the symbol will be displayed in the status line in the Infotainment screen.

Switching Private mode function on/off

By switching the Private mode function on, the services relating to sending vehicle information and personal data, which are essential for the provision of online services, are deactivated.

› Tap MENU > > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Services Management* > *Private mode*.

The emergency call remains fully functional after turning on the private mode feature.
The functions of the information and breakdown call are limited.

Switch Care Connect function on/off

By switching the Care Connect services off, the services relating to sending vehicle information and personal data, which are essential for the provision of Care Connect online services, are deactivated.

› Tap MENU > > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Services Management* > *Care Connect*.

NOTICE

The emergency call remains fully functional after turning off the Care Connect feature.
The functions of the information and breakdown call are limited.

Switch online services on/off

It is possible to have the online services switched off/on exclusively by a ŠKODA service partner.

After turning off the online services, **none of the** ŠKODA Connect **online services, including the emergency calls** are functioning.

To inform the vehicle user that the ŠKODA Connect online services are **out of order**, the service partner applies the sticker at a visible point in the vehicle (e.g. on the roof cladding).

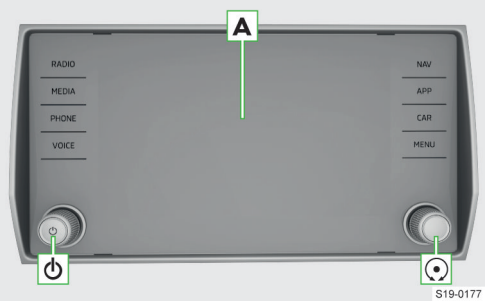
This sticker **must not be removed**as long as the online services are off.

NOTICE

It should be noted that the emergency, information and breakdown calls are not available after switching off the online services.
For this reason, **no** automatic emergency call is made in the event of a serious car accident.

Infotainment Amundsen

Infotainment overview



A Touchscreen

Rotary control on the left
- **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off
- **Turn:** Adjust Volume

Rotary control on the right
- **Press:** Confirm menu item
- **Turn:** select menu item/set value

RADIO **Radio** menu

MEDIA **Media** menu

PHONE **Phone** menu

VOICE Voice control

NAV **Navigation** menu

APP **SmartLink** menu

CAR Information about vehicle settings

MENU Overview of Infotainment menus

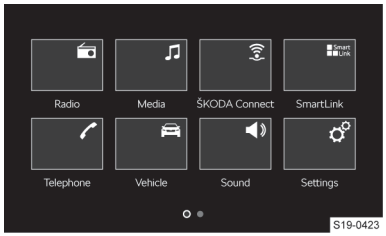
System

Infotainment Menus

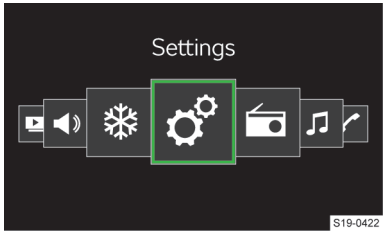
MENU menu
The MENU menu contains all available Infotainment menus.

› To **Display the menu** tap **MENU**.

The graphic display type for the MENU menu can be set.



Grid display



List

Restriction

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions
The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > menu.

- Time and date.
- Language.
- Units.
- Restore factory settings.

Sound settings
The Infotainment sound is set in the menu **MENU** > .

The following menu items can be set.

- Setting the equalizer.
- Adjusting the volume ratio.
- Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions.

  Some are adjustable, for example the following menu items.
  - Volume adjustment of voice commands.
  - Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on.
  - Speed-dependent volume setting.
  - Setting the Infotainment to mute with the parking aid switched on.

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set.

- ▸ Setting space optimisation.
- ▸ Setting the audio profiles according to genre.
- ▸ Adjusting the subwoofer volume.

Configuration wizard
The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration wizard is automatically displayed if, after switching on the Infotainment system, there are at least two menu items that have not been set or if a new user account has been selected.

- › To **switch off the automatic display**, tap on *Don't show again* when the configuration wizard is displayed.
- › For **manual display**, tap on MENU > ⚙ > *Configuration wizard*.

Setting the MENU
The graphic display type for the MENU menu can be set as follows.

- › MENU > ⚙ > *Screen* > *Menu:*
- › Select one of the following menu items.
- ▸ *Grid display* – Grid display.
- ▸ *Horizont. Display* – horizontal display.

Safely disconnect the connected USB device

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the data on the connected device!
To safely disconnect/remove the device, proceed as follows.

- › Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Remove safely:*.
- › Select the desired device.
- › Disconnect/remove the device.

Electronic voice amplification for driver and passenger
The voice enhancer allows transmission of the driver's and passenger's voice on the speakers in the rear.

- › For **volume adjustment of voice amplification** MENU > ⚙ > *volume*, tap > *Electronic voice enhancement*.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding
The Infotainment system must be restarted.

- › Press ⏻ for more than 10 s.
- › Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

The system update ensures optimal function of the Infotainment system, e.g. compatibility with new phones.

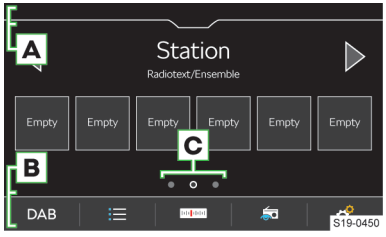
Determine system version
- › Tap MENU > ⚙ > *System information*.

Manual update
For information on available updates, please refer to the ŠKODA internet pages.

- ▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal**
- › Visit available updates.
- › Save the update to a USB source.
- › Insert the USB source into the front USB input.
- › Tap MENU > ⚙ > *System information* > *Update software*.
- › Select the connected USB device as the update source.
- › Go to the update file and confirm the update.
- › Confirm any messages and wait for the update process to be completed.

Screen

Overview



- A Status bar
- B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
- C Other pages of the menu

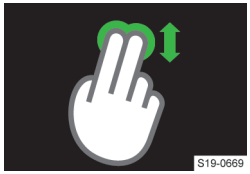
Operation

NOTICE
Danger of screen damage!
- ▸ The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Dragging up or down with two fingers

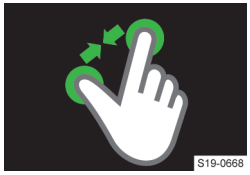


- Quickly review the list of phone contacts.

Pulling apart with two fingers

- Enlarge image.
- Zoom in to the map.

Pulling together with two fingers



- Minimize image.
- Zoom out of the map.

Turn two fingers

- Rotate image.

Finger movement

- Move the map.

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the MENU > ⚙ > *Screen* menu.

- Brightness level of the screen.
- Switch off the screen.
- Display the time.
- Confirmation sounds and animations.

Infotainment keyboard

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keypad characters depends on the Infotainment language that has been set.

In Infotainment, the following types are used, depending on the context.

- Alphanumeric.
- Numeric.
- Keypad for input.
- Keypad for search.

Keypad example

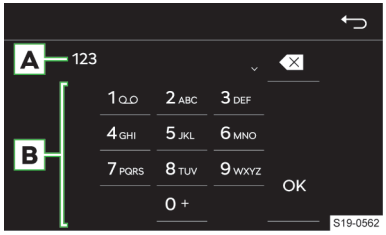
A Input line

- ⌫ Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters in sequence
- ☰ Show list of searched entries

B Keypad functional surfaces

- ⇧ Change to lowercase
- ⇪ Switch to the first capital letter, followed by lowercase letters
- **АБВ/АБВ** Switch to the language keypad
- **123** Switch to the numeric and character keypad
- 🌐 Show additional keypad languages
- ⎵ Insert a space
- **Hold:** Show additional character variants
- < Move cursor to the left
- > Move cursor to the right
- OK Confirm the characters that have been entered

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line

- ▶ ⌫ Delete characters before the cursor
  - ▶ **Tap:** delete the last character
  - ▶ **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

▶ OK Confirm the characters that have been entered

ⓘ If context-sensitive, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a functional surface with a digit.

Operation

The Infotainment keypad is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keypad will be **automatically displayed** when Infotainment prompts for characters.

Find
During the character input, a search for corresponding entries takes place.

The entry to be searched can be entered, including diacritics.

The keypad will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display the searched entries**, tap ☰.

Show additional keypad languages
To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› Tap 🌐 or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants
› Press and hold the sign with the symbol A.
› Select the desired symbol.

Setting additional keypad languages

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Additional keypad languages.*

Voice control

Functionality

Voice control principle
Voice control works according to the principle of dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user says a voice command. The Infotainment system responds or executes the voice command.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition is switched on.
✓ Infotainment is switched on.
✓ No telephone conversation can be held via Infotainment.

Operation

Voice control process
› To **turn on** voice control, press the button 🎙 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Tap on **VOICE**.

After switching on, the 🎙 icon is displayed.

› Say a voice command.

During recognition of the voice command, the 🎙 icon is displayed.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays the message. During the message, the 🔊 icon is displayed.

After the execution of the voice command, voice control is switched off.

Correcting a voice command
› During voice command input, press the 🎙 button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control
Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the **"pause"** voice command.

Resuming stopped voice control
› Press the 🎙 button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Tap on ⏸ in the Infotainment screen.

Stopping the played back message

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Ending voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

› Say the voice command **"*cancel*"** during voice command input.

Restriction

For some Infotainment languages, no voice control is available. The Infotainment system will indicate this.

The messages are generated by the Infotainment system. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

You cannot use voice control while a phone call is in progress.

Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > *Voice control*.

▶ Confirmation tones.

▶ Display of sample commands.

Self-help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say **"*Help*"**.

The **"*Help*"** voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Activate/deactivate the display of example voice commands in the Infotainment screen.

The system offers the option of displaying example voice commands after switching on the voice control in the Infotainment screen.

› To **turn on/off** **MENU** > > *voice control* > tap on *Example commands (Infotainment system)*.

Activate/deactivate display of example voice commands in the instrument cluster display

The system offers the option of displaying example voice commands after switching on the voice control in the Instrument cluster screen.

› To **turn on/off** **MENU** > > *voice control* > tap on *Example commands (Instrument cluster)*.

Radio

Overview

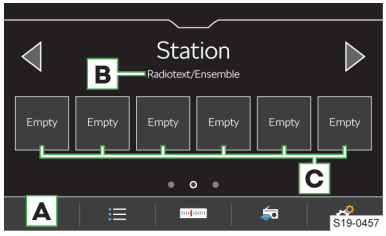
Display main menu

› Tap on **RADIO**.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > .

Analogue and digital radio reception



A Select frequency range

B Depending on the frequency range
FM: Radio text
DAB: Name of the station group

C Preset buttons for preferred stations

List of available stations

Manual station search

Display information about the station (applies to DAB)

Settings

Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

List of available stations

› To **display**, tap .

Played station

★ Station stored on the presets

TP A traffic radio station is set

DAB signal is not available

The DAB station reception is not stable

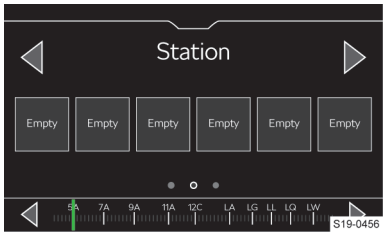
To filter the FM stations into alphabetical order, tap according to group or genre.
The prerequisite for the filtering option is ensuring RDS and AF functions are activated.

Manual update of the station list

In the FM station list, information about the programme type and the type of the regional station can be displayed.

Operation

Select station



› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

SCAN function
The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start automatic play** press ⚙ > *Scan* or the right rotary control ⊙.
› To **end automatic play** press SCAN or the right rotary control ⊙.

Find stations manually
› In the Radio main menu, tap RADIO.
› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Or:

› Turn the right rotary control ⊙.

Restriction

▸ Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
▸ Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
▸ In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.

▸ The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu
› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
› Tap the desired preset button.

Delete favourites
› In the **Radio** main menu , tap ⚙ > *Delete presets*.
› To delete **one** preset button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** preset buttons for preferred stations, tap *All* and confirm the deletion.

Buttons ◁ ▷
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using buttons ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** main menu is set as follows.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Arrow buttons:*.
› Choose the change variant.

Traffic reception (TP) for FM stations on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Traffic program (TP)*.

Switch traffic reception for DAB stations on/off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

› In the **Radio** main menu, turn on menu item ⚙ > *Traffic Radio (TP)*.
› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *DAB traffic programme announcements (TP)* on/off.

Assign station logo from an external source
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option to assign logos from the pictures on an external source to the station buttons.

For station logos, images in jpg, gif, png, bmp format with a maximum resolution of 500x500 pixels can be used.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Station logos*.
› Tap the desired preset button.
› Select the external source with the logo.
› Find the desired logo and confirm.

The information for updating station logos is taken from the ŠKODA web pages.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal**

Delete station logos
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Station logos:*.

› To delete **a logo**, tap the desired preset button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** logos, tap on *All* and confirm the deletion.

Activating / deactivating automatic station logo assignment
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Autostore station logos*.

Regional FM station logo
Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Region for station logo:*.
› Choose the country.

Turn on/off radio text reception
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and station presets are displayed, detailed information about the broadcast content of the FM station being listened to, or the name of the station group for the DAB station, is displayed.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Radio text*.

Switch automatic frequency control (AF) on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, Infotainment automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Automatic frequency control (AF)*.

Automatic change of frequency to a regionally linked FM station
Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of automatically switching to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss of the FM station being listened to.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *RDS Regional:*.
› Select one of the following menu items.

▸ *Fixed* - If there is a loss of signal, another station must be set manually.
▸ *Automatic* - automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

If reception is lost in the given region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Switch RDS on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Radio Data System (RDS)*.

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available.

▸ Traffic programme (TP).
▸ Radio text.
▸ RDS Regional.
▸ Automatic frequency change (AF).
▸ Regional station logo.

Switch additional DAB announcements on/off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. For example, weather news, sports reports, financial news, etc.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Other DAB announcements*.

Enable/disable automatic programme tracking of a DAB station
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same station with a better signal in a different DAB station group.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *DAB - DAB station tracking*.

Turn on/off automatic switching from a DAB station to the same FM station
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station being listened to is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same FM station. The symbol (FM) is displayed after the station name.

When the corresponding DAB station can be received again, the station automatically changes from FM to DAB.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Automatic DAB - FM switching*.

Activating/deactivating reception of DAB transmitter in the L band
In some countries, the DAB radio reception is only available as a so-called LBand.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *L-Band:*.

ⓘ If there is no DAB radio reception available in the L-band in your country, we recommend turning the L-band reception off. The DAB channel scan is therefore faster.

Media

What you should be mindful of

- Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
- The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

Display main menu

› Tap on **MEDIA**.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > ♫.

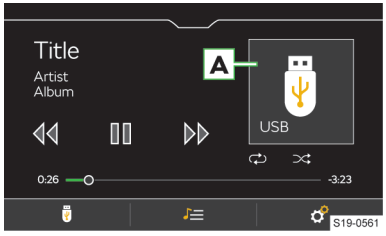
A Select source

Manage files / multimedia database

Settings

Operation

Operation - Basics



A Album image / symbol of the connected source
Tap: display available albums

Tap: start playback

Tap: pause

Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap: play the previous song

After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap to play the current title from the beginning

Hold: fast rewind within the title

Tap: play the next song

Hold: fast forward within the title

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Extended operation

Turn repeat playback of the current track on/off

Turn repeat playback of the current album/folder on/off

Turn random playback of the current album/folder on/off

Restriction

NOTICE

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

Settings

Turn title playback including subfolders on/off

› In the **Media** main menu, tap on > *Mix/Repeat including subfolders*.

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** the traffic monitoring during the playback of media files, go to the **Media** main menu and tap on > *Traffic programme (TP)*.

Safely disconnect the connected device

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the data on the connected device! To safely disconnect/remove the device, proceed as follows.

› In the **Media** main menu, tap > *Safely remove:*.

› Select the desired device.

› Disconnect/remove the device.

Bluetooth® player

Infotainment allows audio files of a connected Bluetooth® player to play using the A2DP and AVRCP audio profile.

With Infotainment, multiple devices can be paired using Bluetooth®, but only one of them can be used as a Bluetooth® player.

› For **connecting the Bluetooth® player**, pair and connect the device via Bluetooth®.

› In the **Media** main menu , tap on ⚙ › *Bluetooth* › *paired devices*.
› In the list, choose the device with the symbol ♫.

If a device is connected to Infotainment using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, then it cannot be connected using Bluetooth®.

SD card

NOTICE
Risk of damaging the SD card reader!
▸ Do not use SD cards with a broken slide for write protection.

› To **insert** the SD card, with the bevelled corner to the right, push into the slot in the external module until it snaps into place.
› To **remove**, first disconnect the SD card safely. To do this, in the **Media** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Remove safely:* and select the SD card.
› Press on the inserted SD memory card.

The SD card moves to the eject position.

NOTICE
When using an SD card with an adapter, vehicle vibrations might cause the card to fall out of the adapter.

USB device
› To **connect**, insert the USB device into the appropriate port.

To play audio files, use USB ports that support data transfer.

› To **disconnect** disconnect the USB device first. To do this in the **Media** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Remove safely:*and select the USB device.
› Disconnect the USB device.

A USB device can be connected directly to the USB port or via a connection cable.
We recommend that you use extension cables from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
USB extension cables or reducers may affect the playback function of the connected device.

Load USB audio source
After connecting the USB device, charging will start automatically when the following conditions are met.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The USB device allows charging.

The charging efficiency can be different compared to the charging from the usual mains power supply.

Depending on the type of the connected USB device and the frequency of use, the charging current may not be sufficient to charge the battery of the connected device.

Some connected audio sources may not be recognised and cannot be charged.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

<table>
<tr><th>Source</th><th>Interface</th><th>Type</th><th>Specification</th><th>File system</th></tr>
<tr><td>SD card</td><td>SD card reader</td><td>Standard size</td><td>SD
SDHC
SDXC</td><td rowspan="5">FAT16
FAT32
exFAT
NTFS</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">USB</td><td rowspan="4">USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support</td><td rowspan="3">MSC</td><td>USB stick</td></tr>
<tr><td>HDD (without special software)</td></tr>
<tr><td>USB devices that use the USB mass storage support protocol</td></tr>
<tr><td>MTP</td><td>Devices running the Android or Windows Phone operating system that support the Media Transfer Protocol</td></tr>
<tr><td>Bluetooth® player</td><td>Bluetooth®</td><td>-</td><td>Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.5)</td><td>-</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td></td><td>Apple</td><td>Devices with an iOS operating system</td><td>HFS+</td></tr>
</table>

The GPT standards (GUID partition table) method structured audio sources are not supported by Infotainment.
Viewing images on the Infotainment screen is not supported by connected Apple devices.

Compatibility of mobile devices
It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility**

All information given is incidental and is for information purposes.

The company, ŠKODA AUTO, cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software update of infotainment and mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
MPEG	MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3	32 - 320	32, 44, 48	Mono, dual mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 3	mp3	8 - 160	16, 22, 24	Mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2.5 Layer 3			8, 11, 12	
WMA	Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	wma	8 - 384	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	Windows Media Audio 9.2		8 - 320		
	Windows Media Audio 10		8 - 768	32, 44, 48, 96	
FLAC	FLAC	flac	defined by the format Approx. 5.5 Mbps	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 64, 88, 96	Mono, stereo, 5.1, 7.1
OGG-Vorbis	OGC-Vorbis	ogg	defined by the format Approx. 5.5 Mbps	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Mono, Stereo
ADTS	AAC LC	aac	16 - 400	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Mono, Stereo
	AAC HE			16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	AAC HEv2				
RIFF	WAV	wav	64 - 3072	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo

Files that are protected by **DRM**- and **iTunes®** methods are not supported by Infotainment.

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

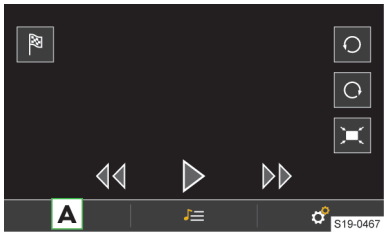
Codec type	File extension
PLA	pls

Images

Overview

Display main menu

› Tap on MENU > .



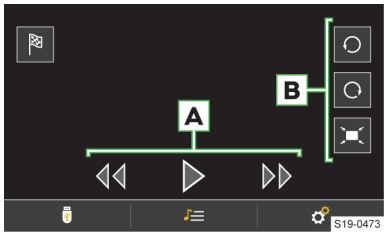
A Select source

Manage files

Settings

Operation

Touch operation



A Look at images

- Show the next image
- Show the previous image
- Start slideshow
- Stop slideshow

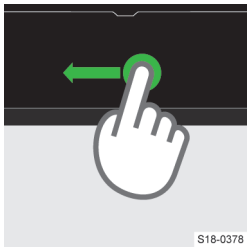
B View image

- Turn to the left
- Turn to the right
- Display in initial size

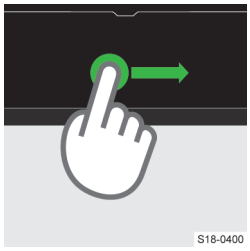
Guidance for GPS coordinates.

The functional area is displayed if the image contains information about GPS.

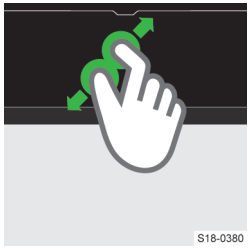
Gesture control



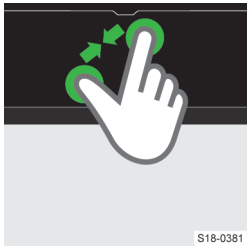
▶ Show the next image.



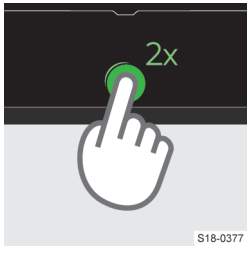
▶ Show the previous image.



▶ Enlarge view.



▶ Zoom out.



▶ Maximize image/ display image size.

Settings

The following Infotainment functions are set in the MENU > > menu.

- Display image size.
- Display image duration during the slideshow.
- Slideshow repeat.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Specification	File system
SD card	SD card reader	Standard size SD SDHC SDXC	FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	USB stick	
		HDD (without special software)	

Supported files

Codec type	File extension	Max. resolution [Mpx]
BMP	bmp	4
JPG; JPEG	jpg; jpeg	4 (Progressive Mode) 64
GIF	gif	4
PNG	png	4

The maximum supported image size is 20 MB.

Media Command

Functionality

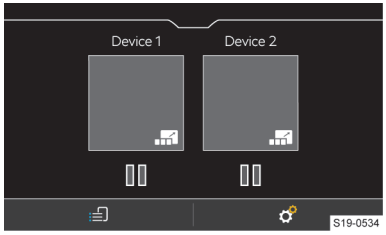
The Media Commandfunction allows playback of audio files or videos in up to two tablets that are connected to Infotainment via Wi-Fi, to control Infotainment.

Overview

Display main menu

› Tap on MENU > .

Main menu for a tablet



Main menu for two tablets

Choice of connected tablet

Settings

Operating conditions

✓ Data transfer of Infotainment is switched on.

Switching the transmission on/off takes place in the MENU > > *Data transmission mobile devices* > *Enable data transfer for ŠKODA apps* menu item.

✓ Infotainment operation via the application is enabled.

The adjustment of the operation takes place in the MENU > > *Data transmission mobile devices* > *Operation through apps:* menu item.

One of the following menu items can be selected.

- *Deactivate* - the operation is deactivated.
- *Confirm* - Operation requires confirmation at the start of the application.
- *Allow* - the operation requires no confirmation.

✓ In the tablet(s), the ŠKODA Media Command application is installed.

✓ The tablet(s) are connected to the Infotainment hotspot.

Operation

Start playback

› For **selection of the playback source** in the main menu, tap and select the source tablet.

› For **playback** select the category and then the title.

If two tablets are connected, the title playback starts in the two tablets at the same time.

Playback control

- **Tap:** Start playback
- **Tap:** Pause
- **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song
- **After 3 seconds, tap from the start of playback:** to play the current title from the beginning
- **Tap:** play the next song
- Increase the audio volume of the tablet
- Decrease the audio volume of the tablet
- View control options for two tablets
- View control options for a tablet
- Mute the tablet
- Unmute the tablet

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging a finger over the timeline.

Function restriction

Some tablet types allow playback of audio files or videos by an inserted SD card in the tablet. Playback of these tracks may be limited.

If several devices are connected to the Infotainment system by means of Wi-Fi, there is the danger of Wi-Fi overloading and thus also the inability of Media Command to function properly.

High-definition video playback may cause playback problems or problems connecting the tablets to the Infotainment system.

Settings

ŠKODA Media Command application

The application can be downloaded to the mobile device after reading the following QR code or by referring to the ŠKODA mobile application website.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/service-app**

Connect tablet with Infotainment hotspot

› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item MENU > > *Wi-Fi* > *Mobile Hotspot* > *Mobile Hotspot*.
› Turn on Wi-Fi on the tablet.
› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment hotspot refers to the menu item MENU > > *Wi-Fi* > *Mobile Hotspot* > *Hotspot Settings (Wi-Fi)* > *SSID:*.

› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item MENU > > *Wi-Fi* > *Mobile Hotspot* > *Hotspot Settings (Wi-Fi)* > *Network key:*.

› Confirm the connection.
› In the tablet, start the application ŠKODA Media Command.

Supported files

Format	Codec type	Android operating system	iOS operating system
Video	MPEG-4 Part 2	✓	✓
	MPEG-4 Part 10 (H264)	✓	✓
	Xvid	✓	×
Audio	MPEG-1; 2 and 2.5 Layer 3 (mp3)	✓	✓
	aac	✓ (4,1+)	✓
	m4a	✓ (4,1+)	✓
	ogg	✓	×
	flac	✓	×
	wav	✓ (4,1+)	✓

Mobile device management

Overview

Mobile device management

› In the **Telephone** main menu , tap on the functional surface ⚙ › *Bluetooth* › *paired devices*.

In the list of paired mobile devices, the following symbols may appear for the individual devices.

- **Grey icon** - the device can be connected as a telephone.
  Green icon - the device is connected as a telephone.
- **Grey icon** - the device can be connected as a Bluetooth® player.
  White icon - the device is connected as a Bluetooth® player.

Possible functions of the connected mobile device

The functions of a device connected via over the **HFP** Bluetooth profile depends on the following connection types.

First device Main phone	Second device Additional phone
incoming / outgoing calls SMS Telephone contacts Bluetooth® player	incoming calls Bluetooth® player

With Infotainment only **a mobile device** can be connected as a Bluetooth® player.

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Connection restrictions

- ▸ With Infotainment, a max. of 20 mobile devices are paired.
- ▸ The range of the connection of the mobile device to Infotainment is limited to the passenger compartment.
- ▸ After reaching the maximum number, the pairing of the next mobile device will replace that of the device that has not been used for the longest period of time.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

- ▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility**

All information given is incidental and is for information purposes.

The company, ŠKODA AUTO, cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software update of infotainment and mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee total Bluetooth® compatibility with Infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version as well as the implementation of Bluetooth® protocols by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices

Mobile devices can be used to install applications that allow you to view additional information on the Infotainment screen, or to operate the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications, as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not function on all mobile devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper functioning.

The scope of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the type of Infotainment, as well as the vehicle and country.

Information about ŠKODAapplications
Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps**

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment
› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on Infotainment **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® visibility of the Infotainment **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Visibility:* > *Visible*.
› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found by tapping **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Name:*.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

The mobile device is connected to the Infotainment or just paired, depending on the number of devices that are already connected.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device
› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on Infotainment **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.
› Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Search for devices*.
› Ensure the visibility of the device to be connected.
› Select the desired device from the list of Bluetooth® devices.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a mobile device that is already paired
The connection with an already paired mobile device is made automatically after switching on the ignition; if necessary the device can be connected manually as follows.

› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on Infotainment **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices*.
› In the device list, select the desired device and the Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Disconnect from a mobile device
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices*.
› Tap on the Bluetooth® profile icon of the desired mobile device.

Delete a paired mobile device
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices*.
› To **delete a** mobile device, tap 🗑 and confirm the deletion.
› To **delete all** mobile devices, tap on *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

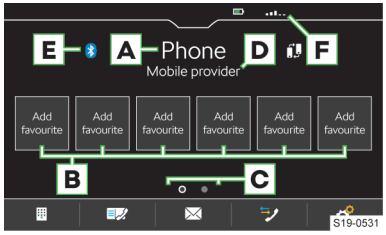
Telephone

Telephone main menu

Display main menu
› Tap on **PHONE**.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > ✆.



A Name of the connected telephone
▸ **Tap:** Show list of previously connected phones

B Preset buttons for preferred contacts

C Choice of storage group for the preferred contacts

D Name of telephone service providers
▸ If the symbol ▷ is displayed in front of the name, roaming is active.

E Symbol for the connection type

F Status symbol of the phone

Change the main phone to the extension telephone

Enter the telephone number

Contact list
Text messages
Call lists
Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > > *Bluetooth* > *Visibility:*.> *Visible*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.
✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.
✓ Through Infotainment, no mobile device can be connected using Apple CarPlay.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap .
› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
If, for example, the digits 32 are entered, contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. are displayed next to the numeric keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **telephone** main menu, tap .
› To **find** details within the list, tap *Find*.
› Enter the details you wish to find.
› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap > .

Telephone conversation

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected.

End connection / reject incoming call / end call
Answer an incoming call / return to the held call
Switch the ringer off / on
Hold a call
Switch the microphone off / on
Show details of the caller
Set up a conference call

› To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the telephone**, go to the **telephone** main menu and tap on > *hands-free*.
› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap .

Conference call

A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/ conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping the function area .
› To **start** a conference call, tap on the functional area .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context.

Hold the conference call and leave temporarily (the conference will continue in the background)
Return to the conference being held
Switch the microphone off / on
End the conference
Show details of the conference call

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected.

Show details of the conference call participants
End conversation with the conference call participant
Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Send a text message

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap > *New text message*.
› Write a text message and confirm; a view of the message is displayed.

The message can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Consult or select the recipient of the message, if necessary tap to enter the phone number.
› Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.

› Tap on .

Display received text messages

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap > *E-mails* .

› To **display the Message**, select the desired message.

The message content and the following menu with functions is displayed.

Read the text message using the generated Infotainment voice.

... **Display the menu with the following functions of an accepted message.**
Option to answer the message by means of a template.
Delete message.
Recognise phone numbers in the message.

Forward message, with the option to edit the message before sending.

Reply to the sender by sending a message.

Settings for Infotainment telephone functions

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts

› To **save** the desired preset button, press and hold.

› Select a contact from the displayed list.

› If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.

› To **delete** tap on **Telephone** > *User profile* >*Manage favourites* in the main menu.

› To delete **one** preset, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** presets, tap on *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

Import telephone contacts

After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 2000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For a **manual** update of the list in the **telephone** main menu, tap on > *User profile* > *Import contacts*.

Show pictures on phone contacts

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap > *User profile* > *Show pictures for contacts*.

Sort contacts in the phone book

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap on > *User profile* > *Sort by:*.

› Select the type by which to sort.

Ringer

Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› To **set the Infotainment ringer** in the **Telephone** main menu, tap on > *User profile* > *Select ringtone*.

› Select the ringtone.

Number for the voice mailbox

› To **set the voice mailbox number** in the **Telephone** main menu, tap on > *User profile*> *Mailbox number:*.

› Enter the number of the voice mailbox.

Conference calls

› To **enable/disable the option for conference call setup** in the **phone** main menu, tap > *conference*.

Wi-Fi

Functionality

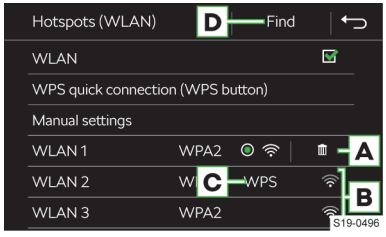
Wi-Fi can be used to connect to the Internet or for operating the Infotainment system using an application in the connected device (e.g. ŠKODA Media Command).

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices. At the same time, the Infotainment can be connected to another hotspot.

Overview of available hotspots

Display available hotspots

› Tap **MENU** > > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:*.



A Previously connected hotspots

B Available hotspots

C The hotspot supports the WPS connection

D Updating the list of available hotspots

Currently connected hotspot

Delete information about the hotspot connection

Wi-Fi signal strength of the hotspot

The Wi-Fi signal from the hotspot is not available

Function restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Mobile Hotspot* > *Mobile Hotspot*.
› Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.
› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment hotspot refers to the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Mobile Hotspot* > *Hotspot Settings (Wi-Fi)* > *SSID:*.

› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Mobile Hotspot* > *Hotspot Settings (Wi-Fi)* > *Network key:*

› Confirm the connection.

Connect Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:* > *Wi-Fi*.
› Select the desired hotspot in the list of available hotspots.
› Enter the password for connecting to mobile devices.

ⓘ Infotainment stores passwords for previously connected hotspots.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is factory-set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Change the name of the Infotainment hotspot

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Mobile Hotspot* > *Hotspot Settings (Wi-Fi)* > *SSID:*.
› Enter the name and confirm.
› Tap *Save*.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 8 and a maximum of 63 characters.

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Mobile Hotspot* > *Hotspot Settings (Wi-Fi)* > *Network key:*.
› Enter the password and confirm.
› Tap *Save*.

Quick connection of a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Mobile Hotspot* > *Mobile Hotspot*.
› Tap *WPS quick connection (WPS button)*.
› In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS.
› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Quick connection of Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› Turn on the ignition.
› On the mobile device, turn on the hotspot, its visibility, and the option for WPS connection.
› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:* > *Wi-Fi*.
› Tap *WPS quick connection (WPS button)*.
› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Manual connection of Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› Set the hotspot backup of the mobile device to WPA2.
› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu item MENU > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:* > *Wi-Fi*.
› Tap *Manual settings*.
› Enter the name of the hotspot to connect to and the access password.
› Tap *Connect*.
› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Tips for a perfect connection

▸ Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.
▸ Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.
▸ For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.
▸ If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

Data connection

Settings

Mobile data

Mobile data for the data connection may be subject to charges according to the mobile network operator's tariff conditions.

Types of data connection setup

- ▶ By connecting the Infotainment with the **external hotspot** via Wi-Fi.
- ▶ Using the CarStick **USB device**.

Connecting using the CarStick USB device

The CarStick USB device can be purchased from Škoda original accessories.

› Insert a SIM card with activated data services into the CarStick device.

The required dimensions of the SIM card, as well as the correct procedure during insertion can be found in the instructions enclosed with the CarStick device.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Insert the CarStick into the USB input at the front.
› Wait approximately one minute until a light other than the red indicator light on CarStick is permanently lit.

When the red indicator light comes on, the CarStick can be removed and inserted again.

› If the SIM card is protected by a PIN code, then the PIN code of the SIM card must be entered.
› Confirm the entered PIN code by tapping **OK**.

Or:

› Tap to save and confirm the PIN code.
› If necessary, set the required network of the data service provider.

NOTICE

If a SIM card is incorrectly sized or if a SIM card is inserted in the wrong direction, there is a risk of damage to the CarStick USB device.

Set network parameters

› Tap **MENU** > > *Network*.
› Set the desired parameters.

For accurate parameters for setting the network, contact the data service provider.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable.

Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types.

- ▶ Android Auto.
- ▶ Apple CarPlay.
- ▶ MirrorLink.

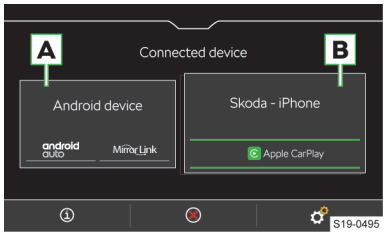
Overview of the SmartLink connection

Main menu SmartLink

› Tap on **APP**.

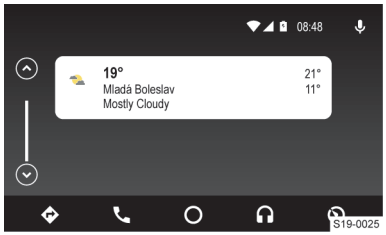
Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > .



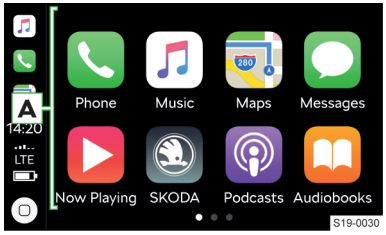
A Previously connected device
B Currently connected device
Display information about SmartLink
Separation of the active connection
Settings for the SmartLink menu

Android Auto



Navigation applications
Telephone applications
Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.
Music applications
Display of other available applications as well as the option to return to the SmartLink main menu
Turn on voice control (Google Voice)

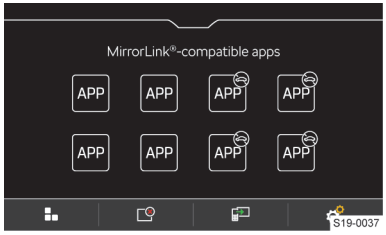
Apple CarPlay



A List of available applications

○ Depending on the duration of operation:
- ▸ **Tap:** Return to the Apple CarPlay main menu
- ▸ **Hold:** Switch on voice control (Siri)

MirrorLink



It is not possible to operate the application while driving

Return to the SmartLink main menu

List of running applications

Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices

Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the following SmartLink connection types: Android Auto. Apple CarPlay and MirrorLink.

✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLinkconnection, are supported in the respective market.

✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

✓ The device to be connected must have Android AutoSupport.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc..

✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

✓ The device to be connected must have Apple CarPlaySupport.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc..

✓ Siri voice control is on.

✓ The data connection is switched on in the mobile device.

Conditions for MirrorLink

✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLinkSupport.

A list of devices and applications that the MirrorLink connection supports can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.

✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

› To display the following operation surfaces, press the right rotary control ⊙.

Display of control surfaces at the bottom

Display of control surfaces at the top

Return to the MirrorLink main menu

Restriction

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For safety reasons, operation of some SmartLinkapplications while driving is not possible or is restricted.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an Android Auto connection

- ▸ For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.
- ▸ By connecting the device, all currently connected Bluetooth® devices will be disconnected and the device will automatically be connected as the main telephone.
- ▸ For the duration of the connection, no other Bluetooth® devices can be connected to the Infotainment system.
- ▸ If route guidance is taking place at this moment in Infotainment, then there is the option to start the route guidance in the Android Auto application. And vice versa, if route guidance is currently taking place in the Android Auto application, then there is

the possibility that this will be terminated by the start of route guidance by the Infotainment system.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an Apple CarPlay connection

- For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.
- Connecting the device disconnects all currently connected Bluetooth® devices.
- For the duration of the connection, no Bluetooth® devices can be connected to the Infotainment system.
- If route guidance is taking place at this moment in Infotainment, then there is the option to start the route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application. And vice versa, if route guidance is currently taking place in the Apple CarPlay application, then there is the possibility that this will be terminated by the start of route guidance by the Infotainment system.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an MirrorLink connection

- For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.
- If you wish to use the device to be connected in the **Telephone** menu, the device must be paired with and connected to the Infotainment system by Bluetooth® before establishing the MirrorLink connection.

Settings

Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Disconnection

› In the Apple CarPlay main menu, tap on the “ŠKODA” functional area.
› Tap on ⊗.

Android Auto - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect via Android Auto.

Android Auto - Disconnection

› In the main menu of Android Auto ☺ › tap on “Return to ŠKODA”.
› Tap on ⊗.

MirrorLink - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.
› Turn on the mobile device.
› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
› Choose to connect through MirrorLink.

MirrorLink - Disconnection

› In the MirrorLink main menu, tap ▪▪.
› Tap on ⊗.

Change to another device / connection type

Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

› Tap on MENU > SmartLink.
› Select the desired device or connection type.

ŠKODA Connect online services

Functionality

ŠKODA Connect online service offer the option of connecting the vehicle to the online world. They thus represent an extension of the vehicle and Infotainment functions.

For the functionality of the ŠKODA Connect Online Services, the vehicle must be within range of a mobile network through which the services are provided. The availability, the connection speed and the technology used in the mobile network can be different in the respective countries and are dependent on the mobile network operator.

The ŠKODA Connect online services are not included in the equipment of the vehicle. They can be ordered separately on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.

The offer of ŠKODA Connect online services depends on the type of vehicle and its trim level, Infotainment and country. Availability in each country can be checked on the ŠKODA Connect website.

The rights and obligations of the Parties with respect to the provision of these services are governed by a separate agreement. Current legal documents regarding the online services can be found on the ŠKODA Connect Portal as well as the ŠKODA Connect application.

ŠKODA Connect website

- **http://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect**

For example, the ŠKODA Connect website contains the latest information about the online services, a link to the ŠKODA Connect Portal as well as the option of downloading the ŠKODA Connect application.

ŠKODA Connect Portal website

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/connect-portal**

The ŠKODA Connect Portal website is used, for example, for registration, activation and ordering of online services. It also provides the option of remote access to the vehicle.

Information call

The information call may be used in the case of problems with the online services or for information regarding the products and services of the ŠKODA brand.

✓ The functional condition represents the active online ŠKODA Connect services.

› Press the ℹ button.

Breakdown call

The breakdown call can be used in the event of a breakdown.

✓ The functional condition represents the active online ŠKODA Connect services.

› Press the 🔧 button.

ŠKODA Connect Application

The ŠKODA Connect application enables remote access to the vehicle using a mobile device. It can also be used for user registration and to activate and configure the online services.

The application can be downloaded to the mobile device after scanning the following QR code or link.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/skodaconnectapp**

Settings

Registration and activation of online services

User registration, as well as the activation of the ŠKODA Connect online services, is completed on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.

In order to complete user registration, you will need to access your e-mails.

In order to activate ŠKODA Connect, proceed as follows.

› Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment.
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Registration*.
› Enter and confirm the registration PIN you have received during user and vehicle registration on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.
› Wait for the registration completion message to appear.
› Confirm any messages on the screen.

Delete user

› Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment.
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Registration*.
› Tap *Delete user* > *Delete*.
› Confirm the deletion.

ℹ By deleting the registered vehicle in the user account on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal the user is also deleted in Infotainment.

Changing the user

› Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment.
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Registration*.
› Tap *New owner* > *Change ownership*.
› Enter and confirm the registration PIN code received during registration of the new user and during vehicle registration on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website.
› If necessary, confirm the change by tapping the function surface *Change main users*.

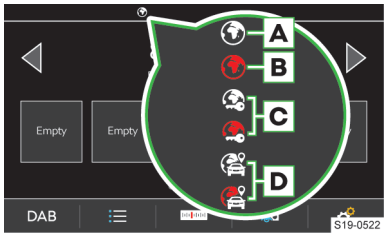
Management of online services

In the service management, it is possible to display information about the online services, the validity of their licence, or to switch the services on/off.

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Privacy settings and manage services*.
› To **display the designations and the status of the services**, select the desired service.
› For **detailed information about the service** tap >.
› To **switch the services on/off**, tap the Checkbox.

Connection status of the online services

The connection status of the online services of ŠKODA Connect online services is indicated by an icon in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.



A The ŠKODA Connect online services are available.

At the same time the symbol of the data connection type can be displayed.

B The ŠKODA Connect online services are not available.

C Localisation services are restricted or disabled.

Detailed information about the online services can be viewed in the Online Services Administration.

D Localisation services are enabled.

Detailed information about the online services can be viewed in the Online Services Administration.

Localisation services
For the complete functionality of some online services, activated localisation services are required.

Localisation services include, for example, information on the last parking position, area notification or speed notification.

When localisation services are active, the symbol will be displayed in the status line in the Infotainment screen.

Switching Private mode function on/off
By switching the Private mode function on, the services relating to sending vehicle information and personal data, which are essential for the provision of online services, are deactivated.

› Tap **MENU** > > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Services Management* > *Private mode*.

The emergency call remains fully functional after turning on the private mode feature.
The functions of the information and breakdown call are limited.

Switch Care Connect function on/off
By switching the Care Connect services off, the services relating to sending vehicle information and personal data, which are essential for the provision of Care Connect online services, are deactivated.

› Tap **MENU** > > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Services Management* > *Care Connect*.

NOTICE
The emergency call remains fully functional after turning off the Care Connect feature.
The functions of the information and breakdown call are limited.

Switch on/off Infotainment Online function
By switching off the Infotainment OnlineServices, the services in relation to the provision of online services Infotainment Online are switched off.

› **MENU** > > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Services Management* > *Infotainment Online*.

Switch online services on/off
It is possible to have the online services switched off/on exclusively by a ŠKODA service partner.

After turning off the online services, **none of the** ŠKODA Connect **online services, including the emergency calls** are functioning.

To inform the vehicle user that the ŠKODA Connect online services are **out of order**, the service partner applies the sticker at a visible point in the vehicle (e.g. on the roof cladding).

This sticker **must not be removed**as long as the online services are off.

NOTICE
It should be noted that the emergency, information and breakdown calls are not available after switching off the online services.
For this reason, **no** automatic emergency call is made in the event of a serious car accident.

Navigation

Navigation announcements

Infotainment route guidance takes place using graphic driving recommendations and navigation announcements.

The navigation announcements are generated by the Infotainment system. Navigation announcement clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

Repeat the last navigation announcement
› Tap on > .

Turn off navigation announcements
› Tap on > .

Setting navigation announcements
› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Navigation announcements*.

Navigation overviews

Display main menu

› Tap on **NAV**.

Or:

› Tap on **MENU** > .

Map overview

A Vehicle position

B Route

C Functional surface for the operation of the map display

D Function surface of the POI

E Function surface for the POI list

F Road sign for the affected route section

G Information on the maximum permitted speed

Show the following menu depending on context

There is no route guidance - search/enter a new destination

Route guidance is not taking place

- ▸ Show route plan.
- ▸ Set traffic obstruction manually.
- ▸ Search for destination/enter.
- ▸ End route guidance.

Show the following menu

- ▸ Save current vehicle position as a flag target.
- ▸ Show list of saved routes.
- ▸ Display list of stored destinations.
- ▸ Display list of last destinations.
- ▸ Route guidance to home address.

POI Search

Map display options

Change the map display between the digital instrument cluster and the Infotainment screen

Display for navigation announcement

Settings

Symbols displayed in the map

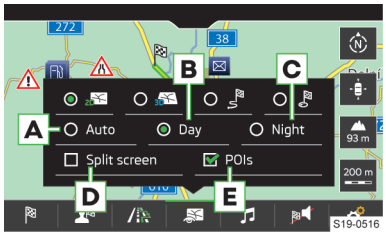
Destination position

Intermediate destination position

Location of home address

★ Favourite position

Map options



A Automatic map display in day or night mode (depending on the currently active vehicle lighting)

B Daytime map display

C Night-time map display

D Switch the split screen display on/off

If the map display is in the digital instrument cluster, no additional window display is possible.

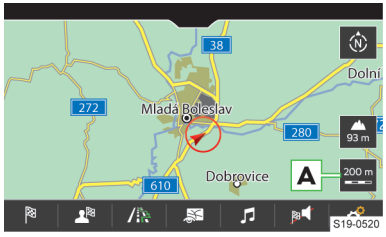
E Switching on/ off of the selected POI categories display

Map display in the digital instrument cluster

The map can be displayed in the digital instrument cluster or on the Infotainment display.

› To **change the display** tap **Navigation** in the main menu.

Map scale



It is possible to change the map scale manually or to turn on the automatic change of scale.

› To **display the operating surfaces** for changing the map scale, tap A.

Types of manual scale change

› Touch the screen with two fingers and pull them apart or close them together.

Or:

› Rotate the regulator .

Switch on/off the automatic change of scale

When the automatic scale is active, the map scale changes automatically, depending on the type of road used and the manoeuvre you are about to undertake.

The automatic scale is only active as long as the map is centred on the vehicle position.

› To **turn on navigation** in the main menu, tap ··· > .

The functional surface is highlighted in green.

› To **turn off navigation** in the main menu, tap > .

The functional surface is highlighted in white.

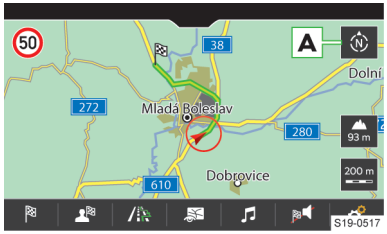
The turning off occurs likewise when the map is moved or the map scale is changed manually.

Map view in reduced scale

The map scale is reduced for a few seconds and then restored.

› To **display**, tap .

Map orientation



› To change the map orientation, tap A.

The map can be aligned as follows.

The map is oriented to the north

The symbol rotates the vehicle position, the map and the Polarstern Symbol do not rotate.

Map oriented to the direction of travel

The map as well as the Polarstern symbol rotate, the symbol showing the vehicle position does not rotate.

With a map scale greater than 10 km, the map is automatically oriented towards north.

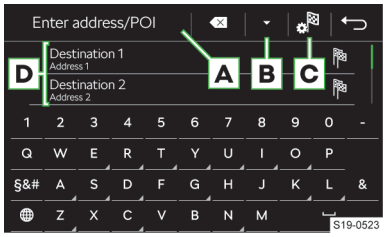
Map centring

The moved map can be centred/aligned to the vehicle, destination or route position.

› Tap **map centring** .

Search for a new destination

› Tap on .



A Input line

B Depending on the search mode, the following symbols are displayed

- ▶ - Display the map as well as the list of the destinations listed in the navigation database
- ▶ - Display the map as well as the list of online destinations

C - Select the destination search/destination entry

D **Context-dependent display of the destination list**

- ▶ List of last destinations.
- ▶ List of visited destinations.

Select the destination you are looking for

› Enter the details for the destination search.

› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Enter a new destination via the address

› Tap on > .

A menu will appear with the destination input options.

› Select the destination via the address.

› Enter the required information.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Enter a new destination via the map point

› Tap on > .

A menu will appear with the destination input options.

› Select the destination via the map point.

› Touch the screen to move the desired destination into the cross-hair.

Or:

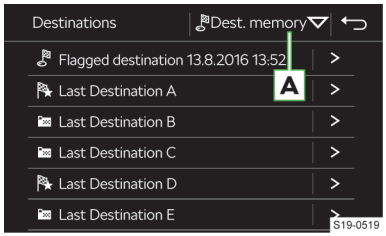
› Set the GPS coordinates.

› Confirm the destination input.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

List of stored destinations

› Tap > *Destinations*.



A Select category of stored destinations

- ▶ - stored destinations
  - ▶ - Flag destination

    Vehicle position at the time of storing flag destination.
  - ▶ - saved destinations
  - ▶ - Favourite
- ▶ - Favourites
- ▶ - Telephone contact destinations
- ▶ online destinations in the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application

Selecting the stored destination

› Select the category of stored destinations.

› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Selecting destination by tapping the map point

› Tap the desired item or the POI icon in the map.

› Tap to start the route guidance.

Route calculation

A **route** is created by starting route guidance to a destination.

Additional intermediate destinations can be added to the route.

Route calculation is done on the basis of the set route options.

› > *Route options*.

› Select the desired list entries.

With selection of alternative routes turned on, the following menu is displayed after the calculation of a new route .

› To **switch on / off the alternative routes** in the main menu, tap **Navigation** > *Route options* > *Suggest 3 alternative routes*.

Calculate the most economical route with shortest travelling time and distance travelled – the route is highlighted green.

Calculate the fastest route to the destination, even if a detour is necessary - the route is highlighted in red.

Calculate the shortest route to the destination, even if a longer travelling time is required - the route is highlighted in orange.

Infotainment tries to allow for continued guidance even if the navigation data is incomplete or there is no data at all for the given area.

The route is recalculated if you ignore driving recommendations or change the route.

The navigation announcements provided may vary from the actual situations, e.g. due to out-of-date navigation data.

Route overview

During route guidance the display of a route overview is possible.

› > *Route details*.

Change route destinations to each other

If intermediate routes are included in the route, it is possible to change them in the route overview and thus change their order, add further destinations or delete destinations.

› In order to **change the order of the destination**, hold the functional area until the destination becomes free.

› Move the destination to the desired position and release the functional surface.

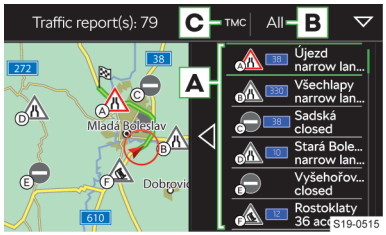
The route is re-calculated.

List of traffic reports

The Infotainment enables the reception of traffic reports, which include information regarding traffic congestion, using TMC (Traffic Message Channel) or online services Infotainment Online.

The list of traffic reports will be updated by Infotainment on a continuous basis.

› To **display traffic reports**, tap MENU > .



A List of traffic reports

B Filtering of traffic reports

C Symbol for the source of the traffic message

If **no route guidance takes place**, the traffic obstruction in the map is represented by a red line.

If **route guidance takes place**, the traffic obstruction is shown as follows.

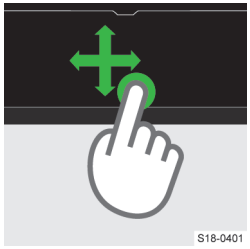
- **Grey line** - The traffic obstruction is not on the route
- **Red line** - The traffic obstruction is on the route, the route will not be recalculated and the route passes through the traffic obstruction
- **Orange line** - The traffic obstruction is on the route, the route is recalculated and an alternative route is available

› For **switching the traffic flow display off / on** in the main menu, tap **Navigation** > *Map* > *Settings traffic flow*.

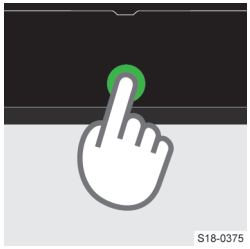
NOTICE
ŠKODA AUTO does not accept responsibility for the availability, content, up-to-dateness or evaluation of TMC traffic reports or other data provided by third parties. ŠKODA AUTO is not entitled to examine or adapt this data in any way. The data can only be edited by Infotainment in areas where it is available.

Touch operation

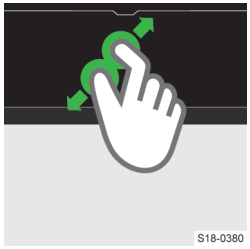
Move map



Enter destination by tapping the map item



Zoom into the map



Zoom out of the map

Restriction

Infotainment may give incorrect driving recommendations if the road conditions or the traffic do not match the navigation data.

This can lead to the route guidance being carried out using a different route or proposing a change of direction in a one-way street.

Settings

Avoiding traffic obstructions
If the function is switched on and the Infotainment receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from online traffic information or the TP traffic announcements, the route is recalculated.

› For **switching on/off the function** in the main menu, tap **Nvigation** > *Route options* > *Dynamic route*.

Showing arrival time information in the destination / driving time
The status line displays information on the time depending on the following setting.

› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Time display:*.

Showing information on the destination / waypoint
The status line displays information on the distance and travel time to the destination, depending on the following time setting.

› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *status display:*.

Switching display of country-specific speed limits on / off
When the function is switched on, the country-specific speed limits are displayed when crossing national borders.

› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Note: Country border crossed.*

Or:

› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Note: Country border crossed.*

› For **display of speed limits** in the main menu, tap **Navigation** > *Top speed*.

Switching the display of road signs on motorways and expressways on / off
When the function is switched on, Infotainment displays traffic and information signs on motorways and expressways.

› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Map* > *Show traffic sign*.

Switching the fuel warning on / off
When the function is switched on and the fuel supply reaches the reserve area, a warning message appears with the option of going to the nearest petrol station.

› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Tank options* > *Tank warning*.

Towing a trailer
To calculate the correct route for trailer operation, switch on trailer inclusion.

› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Route options* > *Include trailer*.

Setting navigation announcements
› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Navigation announcements*.
› Select and set the desired menu item.

Favourite POI categories
Favourite POI categories are displayed on the map and provided in the destination search.

› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Map* > *Show special destinations* > *Select categories for points of interest*.
› Set favourite categories.

Setting home address
The defined destination of the home address is displayed in the overview of recommended destinations.

› > *Home address*.
› Define the home address using the current vehicle position or enter the address.

Switching demo mode on / off
In demo mode, the route guidance from the starting point of the demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

When the function is switched on, Infotainment issues a query before the start of route guidance as to whether the route guidance should be carried out in the normal way or in demo mode.

› For **switching on/off** in the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Demo mode*.

Defining the starting point of the demo mode
› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Demo mode* > *Start point Define demo mode*.

Or:

› Hold down the desired point in the map and choose menu item *Start point Define demo mode*.

Updating the navigation database

Information on updating the navigation database must be requested from a **ŠKODA** partner, or refer to the following ŠKODA websites.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal**

Navigation data source Amundsen
The navigation data is stored on an Original SD Card.

In order to ensure the function of the navigation, the Original SD card, with the navigation data, must be inserted in the **respective slot in the external module**.

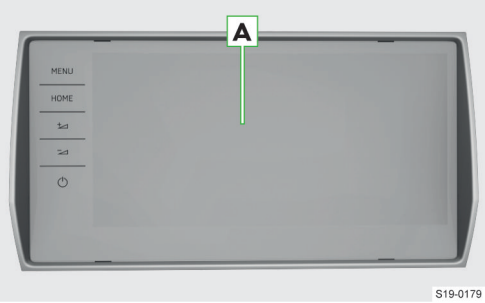
If the original SD card is damaged or lost, a new original SD card can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

With a non-original SD Card, navigation does not work.

Determining the navigation database version
› Tap **MENU** > > *System information*.

Infotainment Columbus

Infotainment overview



S19-0179

A Touchscreen

MENU All menus

HOME Favourite menus

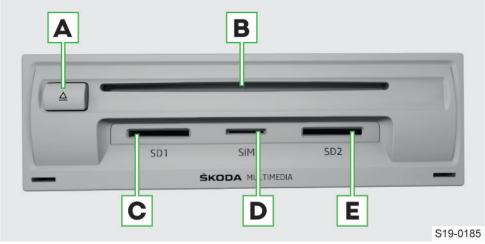
Increase the volume

Decrease the volume

Condition-based:

- **Infotainment switched off**
  - **Tap:** Turn on Infotainment
- **Infotainment switched on**
  - **Tap:** Switch sound off/on
  - **Hold:** Switch off Infotainment

External module



S19-0185

A CD / DVD eject button

B CD / DVD slot

C SD1 card slot

D SIM card slot

E SD2 card slot

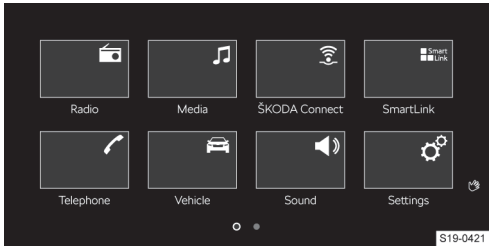
System

Infotainment Menus

MENU menu
The MENU menu contains all available Infotainment menus.

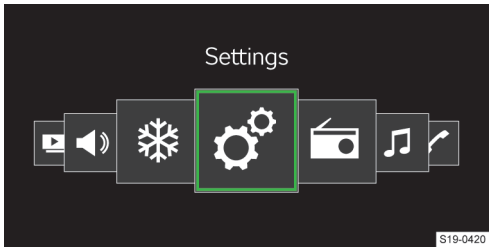
› To **display the menu** tap **MENU**.

The graphic display type for the MENU menu can be set.



S19-0421

Grid display



S19-0420

List

HOME menu
The HOME menu includes three windows for quick access to selected Infotainment menus.

› To **display the menu** tap **HOME**.

In the left window, the **navigation** menu is always displayed.

The menus in the right-hand windows can be individually adjusted.

Restriction

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions
The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > menu.

- Time and date.
- Language.
- Units.
- Restore factory settings.

Sound settings
The Infotainment sound is set in the menu **MENU** > .

The following menu items can be set.

- Setting the equalizer.
- Adjusting the volume ratio.
- Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions.

  Some are adjustable, for example the following menu items.

  - Volume adjustment of voice commands.
  - Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on.
  - Speed-dependent volume setting.
  - Setting the Infotainment to mute with the parking aid switched on.

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set.

- Setting space optimisation.
- Setting the audio profiles according to genre.
- Adjusting the subwoofer volume.

Configuration wizard
The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration wizard is automatically displayed if, after switching on the Infotainment system, there are at least two menu items that have not been set or if a new user account has been selected.

› To **switch off the automatic display**, tap on *Don't show again* when the configuration wizard is displayed.
› For **manual display**, tap on MENU > ⚙ > *Configuration wizard*.

Setting the HOME menu
The menus in the right-hand windows of the menu HOME can be changed.

› Hold down the symbol of the desired menu in the right window.

  A list of available menus is displayed.
› Select the desired menu.

Setting the MENU
The graphic display type for the MENU menu can be set as follows.

› MENU > ⚙ > *Screen* > *Menu:*.
› Select one of the following menu items.

- *Grid display* - Grid display.
- *Horizontal Display* - horizontal display.

Safely disconnect the connected USB device

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the data on the connected device!
To safely disconnect/remove the device, proceed as follows.

› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *Remove safely:*.
› Select the desired device.
› Disconnect/remove the device.

Electronic voice amplification for driver and passenger
The voice enhancer allows transmission of the driver's and passenger's voice on the speakers in the rear.

The volume setting for voice enhancement is carried out in the MENU > ⚙ > *Volume* > *Electronic voice enhancement* menu.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding
The Infotainment system must be restarted.

› Press ⏻ for more than 10 s.
› Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

The system update ensures optimal function of the Infotainment system, e.g. compatibility with new phones.

Determine system version
› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *System information*.

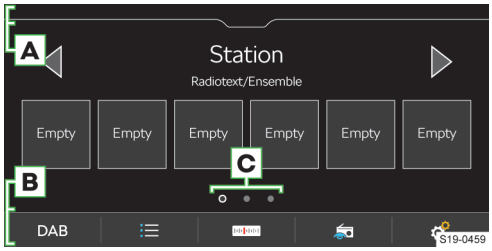
Manual update
For information on available updates, please refer to the ŠKODA internet pages.

- **http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal**

› Visit available updates.
› Save the update to a USB source.
› Insert the USB source into the front USB input.
› Tap MENU > ⚙ > *System information* > *Update software*.
› Select the connected USB device as the update source.
› Go to the update file and confirm the update.
› Confirm any messages and wait for the update process to be completed.

Screen

Overview



A Status bar

B Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu

C Other pages of the menu

Operation

NOTICE

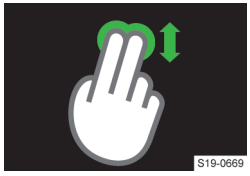
Danger of screen damage!

▶ The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Dragging up or down with two fingers



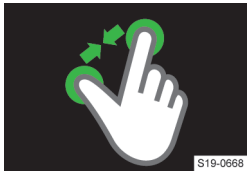
▶ Quickly review the list of phone contacts.

Pulling apart with two fingers

▶ Enlarge image.

▶ Zoom in to the map.

Pulling together with two fingers



▶ Minimize image.

▶ Zoom out of the map.

Turn two fingers

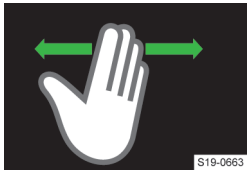
▶ Rotate image.

Finger movement

▶ Move the map.

Contactless gesture control

The Infotainment menus marked with the symbol can be controlled by hand gestures.



› Gesture control is achieved by slowly moving the hand back and forth approximately 8 cm above the lower edge of the screen.

Depending on the setting, a recognized gesture can be confirmed acoustically and animated.

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the MENU > > *Screen* menu.

▶ Brightness level of the screen.

▶ Switch off the screen.

▶ Display the time.

▶ Confirmation sounds and animations.

Keypad

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keypad characters depends on the Infotainment language that has been set.

In Infotainment, the following types are used, depending on the context.

▶ Alphanumeric.

▶ Numeric.

▶ Keypad for input.

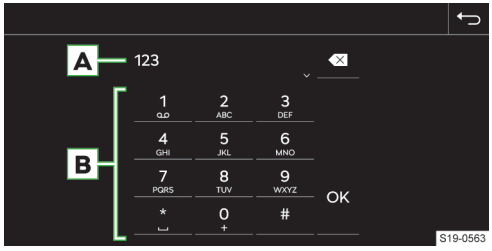
▶ Keypad for search.

Keypad example

A Input line
- Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters in sequence
- Show list of searched entries

B Keypad functional surfaces
- Change to lowercase
- Switch to the first capital letter, followed by lowercase letters
- ABC/AÄB Switch to the language keypad
- 123 Switch to the numeric and character keypad
- Show additional keypad languages
- Insert a space
- **Hold:** Show additional character variants
- < Move cursor to the left
- > Move cursor to the right
- OK Confirm the characters that have been entered

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line
- Delete characters before the cursor
  - **Tap:** delete the last character
  - **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

- OK Confirm the characters that have been entered

If context-sensitive, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a functional surface with a digit.

Operation

The Infotainment keypad is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keypad will be **automatically displayed** when Infotainment prompts for characters.

Find
During the character input, a search for corresponding entries takes place.

The entry to be searched can be entered, including diacritics.

The keypad will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

› To **display the searched entries**, tap .

Show additional keypad languages
To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

› Tap or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants
› Press and hold the sign with the symbol .
› Select the desired symbol.

Setting additional keypad languages

› Tap **MENU** > > *Additional keypad languages.*

Voice control

Functionality

Voice control principle
Voice control works according to the principle of dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user says a voice command. The Infotainment system responds or executes the voice command.

Operating conditions

✓ Ignition is switched on.
✓ Infotainment is switched on.
✓ No telephone conversation can be held via Infotainment.

Operation

Voice control process

› To **turn on** voice control, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Tap on **VOICE**.

After switching on, the icon is displayed.

› Say a voice command.

During recognition of the voice command, the icon is displayed.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays the message. During the message, the icon is displayed.

After the execution of the voice command, voice control is switched off.

Correcting a voice command

› During voice command input, press the button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control

Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

› Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

› Say the *"pause"* voice command.

Resuming stopped voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

› Tap on in the Infotainment screen.

Stopping the played back message

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Ending voice control

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

› Say the voice command *"cancel"* during voice command input.

Restriction

For some Infotainment languages, no voice control is available. The Infotainment system will indicate this.

The messages are generated by the Infotainment system. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

You cannot use voice control while a phone call is in progress.

Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > *Voice control*.

▸ Confirmation tones.

▸ Display of sample commands.

Self-help

Starting acoustic help

› If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say *"Help"*.

The *"Help"* voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Activate/deactivate the display of example voice commands in the Infotainment screen.

The system offers the option of displaying example voice commands after switching on the voice control in the Infotainment screen.

› To **turn on/off** **MENU** > > *voice control* > tap on *Example commands (Infotainment system)*.

Activate/deactivate display of example voice commands in the instrument cluster display

The system offers the option of displaying example voice commands after switching on the voice control in the Instrument cluster screen.

› To **turn on/off** **MENU** > > *voice control* > tap on *Example commands (Instrument cluster)*.

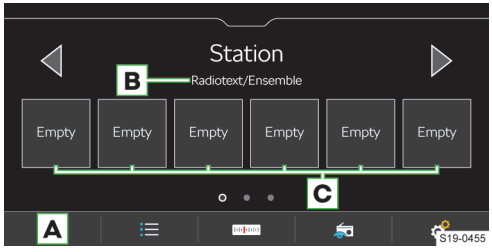
Radio

Overview

Display main menu

› Tap on **MENU** > .

Analogue and digital radio reception



A Select frequency range

B Depending on the frequency range
FM: Radio text

DAB: Name of the station group

C Preset buttons for preferred stations

List of available stations

Manual station search

Display information about the station (applies to DAB)

Settings

Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

List of available stations

› To **display**, tap .

Played station

★ Station stored on the presets

TP A traffic radio station is set

DAB signal is not available

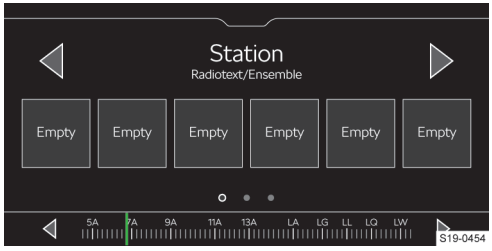
Filter the FM stations into alphabetical order, according to group or genre
The prerequisite for the filtering option is ensuring RDS and AF functions are activated.

Manual update of the station list

In the FM station list, information about the programme type and the type of the regional station can be displayed.

Operation

Select station



› Tap ◁ or ▷ at the top of the screen.

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

› To **start automatic play** › , tap *Scan*.

› To **stop automatic play**, tap SCAN.

Find stations manually

› In the Radio main menu, tap .

› To **search in sequence**, tap ◁ or ▷ next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

› Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Restriction

▶ Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

▶ Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.

▶ In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.

▶ The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu

› Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› Hold the line with the name of the desired station.

› Tap the desired preset button.

Delete favourites

› In the **Radio** main menu , tap › *Delete presets*.

› To delete **one** preset button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.

› To delete **all** preset buttons for preferred stations, tap *All* and confirm the deletion.

Buttons ◁ ▷

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using buttons ◁ ▷ in the **Radio** main menu is set as follows.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap › *Arrow buttons:*.

› Choose the change variant.

Traffic reception (TP) for FM stations on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap › *Traffic program (TP)*.

Switch traffic reception for DAB stations on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

› In the **Radio** main menu, turn on menu item › *Traffic Radio (TP)*.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap › *Advanced settings* › *DAB traffic programme announcements (TP)* **on/off**.

Assign station logo from an external source

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option to assign logos from the pictures on an external source to the station buttons.

For station logos, images in jpg, gif, png, bmp format with a maximum resolution of 500x500 pixels can be used.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Station logos*.
› Tap the desired preset button.
› Select the external source with the logo.
› Find the desired logo and confirm.

The information for updating station logos is taken from the ŠKODA web pages.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal**

Delete station logos
Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Station logos:*.
› To delete **a logo**, tap the desired preset button and confirm the deletion.
› To delete **all** logos, tap on *All* and confirm the deletion.

Activating / deactivating automatic station logo assignment
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Autostore station logos*.

Regional FM station logo
Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Region for station logo:*.
› Choose the country.

Turn on/off radio text reception
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and station presets are displayed, detailed information about the broadcast content of the FM station being listened to, or the name of the station group for the DAB station, is displayed.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Radio text*.

Switch automatic frequency control (AF) on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, Infotainment automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Automatic frequency control (AF)*.

Automatic change of frequency to a regionally linked FM station
Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of automatically switching to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss of the FM station being listened to.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *RDS Regional:*.
› Select one of the following menu items.

▸ *Fixed* - If there is a loss of signal, another station must be set manually.
▸ *Automatic* - automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

If reception is lost in the given region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Switch RDS on/off
Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Radio Data System (RDS)*.

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available.

▸ Traffic programme (TP).
▸ Radio text.
▸ RDS Regional.
▸ Automatic frequency change (AF).
▸ Regional station logo.

Switch additional DAB announcements on/off
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. For example, weather news, sports reports, financial news, etc.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *Other DAB announcements*.

Enable/disable automatic programme tracking of a DAB station
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same station with a better signal in a different DAB station group.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Advanced settings* › *DAB - DAB station tracking*.

Turn on/off automatic switching from a DAB station to the same FM station
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station being listened to is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same FM station. The symbol (FM) is displayed after the station name.

When the corresponding DAB station can be received again, the station automatically changes from FM to DAB.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap on ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Automatic DAB - FM switching*.

Turn on/off automatic switching to a similar DAB station
Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and DAB station being listened to is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to another DAB station with similar content.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Switch to a similar station*.

Activating/deactivating reception of DAB transmitter in the L band
In some countries, the DAB radio reception is only available as a so-called LBand.

› In the **Radio** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *L-Band:*.

ⓘ If there is no DAB radio reception available in the L-band in your country, we recommend turning the L-band reception off. The DAB channel scan is therefore faster.

Media

What you should be mindful of

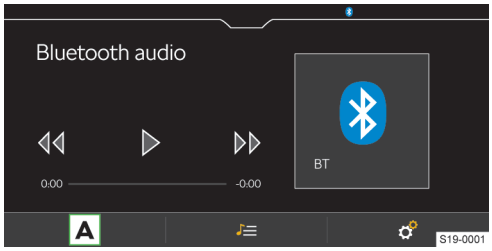
- Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
- The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

CD/DVD laser product

⚠ **CAUTION**
- The CD/DVD-player is a laser product.
- On the manufacturing date, this unit was classified as a Class 1 laser product in accordance with the national/international standards DIN EN 60825-1: 2008-05 and DHHS Rules 21 CFR, Subchapter J. The laser used in this Class 1 laser product is so weak that there is no risk of danger when operated correctly.
- This product is designed such that the laser is restricted to the inside of Infotainment. However, the installed laser could be classified in a higher class were the housing to be removed. For this reason, never remove the Infotainment housing.

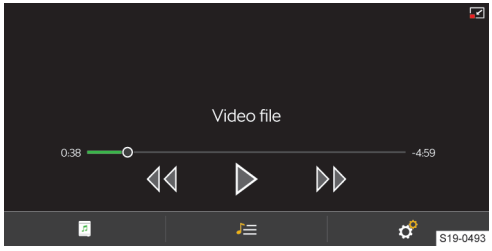
Overview

Display main menu
› Tap on MENU > ♫.



A Select source
♫≡ Manage files / multimedia database
⚙ Settings

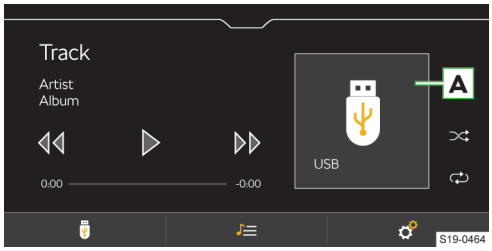
Video player



♫≡ Manage files / multimedia database
Shrink image display
Enlarge the image display
⚙ Settings

Operation

Operation - Basics



A Album image / symbol of the connected source
Tap: display available albums

▷ **Tap:** Start playback

▯▯ **Tap:** Pause

⏮ **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song

⏮ **After 3 seconds, tap from the start of playback:** to play the current title from the beginning

⏮ **Hold:** fast rewind within the title

⏭ **Tap:** play the next song

⏭ **Hold:** fast forward within the title

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging a finger over the timeline.

Extended operation

🔁 Turn repeat playback of the current track on/off

🔁 Turn repeat playback of the current album/folder on/off

🔀 Turn random playback of the current album/folder on/off

Restriction

NOTICE

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

Settings

Turn title playback including subfolders on/off

› In the **Media** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *Mix/Repeat including subfolders*.

Traffic

› To **turn on/off** the traffic monitoring during the playback of media files, go to the **Media** main menu and tap on ⚙ › *Traffic programme (TP)*.

Safely disconnect the connected device

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the data on the connected device! To safely disconnect/remove the device, proceed as follows.

› In the **Media** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Safely remove:*.

› Select the desired device.

› Disconnect/remove the device.

Manage jukebox

In the Jukebox (in the Infotainment internal memory), supported audio files can be imported from connected devices.

› To **display jukebox management and the level of internal Infotainment memory** in the **Media** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Manage jukebox*.

› To **import the files** in the jukebox management, tap *Import*.

› Select the desired connected source.

› Select the desired files or folders.

› Press the ⮌ button.

› To **delete files from the jukebox** in the jukebox management, tap *Clear*.

› Select the desired folder or files in the selected category.

› Tap 🗑 › *Delete*.

Bluetooth® player

Infotainment allows audio files of a connected Bluetooth® player to play using the A2DP and AVRCP audio profile.

With Infotainment, multiple devices can be paired using Bluetooth®, but only one of them can be used as a Bluetooth® player.

› For **connecting the Bluetooth® player**, pair and connect the device via Bluetooth®.

› In the **Media** main menu , tap on ⚙ › *Bluetooth* › *paired devices*.

› In the list, choose the device with the symbol ♫.

If a device is connected to Infotainment using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, then it cannot be connected using Bluetooth®.

SD card

NOTICE

Risk of damaging the SD card reader!

▸ Do not use SD cards with a broken slide for write protection.

› To **insert** the SD card, with the bevelled corner to the right, push into the slot in the external module until it snaps into place.

› To **remove**, first disconnect the SD card safely. To do this in the **Media** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Remove safely:* and select the SD card.

› Press on the inserted SD memory card.

The SD card moves to the eject position.

NOTICE
When using an SD card with an adapter, vehicle vibrations might cause the card to fall out of the adapter.

USB device
› To **connect**, insert the USB device into the appropriate port.

To play audio files, use USB ports that support data transfer.

› To **disconnect** disconnect the USB device first. To do this in the **Media** main menu, tap › *Remove safely*:and select the USB device.
› Disconnect the USB device.

A USB device can be connected directly to the USB port or via a connection cable.
We recommend that you use extension cables from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
USB extension cables or reducers may affect the playback function of the connected device.

Load USB audio source
After connecting the USB device, charging will start automatically when the following conditions are met.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The USB device allows charging.

The charging efficiency can be different compared to the charging from the usual mains power supply.

Depending on the type of the connected USB device and the frequency of use, the charging current may not be sufficient to charge the battery of the connected device.

Some connected audio sources may not be recognised and cannot be charged.

CD/DVD
The CD/DVD slot is located in an external module in the storage compartment on the front passenger side.

› To **insert** a CD/DVD, with the labelled side facing up, press into the CD slot until it is automatically drawn in.
› To **remove**, press the ⏏ button.

The CD/DVD is moved to the starting position.

If the ejected CD/DVD is not removed within 10 secs, it is retracted again for safety reasons.

Wi-Fi player
Infotainment allows audio files to be played from a device connected to the Infotainment via Wi-Fi.

The connected device must meet the following conditions.

✓ Support DLNA technology.
✓ The installed UPnP application allows playback.

› For **connecting the wireless player**, connect the device via Wi-Fi.
› Start the UPnP application in the connected device.
› In the main menu, select **Media** as audio source.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD card reader	Standard size	SD SDHC SDXC	FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that use the USB mass storage support protocol	
		MTP	Devices running the Android or Windows Phone operating system that support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices with an iOS operating system	HFS+

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
CD/DVD	CD/DVD drive	Audio CD (up to 80 min) CD-R / RW (Up to 700 MB) DVD±R/RW DVD-Audio DVD-Video	ISO9660; Joliet (Level 1,2,3) UDF 1.x UDF 2.x	-
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.5)	-

The GPT standards (GUID partition table) method structured audio sources are not supported by Infotainment.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility**

All information given is incidental and is for information purposes.

The company, ŠKODA AUTO, cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software update of infotainment and mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
MPEG	MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3	32 - 320	32, 44, 48	Mono, dual mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 3	mp3	8 - 160	16, 22, 24	Mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2.5 Layer 3			8, 11, 12	
WMA	Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	wma	8 - 384	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	Windows Media Audio 9.2		8 - 320		
	Windows Media Audio 10		8 - 768	32, 44, 48, 96	
FLAC	FLAC	flac	defined by the format Approx. 5.5 Mbps	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 64, 88, 96	Mono, stereo, 5.1, 7.1
OGG-Vorbis	OGC-Vorbis	ogg	defined by the format Approx. 5.5 Mbps	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Mono, Stereo
ADTS	AAC LC	aac	16 - 400	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Mono, Stereo
	AAC HE			16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	AAC HEv2				

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
RIFF	WAV	wav	64 - 3072	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo

Files that are protected by **DRM**- and **iTunes®** methods are not supported by Infotainment.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension	Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s]
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mPV	1.5
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v	15
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov	50
MPJEG		
MPEG 4 (ISO)		
Xvid	Xvid	20
WMV9	wmv asf	50

Supported playlists

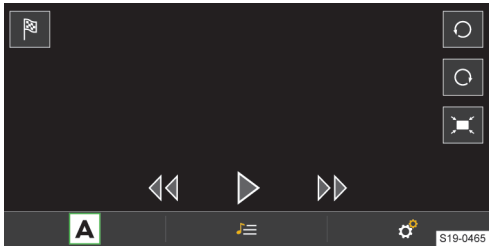
Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx
PLA	pls

Images

Overview

Display main menu

› Tap on MENU > .



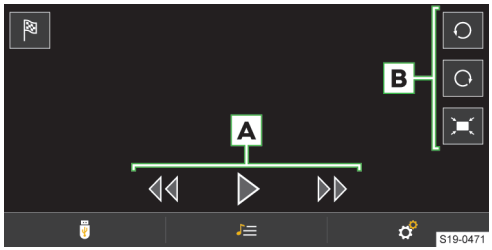
A Select source

Manage files

Settings

Operation

Touch operation

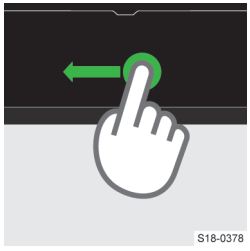


A Look at images
- ▶ ⏩ Show the next image
- ▶ ⏪ Show the previous image
- ▶ ▷ Start slideshow
- ▶ ⏸ Stop slideshow

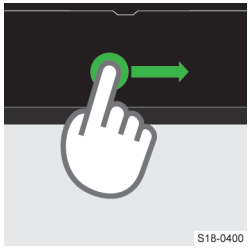
B View image
- ▶ ↺ Turn to the left
- ▶ ↻ Turn to the right
- ▶ ⛶ Display in initial size

🏁 Guidance for GPS coordinates.
The functional area is displayed if the image contains information about GPS.

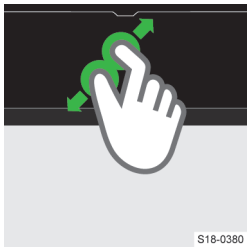
Gesture control



▶ Show the next image.

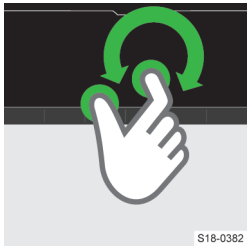


▶ Show the previous image.

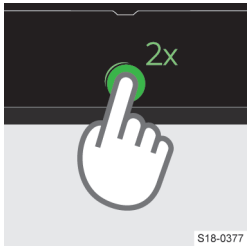


▶ Enlarge view.

▶ Zoom out.



▶ Turn 90 °.



▶ Maximize image/ display image size.

Settings

The following Infotainment functions are set in the MENU > 🖼 > ⚙ menu.

- ▶ Display image size.
- ▶ Display image duration during the slideshow.
- ▶ Slideshow repeat.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Specification	File system
SD card	SD card reader	Standard size SD SDHC SDXC	FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	USB stick	
		HDD (without special software)	
CD/DVD	CD/DVD drive	Audio CD (up to 80 min) CD-R / RW (Up to 700 MB) DVD ±R/RW DVD-Audio DVD-Video	-

Supported files

Codec type	File extension	Max. resolution [Mpx]
BMP	bmp	4
JPG; JPEG	jpg; jpeg	4 (Progressive Mode) 64
GIF	gif	4
PNG	png	4

The maximum supported image size is 20 MB.

Video DVD

What you should be mindful of

CD/DVD laser product

⚠ **CAUTION**

- The CD/DVD-player is a laser product.
- On the manufacturing date, this unit was classified as a Class 1 laser product in accordance with the national/international standards DIN EN 60825-1: 2008-05 and DHHS Rules 21 CFR, Subchapter J. The laser used in this Class 1 laser product is so weak that there is no risk of danger when operated correctly.
- This product is designed such that the laser is restricted to the inside of Infotainment. However, the installed laser could be classified in a higher class were the housing to be removed. For this reason, never remove the Infotainment housing.

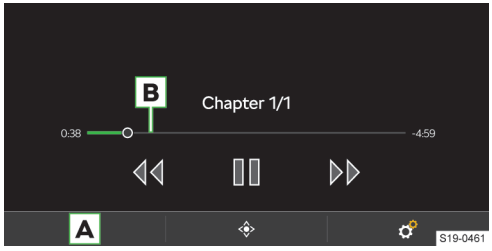
Overview

Display main menu

› To display the main menu, insert a CD / DVD in the corresponding slot in the external module.

Or:

› In the **Media** main menu, select the video source, display the folder/track list and start the video file.



A Select source

B Playback timeline

Display the Video DVD menu

Settings

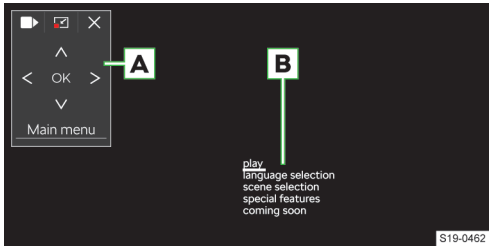
Operation

Playback control

- **Tap:** start playback
- **Tap:** pause
- **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song
- **After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap:** to play the current title from the beginning
- **Hold:** fast rewind within the title
- **Tap:** play the next song
- **Hold:** fast forward within the title

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

DVD menu



A Operating surface

- ▶ - Move the operating surface left / right
- ◀ - Move the operating surface left / right
- ☑ - Hide full screen display of the operating surface

- ▶ - Show the full screen display of the operating surface
- ▶ × - Close the operating surface
- ▶ <∧>∨ - Movement in the EPG/teletext
- ▶ *Main menu* - return to the **Video DVD** main menu

B Example of the displayed menu of the DVD

Restriction

For safety reasons, the image display is switched off at speeds over 5 km/h. Only the sound continues.

The respective message appears on the Infotainment screen.

Settings

› In the **Video DVD** main menu, tap .

Depending on the DVD, some of the following menu items are displayed.

- ▶ Format for setting up the screen width/height ratio.
- ▶ Select the audio channel.
- ▶ Subtitle selection.
- ▶ Enable/disable the parental control settings.
- ▶ Parental control settings.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD card reader	Standard size	SD SDHC SDXC	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	
			HDD (without special software)	
			USB devices that use the USB mass storage support protocol	
CD/DVD	CD/DVD drive	CD-R / RW (Up to 700 MB) DVD±R/RW DVD-Video default DVD	ISO9660; Joliet (Level 1,2,3) UDF 1.x UDF 2.x	-

The GPT standards (GUID partition table) method structured audio sources are not supported by Infotainment.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension	Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s]	Max. resolution
MPEG 1	mpeg	1.5	352x288
MPEG 2	mpeg	25	720x576
MPEG 4 (H.264)	mp4		
MPEG 4 (ISO)	mov		
MPJEG	.avi		
Xvid			
DivX			
QuickTime	mov		
Matroska	.mkv		

Media Command

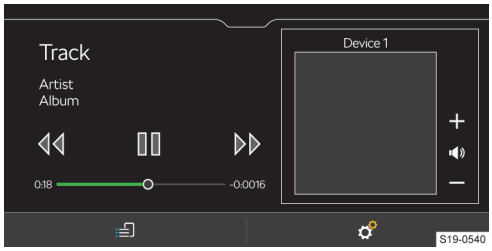
Functionality

The Media Commandfunction allows playback of audio files or videos in up to two tablets that are connected to Infotainment via Wi-Fi, to control Infotainment.

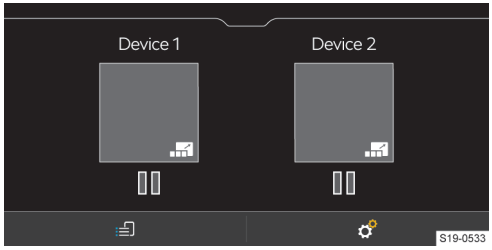
Overview

Display main menu

› Tap on MENU > .



Main menu for a tablet



Main menu for two tablets

Choice of connected tablet

Settings

Operating conditions

✓ Data transfer of Infotainment is switched on.

Switching the transmission on/off takes place in the MENU > > *Data transmission mobile devices* > *Enable data transfer for ŠKODA apps* menu item.

✓ Infotainment operation via the application is enabled.

The adjustment of the operation takes place in the MENU > > *Data transmission mobile devices* > *Operation through apps:* menu item.

One of the following menu items can be selected.

- *Deactivate* - the operation is deactivated.
- *Confirm* - Operation requires confirmation at the start of the application.
- *Allow* - the operation requires no confirmation.

✓ In the tablet(s), the ŠKODA Media Command application is installed.

✓ The tablet(s) are connected to the Infotainment hotspot.

Operation

Start playback

› For **selection of the playback source** in the main menu, tap and select the source tablet.

› For **playback** select the category and then the title.

If two tablets are connected, the title playback starts in the two tablets at the same time.

Playback control

- **Tap:** Start playback
- **Tap:** Pause
- **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song
- **After 3 seconds, tap from the start of playback:** to play the current title from the beginning
- **Tap:** play the next song
- Increase the audio volume of the tablet
- Decrease the audio volume of the tablet
- View control options for two tablets
- View control options for a tablet
- Mute the tablet
- Unmute the tablet

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging a finger over the timeline.

Function restriction

Some tablet types allow playback of audio files or videos by an inserted SD card in the tablet. Playback of these tracks may be limited.

If several devices are connected to the Infotainment system by means of Wi-Fi, there is the danger of Wi-Fi overloading and thus also the inability of Media Command to function properly.

High-definition video playback may cause playback problems or problems connecting the tablets to the Infotainment system.

Settings

ŠKODA Media Command application

The application can be downloaded to the mobile device after reading the following QR code or by referring to the ŠKODA mobile application website.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/service-app**

Connect tablet with Infotainment hotspot

› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Mobile Hotspot* > *Mobile Hotspot*.
› Turn on Wi-Fi on the tablet.
› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment hotspot refers to the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Mobile Hotspot* > *Hotspot Settings (Wi-Fi)* > *SSID:*.

› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Mobile Hotspot* > *Hotspot Settings (Wi-Fi)* > *Network key:*.

› Confirm the connection.
› In the tablet, start the application ŠKODA Media Command.

Supported files

Format	Codec type	Android operating system	iOS operating system
Video	MPEG-4 Part 2	✓	✓
	MPEG-4 Part 10 (H264)	✓	✓
	Xvid	✓	×
Audio	MPEG-1; 2 and 2.5 Layer 3 (mp3)	✓	✓
	aac	✓ (4,1+)	✓
	m4a	✓ (4,1+)	✓
	ogg	✓	×
	flac	✓	×
	wav	✓ (4,1+)	✓

Mobile device management

Overview

Mobile device management

› In the **Telephone** main menu , tap on the functional surface ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *paired devices*.

In the list of paired mobile devices, the following symbols may appear for the individual devices.

- **Grey icon** - the device can be connected as a telephone.
  Green icon - the device is connected as a telephone.
- **Grey icon** - the device can be connected as a Bluetooth® player.
  White icon - the device is connected as a Bluetooth® player.
- **Grey icon** - The device can be connected to use telephone contacts and for text message functionality.
  Blue icon - The device can be connected to use telephone contacts and for text message functionality.

Possible functions of the connected mobile device

The functions of the device depend on the following connection types.

Connection variant	First device Main phone		Second device Additional phone		Third device	Fourth device
	Telephone	SIM card in external module	Telephone	SIM card in external module		
1.	**HFP** incoming / outgoing calls SMS Telephone contacts Bluetooth® player	-	**HFP** incoming calls Bluetooth® player	Data connection	Bluetooth® player	-
2.	**rSAP** incoming / outgoing calls SMS Telephone contacts Data connection Bluetooth® player	-	**HFP** incoming calls Bluetooth® player	-	Bluetooth® player	-
3.	**HFP** incoming / outgoing calls SMS Telephone contacts Bluetooth® player	-	-	incoming calls SMS Data connection	Bluetooth® player	-
4.	-	incoming / outgoing calls SMS Telephone contacts Data connection	**HFP** incoming calls SMS Bluetooth® player	-	Telephone contacts Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth® player

With Infotainment only **a mobile device** can be connected as a Bluetooth® player.

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features
The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Connection restrictions
- ▸ With Infotainment, a max. of 20 mobile devices are paired.
- ▸ The range of the connection of the mobile device to Infotainment is limited to the passenger compartment.
- ▸ After reaching the maximum number, the pairing of the next mobile device will replace that of the device that has not been used for the longest period of time.

Compatibility of mobile devices
It is possible to check the ŠKODA web pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility**

All information given is incidental and is for information purposes.

The company, ŠKODA AUTO, cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to software update of infotainment and mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices
Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee total Bluetooth® compatibility with Infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version as well as the implementation of Bluetooth® protocols by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices
Mobile devices can be used to install applications that allow you to view additional information on the Infotainment screen, or to operate the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications, as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not function on all mobile devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper functioning.

The scope of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the type of Infotainment, as well as the vehicle and country.

Information about ŠKODAapplications
Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps**

Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment
› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on Infotainment **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® visibility of the Infotainment **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Visibility:* > *Visible*.
› Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
› Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found by tapping **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Name:*.

› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

The mobile device is connected to the Infotainment or just paired, depending on the number of devices that are already connected.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device
› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on Infotainment **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.
› Tap on **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Search for devices*.
› Ensure the visibility of the device to be connected.
› Select the desired device from the list of Bluetooth® devices.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a mobile device that is already paired
The connection with an already paired mobile device is made automatically after switching on the ignition; if necessary the device can be connected manually as follows.
› Turn on the ignition.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on the mobile device.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on Infotainment **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices*.
› In the device list, select the desired device and the Bluetooth® profile.
› Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
› If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Disconnect from a mobile device
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices*.
› Tap on the Bluetooth® profile icon of the desired mobile device.

Delete a paired mobile device
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Paired devices*.
› To **delete a** mobile device, tap 🗑 and confirm the deletion.
› To **delete all** mobile devices, tap on *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

Connection via a SIM card in the external module
The SIM card can be used for **phone and data services**.

Use a mini-sized SIM card, standard size 25x15 mm.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Turn on the menu item in **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Telephone interface "Business"*.
› Insert a SIM card into the corresponding slot in the external module in the storage compartment on the passenger's side .

Insert the SIM card **with the bevelled corner on the left and the contacts facing downwards** until it locks.

NOTICE
When inserting an incorrectly sized SIM card or in the wrong direction, there is a risk of damage to the external module.

When using the SIM card for the first time, select one of the following menu items to use the SIM card.

- ▶ *Calls too* - enabling data and telephone services.
- ▶ *Only data connections* - enabling of data services only.

› If the SIM card is protected by a PIN code, then the PIN code of the SIM card must be entered.
› Confirm the entered PIN code by tapping **OK**.

Or:

› Tap to save and confirm the PIN code.
› Set the data service provider's required network and confirm the Internet connection.

If your data provider is not available in the list, ask your provider whether one of the displayed providers can be used.

By using the SIM card for phone services, the connection to the connected phones is terminated.

Remove the SIM card from the external module
› Press on the inserted SIM card until it snaps into the delivery position. Then remove it.

Set network parameters
› Tap **MENU** > > *Network*.
› Set the desired parameters.

For accurate parameters for setting the network, contact the data service provider.

Set the parameters for the data connection
› Tap **MENU** > > *Network* > *Data Connection:*.
› Set the desired parameters.

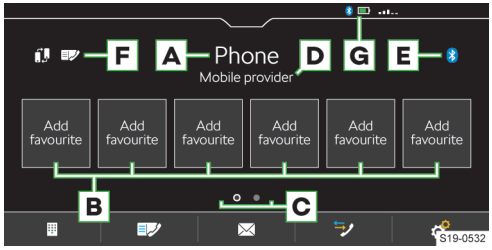
Connection to the phone via rSAP Bluetooth® profile
› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Turn on the menu item in **PHONE** > > *Telephone interface "Business"*.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® on Infotainment **MENU** > > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® visibility of the Infotainment **MENU** > > *Bluetooth* > *Visibility:* Turn on > *Visible*.
› Switch on Bluetooth® and its visibility in the phone.
› Pair and connect the phone to the Infotainment via the rSAP Bluetooth® profile.

The prerequisite for establishing an Internet connection is using a telephone with a SIM card with active data services.

Telephone

Telephone main menu

Display main menu
› Tap on **MENU** > .



A Name of the connected telephone
▶ **Tap:** Show list of previously connected phones
B Preset buttons for preferred contacts
C Choice of storage group for the preferred contacts
D Name of telephone service providers
▶ If the symbol ▷ is displayed in front of the name, roaming is active.
E Symbol for the connection type
F List of connected telephones, which are available as the source of telephone contacts
G Status symbol of the phone
Change the main phone to the extension telephone
Enter the telephone number
Contact list
Text messages
Call lists
Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.

The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.

✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.

The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > > *Bluetooth* > *Visibility:*.> *Visible*.

✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.
✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

✓ Through Infotainment, no mobile device can be connected using Apple CarPlay.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap .

› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
If, for example, the digits 32 are entered, contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. are displayed next to the numeric keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

› To **display** the contact list in the **telephone** main menu, tap .

› To **find** details within the list, tap *Find*.

› Enter the details you wish to find.

› To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

› To display the **details** for a contact, tap ›.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap › .

Telephone conversation

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected.

End connection / reject incoming call / end call
Answer an incoming call / return to the held call
Switch the ringer off / on
Hold a call
Switch the microphone off / on
Show details of the caller
Set up a conference call

› To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the telephone**, go to the **telephone** main menu and tap on › *hands-free*.

› To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap .

Conference call

A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

› Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/ conference.

Or:

› Accept a new incoming call by tapping the function area .

› To **start** a conference call, tap on the functional area .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context.

Hold the conference call and leave temporarily (the conference will continue in the background)
Return to the conference being held
Switch the microphone off / on
End the conference
Show details of the conference call

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected.

Show details of the conference call participants
End conversation with the conference call participant
Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Send a text message

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap › *New text message*.

› Write a text message and confirm; a view of the message is displayed.

The message can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

› Consult or select the recipient of the message, if necessary tap to enter the phone number.

› Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.

› Tap on .

Display received text messages

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap › *E-mails* .

› To **display the Message**, select the desired message.

The message content and the following menu with functions is displayed.

Read the text message using the generated Infotainment voice.

Display the menu with the following functions of an accepted message.
Option to answer the message by means of a template.
Delete message.
Recognise phone numbers in the message.

Forward message, with the option to edit the message before sending.

Reply to the sender by sending a message.

Settings for Infotainment telephone functions

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts

› To **save** the desired preset button, press and hold.
› Select a contact from the displayed list.
› If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.
› To **delete** tap on **Telephone** ⚙ › *User profile* ›*Manage favourites* in the main menu.
› To delete **one** preset, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

› To delete **all** presets, tap on *Delete all* and confirm the deletion.

Import telephone contacts

After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 4000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

› For a **manual** update of the list in the **telephone** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *User profile* › *Import contacts*.

Show pictures on phone contacts

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ⚙ › *User profile* › *Show pictures for contacts*.

Sort contacts in the phone book

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *User profile* › *Sort by:*.
› Select the type by which to sort.

Ringer

Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

› To **set the Infotainment ringer** in the **Telephone** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *User profile* › *Select ringtone*.
› Select the ringtone.

Number for the voice mailbox

› To **set the voice mailbox number** in the **Telephone** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *User profile*› *Mailbox number:*.
› Enter the number of the voice mailbox.

Conference calls

› To **enable/disable the option for conference call setup** in the **phone** main menu, tap ⚙ › *conference*.

Prefer services of SIM card in external module

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap on ⚙ › *User profile* › *Prioritise:*.
› Select one of the following menu items.
  ▶ *Automatic* - Depending on the telephone service provider.
  ▶ *Telephone call* - Telephone calls are preferred.
  ▶ *Data transfer* - A data connection is preferred.

Rename profile of SIM card in external module

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Profile name:* .
› Enter the name and confirm.

Select device to use the contacts

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Select device contacts*.
› Select the desired device.

Set telephone functions of SIM card in external module

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Call settings*.
› Select and set the desired menu item.

Delete call log

Deleting the selected call type by means of a SIM card inserted in the external module or by means of a telephone connected to the Infotainment via the rSAP Bluetooth® profile.

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Delete calls*.
› Select the desired menu item.
› Confirm the deletion.

Set the functions of the text messages

Settings for text messages of a SIM card inserted in the external module or in the telephone connected via the Bluetooth® profile rSAP.

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Text message settings*.
› Select and set the desired menu item.

Switching telephone functions on / off in the external module

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ⚙ › *"Business" telephone interface*.

Switching SIM card telephone data services on / off in the external module

› In the **Telephone** main menu, ⚙ › tap *Use SIM card only for data connection*.

By switching on the menu item, the SIM card is used exclusively for data services.

By switching off the menu item, the SIM card is used for telephone functions and data services.

Set PIN code of SIM card in external module

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ⚙ › *PIN settings*.
› Set the PIN code and confirm.

Redirect incoming SIM card calls in the external module

› In the **Telephone** main menu, tap ⚙ › *Redirect calls*.
› Set the desired menu item.

Wi-Fi

Functionality

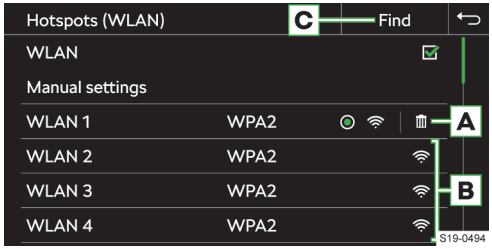
Wi-Fi can be used to connect to the Internet, to playback audio files in the **Media** menu or for operating the Infotainment system using an application in the connected device (e.g. ŠKODA Media Command).

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices. At the same time, the Infotainment can be connected to another hotspot.

Overview of available hotspots

Display available hotspots

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:*.



A Previously connected hotspots

B Available hotspots

C Updating the list of available hotspots

⊙ Currently connected hotspot

🗑 Delete information about the hotspot connection

Wi-Fi signal strength of the hotspot

The Wi-Fi signal from the hotspot is not available

Function restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Turn on the ignition.

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Mobile Hotspot* > *Mobile Hotspot*.

› Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.

› In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment hotspot refers to the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Mobile Hotspot* > *Hotspot Settings (Wi-Fi)* > *SSID:*.

› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Mobile Hotspot* > *Hotspot Settings (Wi-Fi)* > *Network key:*

› Confirm the connection.

Connect Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› Turn on the ignition.

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:* > *Wi-Fi*.

› Select the desired hotspot in the list of available hotspots.

› Enter the password for connecting to mobile devices.

ⓘ Infotainment stores passwords for previously connected hotspots.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is factory-set at *WPA2* and cannot be changed.

Change the name of the Infotainment hotspot

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Mobile Hotspot* > *Hotspot Settings (Wi-Fi)* > *SSID:*.

› Enter the name and confirm.

› Tap *Save*.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 8 and a maximum of 63 characters.

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Mobile Hotspot* > *Hotspot Settings (Wi-Fi)* > *Network key:*.

› Enter the password and confirm.

› Tap *Save*.

Manual connection of Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

› Set the hotspot backup of the mobile device to WPA2.

› Turn on the ignition.

› Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu item **MENU** > ⚙ > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi:* > *Wi-Fi*.

› Tap *Manual settings*.

› Enter the name of the hotspot to connect to and the access password.

› Tap *Connect*.

› Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Tips for a perfect connection

▸ Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.

▸ Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.

▶ For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.
▶ If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

Data connection

Settings

Mobile data
Mobile data for the data connection may be subject to charges according to the mobile network operator's tariff conditions.

Types of data connection setup
▶ By connecting the Infotainment with the **external hotspot** via Wi-Fi.
▶ By using a **SIM card** with data services inserted in the external module of the Infotainment.
▶ By connecting the Infotainment with a mobile phone **via the Bluetooth® profile rSAP**.

Connection via a data SIM card in the external module
A SIM card size mini (standard size 25x15 mm) with enabled data services must be used.

› Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment.
› Turn on the menu item in **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Telephone interface "Business"*.
› Insert a SIM card into the corresponding slot in the external module in the storage compartment on the passenger's side .

Insert the SIM card **with the bevelled corner on the left and the contacts facing downwards** until it locks.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
When inserting an incorrectly sized SIM card or in the wrong direction, there is a risk of damage to the external module.

› Select one of the following menu items to use the SIM card.
▶ *Calls too* - enabling data and telephone services.
▶ *Only data connections* - enabling of data services only.
› If the SIM card is protected by a PIN code, then the PIN code of the SIM card must be entered.
› Confirm the entered PIN code by tapping **OK**.

Or:

› Tap 🖫 to save and confirm the PIN code.
› Set the data service provider's required network and confirm the Internet connection.

ⓘ If your data provider is not available in the list, ask your provider whether one of the displayed providers can be used.

Set network parameters
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Network*.
› Set the desired parameters.

ⓘ For accurate parameters for setting the network, contact the data service provider.

Set the parameters for the data connection
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *Network* > *Data Connection:*.
› Set the desired parameters.

Connection to the phone via rSAP Bluetooth® profile
› Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment.
› Turn on the menu item in **PHONE** > ⚙ > *Telephone interface "Business"*.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® in Infotainment **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Bluetooth*.
› Turn on the Bluetooth® visibility of the Infotainment **MENU** > ⚙ > *Bluetooth* > *Visibility:* Turn on > *Visible*.
› Switch on Bluetooth® and its visibility in the phone.
› Pair and connect the phone to the Infotainment via the rSAP Bluetooth® profile.

ⓘ The prerequisite for establishing an Internet connection is using a telephone with a SIM card with active data services.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

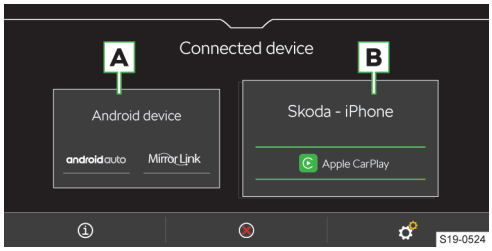
Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable.

Supported connection types
SmartLink supports the following connection types.

▶ Android Auto.
▶ Apple CarPlay.
▶ MirrorLink.

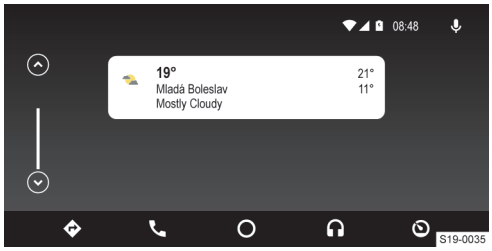
Overview of the SmartLink connection

Main menu SmartLink
› Tap on **MENU** > SmartLink.



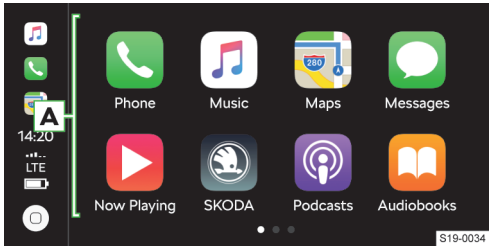
A Previously connected device
B Currently connected device
ⓘ Display information about SmartLink
⊗ Separation of the active connection
Settings for the SmartLink menu

Android Auto



Navigation applications
Telephone applications
○ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.
Music applications
Display of other available applications as well as the option to return to the SmartLink main menu
Turn on voice control (Google Voice)

Apple CarPlay



A List of available applications
○ Depending on the duration of operation:
▸ **Tap:** Return to the Apple CarPlay main menu
▸ **Hold:** Turn on voice control (Siri)

MirrorLink

It is not possible to operate the application while driving
Return to the SmartLink main menu
List of running applications
Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices
Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

✓ The mobile device supports the following SmartLink connection types: Android Auto. Apple CarPlay and MirrorLink.
✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLinkconnection, are supported in the respective market.
✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

✓ The device to be connected must have Android AutoSupport.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Android Auto connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc..

✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

✓ The device to be connected must have Apple CarPlaySupport.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that the Apple CarPlay connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc..

✓ Siri voice control is on.
✓ The data connection is switched on in the mobile device.

Conditions for MirrorLink

✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLinkSupport.

A list of devices and applications that the MirrorLink connection supports can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consorcium®.

✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

Display of control surfaces at the bottom

Display of control surfaces at the top

Return to the MirrorLink main menu

Restriction

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For safety reasons, operation of some SmartLinkapplications while driving is not possible or is restricted.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an Android Auto connection

- For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.
- By connecting the device, all currently connected Bluetooth® devices will be disconnected and the device will automatically be connected as the main telephone.
- For the duration of the connection, no Bluetooth® devices can be connected to the Infotainment system. The SIM card inserted in the external module can only be used for data connection.
- If route guidance is taking place at this moment in Infotainment, then there is the option to start the route guidance in the Android Auto application. And vice versa, if route guidance is currently taking place in the Android Auto application, then there is the possibility that this will be terminated by the start of route guidance by the Infotainment system.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an Apple CarPlay connection

- For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.
- Connecting the device disconnects all currently connected Bluetooth® devices.
- For the duration of the connection, no Bluetooth® devices can be connected to the Infotainment system. The SIM card inserted in the external module can only be used for data connection.
- If route guidance is taking place at this moment in Infotainment, then there is the option to start the route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application. And vice versa, if route guidance is currently taking place in the Apple CarPlay application, then there is the possibility that this will be terminated by the start of route guidance by the Infotainment system.

Functionality restriction of Infotainment with an MirrorLink connection

- For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the **Media** menu.
- If you wish to use the device to be connected in the **Telephone** menu, the device must be paired with and connected to the Infotainment system by Bluetooth® before establishing the MirrorLink connection.

Settings

Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.

› Turn on the mobile device.

› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.

› Choose to connect via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay – Disconnection

› In the Apple CarPlay main menu, tap on the “ŠKODA” functional area.

› Tap on ⊗.

Android Auto - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.

› Turn on the mobile device.

› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.

› Choose to connect via Android Auto.

Android Auto - Disconnection

› In the main menu of Android Auto ☺ › tap on “Return to ŠKODA”.

› Tap on ⊗.

MirrorLink - Connection via USB

› Turn on the Infotainment.

› Turn on the mobile device.

› Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.

› Choose to connect through MirrorLink.

MirrorLink - Disconnection

› In the MirrorLink main menu, tap .

› Tap on ⊗.

Change to another device / connection type

Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

› Tap on MENU › .

› Select the desired device or connection type.

ŠKODA Connect online services

Functionality

ŠKODA Connect online service offer the option of connecting the vehicle to the online world. They thus represent an extension of the vehicle and Infotainment functions.

For the functionality of the ŠKODA Connect Online Services, the vehicle must be within range of a mobile network through which the services are provided. The availability, the connection speed and the technology used in the mobile network can be different in the respective countries and are dependent on the mobile network operator.

The ŠKODA Connect online services are not included in the equipment of the vehicle. They can be ordered separately on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.

The offer of ŠKODA Connect online services depends on the type of vehicle and its trim level, Infotainment and country. Availability in each country can be checked on the ŠKODA Connect website.

The rights and obligations of the Parties with respect to the provision of these services are governed by a separate agreement. Current legal documents regarding the online services can be found on the ŠKODA Connect Portal as well as the ŠKODA Connect application.

ŠKODA Connect website
▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect**

For example, the ŠKODA Connect website contains the latest information about the online services, a link to the ŠKODA Connect Portal as well as the option of downloading the ŠKODA Connect application.

ŠKODA Connect Portal website
▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/connect-portal**

The ŠKODA Connect Portal website is used, for example, for registration, activation and ordering of online services. It also provides the option of remote access to the vehicle.

Information call
The information call may be used in the case of problems with the online services or for information regarding the products and services of the ŠKODA brand.

✓ The functional condition represents the active online ŠKODA Connect services.

› Press the ℹ button.

Breakdown call
The breakdown call can be used in the event of a breakdown.

✓ The functional condition represents the active online ŠKODA Connect services.

› Press the 🔧 button.

ŠKODA Connect Application
The ŠKODA Connect application enables remote access to the vehicle using a mobile device. It can also be used for user registration and to activate and configure the online services.

The application can be downloaded to the mobile device after scanning the following QR code or link.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/skodaconnectapp**

Settings

Registration and activation of online services
User registration, as well as the activation of the ŠKODA Connect online services, is completed on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.

In order to complete user registration, you will need to access your e-mails.

In order to activate ŠKODA Connect, proceed as follows.

› Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment.
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Registration*.
› Enter and confirm the registration PIN you have received during user and vehicle registration on the

ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.

› Wait for the registration completion message to appear.

› Confirm any messages on the screen.

Delete user

› Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment.

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Registration*.

› Tap *Delete user* > *Delete*.

› Confirm the deletion.

ⓘ By deleting the registered vehicle in the user account on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal the user is also deleted in Infotainment.

Changing the user

› Switch on the ignition and the Infotainment.

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Registration*.

› Tap *New owner* > *Change ownership*.

› Enter and confirm the registration PIN code received during registration of the new user and during vehicle registration on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website.

› If necessary, confirm the change by tapping the function surface *Change main users*.

Management of online services

In the service management, it is possible to display information about the online services, the validity of their licence, or to switch the services on/off.

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Privacy settings and manage services*.

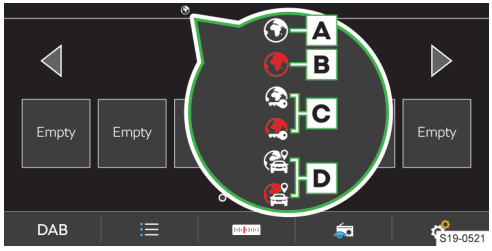
› To **display the designations and the status of the services**, select the desired service.

› For **detailed information about the service** tap >.

› To **switch the services on/off**, tap the Checkbox.

Connection status of the online services

The connection status of the online services of ŠKODA Connect online services is indicated by an icon in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.



A The ŠKODA Connect online services are available.

At the same time the symbol of the data connection type can be displayed.

B The ŠKODA Connect online services are not available.

C Localisation services are restricted or disabled.

Detailed information about the online services can be viewed in the Online Services Administration.

D Localisation services are enabled.

Detailed information about the online services can be viewed in the Online Services Administration.

Localisation services

For the complete functionality of some online services, activated localisation services are required.

Localisation services include, for example, information on the last parking position, area notification or speed notification.

When localisation services are active, the symbol will be displayed in the status line in the Infotainment screen.

Switching Private mode function on/off

By switching the Private mode function on, the services relating to sending vehicle information and personal data, which are essential for the provision of online services, are deactivated.

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Services Management* > *Private mode*.

ⓘ The emergency call remains fully functional after turning on the private mode feature.
The functions of the information and breakdown call are limited.

Switch Care Connect function on/off

By switching the Care Connect services off, the services relating to sending vehicle information and personal data, which are essential for the provision of Care Connect online services, are deactivated.

› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Services Management* > *Care Connect*.

NOTICE

The emergency call remains fully functional after turning off the Care Connect feature.
The functions of the information and breakdown call are limited.

Switch on/off Infotainment Online function

By switching off the Infotainment OnlineServices, the services in relation to the provision of online services Infotainment Online are switched off.

› **MENU** > ⚙ > *ŠKODA Connect (online services)* > *Services Management* > *Infotainment Online*.

Switch online services on/off

It is possible to have the online services switched off/on exclusively by a ŠKODA service partner.

After turning off the online services, **none of the** ŠKODA Connect **online services, including the emergency calls** are functioning.

To inform the vehicle user that the ŠKODA Connect online services are **out of order**, the service partner applies the sticker at a visible point in the vehicle (e.g. on the roof cladding).

This sticker **must not be removed**as long as the online services are off.

NOTICE
It should be noted that the emergency, information and breakdown calls are not available after switching off the online services.
For this reason, **no** automatic emergency call is made in the event of a serious car accident.

Navigation

Navigation announcements

Infotainment route guidance takes place using graphic driving recommendations and navigation announcements.

The navigation announcements are generated by the Infotainment system. Navigation announcement clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

Repeat the last navigation announcement
› Tap on > .

Turn off navigation announcements
› Tap on > .

Setting navigation announcements
› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Navigation announcements*.

Navigation overviews

Display main menu
› Tap on MENU > .

Map overview

- A Vehicle position
- B Route
- C Functional surface for the operation of the map display
- D Functional surface of the POI
- E Functional surface of the POI list
- F Road sign for the affected route section
- G Information on the maximum permitted speed

Show the following menu depending on context

There is no route guidance - search/enter a new destination

Route guidance is taking place

- ▸ Show route plan.
- ▸ Set traffic obstruction manually.
- ▸ Search for destination/enter.
- ▸ End route guidance.

Show the following menu

- ▸ Save current vehicle position as a flag target.
- ▸ Show list of saved routes.
- ▸ Display list of stored destinations.
- ▸ Display list of last destinations.
- ▸ Route guidance to home address.

POI Search

Map display options

Change the map display between the digital instrument cluster and the Infotainment screen

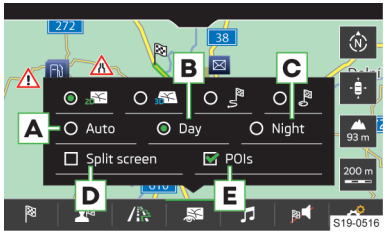
Display for navigation announcement

Settings

Symbols displayed in the map

- Destination position
- Intermediate destination position
- Location of home address
- ★ Favourite position

Map options



A Automatic map display in day or night mode (depending on the currently active vehicle lighting)

B Daytime map display

C Night-time map display

D Switch the split screen display on/off

E Switching on/ off of the selected POI categories display

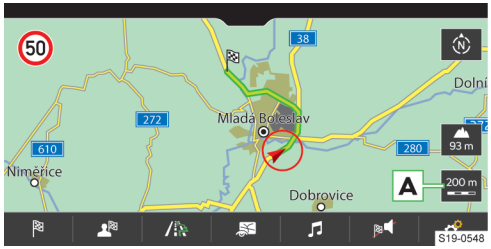
Map display in the digital instrument cluster

The map can be displayed in the digital instrument cluster and in infotainment at the same time.

The type of map displayed in the digital instrument cluster can be selected.

› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Map* > *Map view in the station wagon:*.

Map scale



It is possible to change the map scale manually or to turn on the automatic change of scale.

› To **display the operating surfaces** for changing the map scale, tap A.

Types of manual scale change

▸ Touch the screen with two fingers and pull them apart or close them together.

▸ For slider or functional areas, use and .

Switch on/off the automatic change of scale

When the automatic scale is active, the map scale changes automatically, depending on the type of road used and the manoeuvre you are about to undertake.

The automatic scale is only active as long as the map is centred on the vehicle position.

› To **turn on navigation** in the main menu, tap > .

The functional surface is highlighted in green.

› To **turn off navigation** in the main menu, tap > .

The functional surface is highlighted in white.

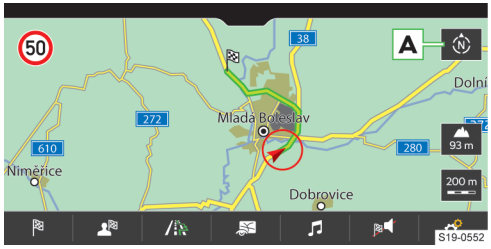
The turning off occurs likewise when the map is moved or the map scale is changed manually.

Map view in reduced scale

The map scale is reduced for a few seconds and then restored.

› To **display**, tap .

Map orientation



› To change the map orientation, tap A.

The map can be aligned as follows.

The map is oriented to the north

The symbol rotates the vehicle position, the map and the Polarstern Symbol do not rotate.

Map oriented to the direction of travel

The map as well as the Polarstern symbol rotate, the symbol showing the vehicle position does not rotate.

With a map scale greater than 10 km, the map is automatically oriented towards north.

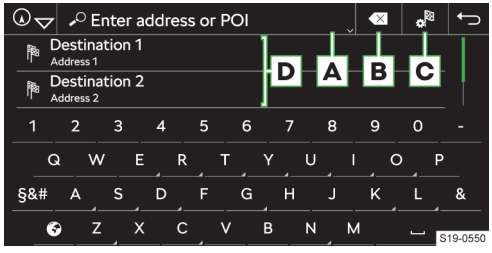
Map centring

The moved map can be centred/aligned to the vehicle, destination or route position.

› Tap **map centring** .

Search for a new destination

› Tap on .



A Input line

B Depending on the search mode, the following symbols are displayed

- ▶ - Display the map as well as the list of the destinations listed in the navigation database
- ▶ - Display the map as well as the list of online destinations

C - Select the destination search/destination entry

D **Context-dependent display of the destination list**

- ▶ List of last destinations.
- ▶ List of visited destinations.
- ▶ - stored destinations
- ▶ - Flag destination

  Vehicle position at the time of storing flag destination.
- ▶ - saved destinations
- ▶ - Favourite
- ▶ - Favourites
- ▶ - Telephone contact destinations
- ▶ online destinations in the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application

Select the destination you are looking for

› Enter the details for the destination search.
› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Enter a new destination via the address

› Tap on > .

A menu will appear with the destination input options.

› Select the destination via the address.
› Enter the required information.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Enter a new destination via the map point

› Tap on > .

A menu will appear with the destination input options.

› Select the destination via the map point.
› Touch the screen to move the desired destination into the cross-hair.

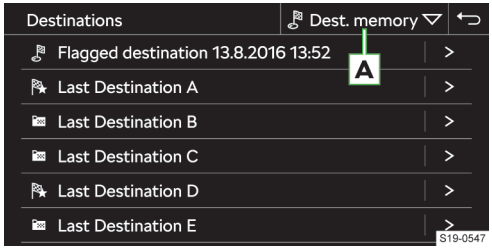
Or:

› Set the GPS coordinates.
› Confirm the destination input.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

List of stored destinations

› Tap > *Destinations*.



A Select category of stored destinations

Selecting the stored destination

› Select the category of stored destinations.
› Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Selecting destination by tapping the map point

› Tap the desired item or the POI icon in the map.
› Tap to start the route guidance.

Route calculation

A **route** is created by starting route guidance to a destination.

Additional intermediate destinations can be added to the route.

Route calculation is done on the basis of the set route options.

› > *Route options*.
› Select the desired list entries.

With selection of alternative routes turned on, the following menu is displayed after the calculation of a new route .

› To **switch on / off the alternative routes** in the main menu, tap **Navigation** > *Route options* > *Suggest 3 alternative routes*.

- Calculate the most economical route with shortest travelling time and distance travelled – the route is highlighted green.
- Calculate the fastest route to the destination, even if a detour is necessary - the route is highlighted in red.
- Calculate the shortest route to the destination, even if a longer travelling time is required - the route is highlighted in orange.

Infotainment tries to allow for continued route guidance even if the navigation data is incomplete or there is no data at all for the given area.

The route is recalculated if you ignore driving recommendations or change the route.

The navigation announcements provided may vary from the actual situations, e.g. due to out-of-date navigation data.

Route overview
During route guidance the display of a route overview is possible.

› > *Route details*.

Change route destinations to each other
If intermediate routes are included in the route, it is possible to change them in the route overview and thus change their order, add further destinations or delete destinations.

› In order to **change the order of the destination**, hold the functional area until the destination becomes free.
› Move the destination to the desired position and release the functional surface.

The route is re-calculated.

Waypoint mode
This mode is suitable for off-road navigation or for areas where maps are not available.

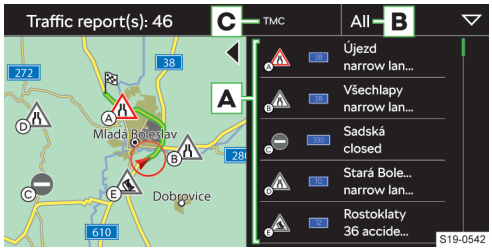
Infotainment allows the recording of waypoint tours driven using automatic or manually entered waypoints. Then there is the possibility to start route guidance to the stored waypoint tour or to save the waypoint tour on the SD card.

› To display, in the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Enable waypoint mode*.

List of traffic reports
The Infotainment enables the reception of traffic reports, which include information regarding traffic congestion, using TMC (Traffic Message Channel) or online services Infotainment Online.

The list of traffic reports will be updated by Infotainment on a continuous basis.

› To **display traffic reports**, tap MENU > .



A List of traffic reports
B Filtering of traffic reports
C Symbol for the source of the traffic message

If **no route guidance takes place**, the traffic obstruction in the map is represented by a red line.

If **route guidance takes place**, the traffic obstruction is shown as follows.

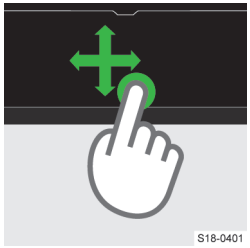
▸ **Grey line** - The traffic obstruction is not on the route
▸ **Red line** - The traffic obstruction is on the route, the route will not be recalculated and the route passes through the traffic obstruction
▸ **Orange line** - The traffic obstruction is on the route, the route is recalculated and an alternative route is available

› For **switching the traffic flow display off / on** in the main menu, tap **Navigation** > *Map* > *Settings traffic flow*.

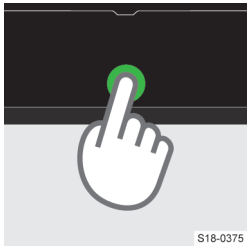
NOTICE
ŠKODA AUTO does not accept responsibility for the availability, content, up-to-dateness or evaluation of TMC traffic reports or other data provided by third parties. ŠKODA AUTO is not entitled to examine or adapt this data in any way. The data can only be edited by Infotainment in areas where it is available.

Touch operation

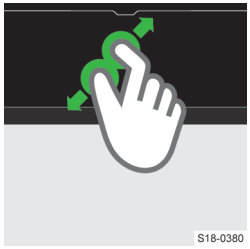
Move map



Enter destination by tapping the map item



Zoom into the map



Zoom out of the map

Restriction

Infotainment may give incorrect driving recommendations if the road conditions or the traffic do not match the navigation data.

This can lead to the route guidance being carried out using a different route or proposing a change of direction in a one-way street.

Settings

Avoiding traffic obstructions
If the function is switched on and the Infotainment receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from online traffic information or the TP traffic announcements, the route is recalculated.

› For **switching on/off the function** in the main menu, tap **Nvigation** > *Route options* > *Dynamic route*.

Showing arrival time information in the destination / driving time
The status line displays information on the time depending on the following setting.

› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Time display:*.

Showing information on the destination / waypoint
The status line displays information on the distance and travel time to the destination, depending on the following time setting.

› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *status display:*.

Switching display of country-specific speed limits on / off
When the function is switched on, the country-specific speed limits are displayed when crossing national borders.

› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Note: Country border crossed*.

Or:

› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Advanced settings* > *Note: Country border crossed*.

› For **display of speed limits** in the main menu, tap **Navigation** > *Top speed*.

Switching the display of road signs on motorways and expressways on / off
When the function is switched on, Infotainment displays traffic and information signs on motorways and expressways.

› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Map* > *Show traffic sign*.

Switching the fuel warning on / off
When the function is switched on and the fuel supply reaches the reserve area, a warning message appears with the option of going to the nearest petrol station.

› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Tank options* > *Tank warning*.

Towing a trailer
To calculate the correct route for trailer operation, switch on trailer inclusion.

› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Route options* > *Include trailer*.

Setting navigation announcements
› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Navigation announcements*.

› Select and set the desired menu item.

Favourite POI categories
Favourite POI categories are displayed on the map and provided in the destination search.

› In the **navigation** main menu, tap > *Map* > *Show special destinations* > *Select categories for points of interest*.

› Set favourite categories.

Setting home address
The defined destination of the home address is displayed in the overview of recommended destinations.

› > *Home address*.

› Define the home address using the current vehicle position or enter the address.

Switching demo mode on / off
In demo mode, the route guidance from the starting point of the demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

When the function is switched on, Infotainment issues a query before the start of route guidance as to whether the route guidance should be carried out in the normal way or in demo mode.

› For **switching on/off** in the **navigation** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Demo mode*.

Defining the starting point of the demo mode
› In the **navigation** main menu, tap ⚙ > *Advanced settings* > *Demo mode* > *Start point Define demo mode*.

Or:

› Hold down the desired point in the map and choose menu item *Start point Define demo mode*.

Updating the navigation database

Information on updating the navigation database must be requested from a **ŠKODA** partner, or refer to the following ŠKODA websites.

▸ **http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal**

Manual online update
› In the **navigation** main menu, tap ⚙ > *version information* > *Update (Online)* > *Recall*.

A menu for importing/updating the navigation data and POI categories is displayed.

› Tap ▿ and select the desired menu item.
› Confirm the download.

Automatic online update
Infotainment automatically offers an update option if the following conditions are met.

✓ The “Infotainment Online” online services are activated.
✓ A data connection to the Internet is available, with the quality allowing an online update.
✓ An update of the navigation database for the current vehicle position or route destination is available.

Determining the navigation database version
› Tap **MENU** > ⚙ > *System information*.

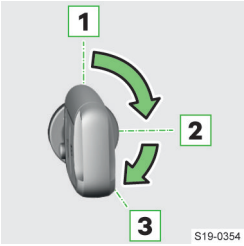
Starting and driving

Starting with the key

Notes on starting

⚠ **DANGER**
Danger of poisoning by exhaust gases!
▸ Do not run the engine in an enclosed space.

Positions of the key in the ignition lock



1 Ignition off
2 Ignition switched on
3 Start the engine

Starting the vehicle with manual transmission
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Move the shift lever to the neutral position.
› Keep the clutch pedal depressed.
› Turn the key to position 3.
› Release the key.

Starting the vehicle with automatic transmission
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Move the selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
› Turn the key to position 3.
› Release the key.

ⓘ After switching on the ignition on vehicles with diesel engines, the indicator light ➿ - Preheating system illuminates. The engine starts after ➿ goes out.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Danger of unexpected vehicle movement!
▸ At temperatures below -10°C, start the vehicle with the selector lever in the **P** position.

Stopping the engine
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Turn the key to position 1.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P** (this only applies to a few countries).

⚠ **WARNING**
Steering lock hazard!
▸ During a journey with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on.

NOTICE
Risk of engine overheating!
▶ Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been running at high loads. Leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute.

Start at the push of a button

Notes on starting

DANGER
Danger of poisoning by exhaust gases!
▶ Do not run the engine in an enclosed space.

Operating conditions
✓ The vehicle key is located in the vehicle interior.

NOTICE
Risk of key loss, possibly of key damage!
The system can detect the key even if it has been forgotten on the vehicle roof.
▶ Always keep the key with you.

Switching the ignition on and off

› Press the starter button.

Starting the vehicle with manual transmission
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Move the shift lever to the neutral position.
› Keep the clutch pedal depressed.
› Press the starter button.

Starting the vehicle with automatic transmission
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Move the selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
› Press the starter button.

After switching on the ignition on vehicles with diesel engines, the indicator light - Preheating system illuminates. The engine starts after goes out.

CAUTION
Danger of unexpected vehicle movement!
▶ At temperatures below -10°C, start the vehicle with the selector lever in the **P** position.

Stopping the engine
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Press the starter button.

WARNING
Steering lock hazard!
▶ During a journey with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on.

NOTICE
Risk of engine overheating!
▶ Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been running at high loads. Leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute.

Starting issues

Troubleshooting

NOTICE
Danger of engine damage!
▶ Do not start the vehicle by towing.

The engine does not start
› Switch off the ignition.
› Wait 30 seconds and repeat the starting procedure.
› If the engine does not start, use the jump start cables with the battery of another vehicle » page 200 or seek the help of a specialist garage.

The engine does not start, the display shows a message regarding the immobilizer
› Use the other vehicle key.
› If the engine does not start, seek the help of a specialist garage.

The key cannot be turned in the ignition
› Move the steering wheel back and forth while turning the key.

Starting is not possible with the starter button, the system did not detect the key

› Press the starter button with the key.
› If the engine does not start, seek the help of a specialist garage.

The key might not be detected if the battery in the key is nearly discharged or the signal is faulty.

The engine cannot be turned off with the starter button
› Hold the starter button or press twice.

The radiator fan keeps running even after the engine has stopped
The radiator fan can continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the engine is stopped. This is not a defect.

The engine makes noises after the cold start
The increased running noise is due to the briefly increased engine speed. This is not a defect.

START STOP

Usage

The START STOP system reduces environmentally damaging emissions, including CO_2, and saves fuel.

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops, it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

Functionality

Vehicle with manual transmission
A system-related engine switch-off occurs when stopping, when switching the gear lever into the neutral position, and when releasing the clutch pedal.

A system-related engine start occurs when the clutch pedal is pressed down.

Vehicle with automatic transmission
A system-related engine switch-off occurs when the brake pedal is actuated and the engine is stopped.

A system-related engine start occurs when the accelerator pedal is pressed down. When the Auto Hold function is deactivated, a system-related engine start occurs after releasing the brake pedal.

Status display in the instrument cluster display
Ⓐ Engine is switched off via the START-STOP system

Ⓐ Engine is not switched off via the START-STOP system due to operating conditions that are not met

Display of detailed information in the infotainment screen
CAR > > *Vehicle status*

Or:

MENU > > > *Vehicle status*

Operating conditions

Some conditions are systemic and can neither be influenced nor recognised. Therefore, the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The driver must fulfil the following conditions.

✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km/h after the last stop.

Settings

Automatic activation
▸ Upon start-up of the engine.
▸ By selecting driving mode Eco » page 168, *Operation*.

Deactivate/activate system
› Press the Ⓐ OFF button.

When the system is deactivated, the symbol Ⓐ OFF illuminates in the button.

If a system-related engine switch-off occurs and the system is deactivated, the engine will start.

Troubleshooting

The engine does not switch off when stopping, or it starts before starting up
The system has detected that the engine is running.

Manual gearbox

Operation

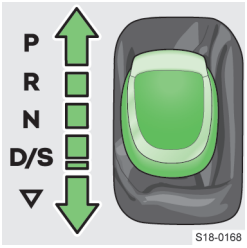
NOTICE
Danger of engine damage!
▸ Shift to a higher gear before reaching the red area on the tachometer scale.

NOTICE
Danger of gearbox damage!
▸ Fully depress the clutch pedal when changing gear.
▸ When not shifting gear, do not put your hand on the shift lever.

Engaging reverse gear
› Stop the vehicle.
› Fully depress the clutch.
› Move the shift lever to the neutral position.
› Push the shift lever down.
› Turn it completely to the left.
› Wait briefly.
› Engage reverse gear.

Automatic gearbox

Lever positions



P **Parked vehicle**
The drive wheels are locked.
P Only set the position when the vehicle is stationary.

R **Reverse gear**
R Only set the position when the vehicle is stationary.

N **Neutral**
There is no transmission of engine power to the wheels.

D/S **Forward drive / sports program**
The gear is changed automatically.
In **S** mode, the gear is changed at higher speeds than in **D** mode.

▽ **Choose between D and S (spring-loaded position)**

Moving the selector lever out of the P or N position
lights up - the selector lever is locked

› Press the brake pedal, and at the same time, press the button in the selector lever.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of the stationary vehicle rolling away automatically!
▸ When the selector lever is in the **D/S** position, **R** position or in manual shift mode, secure the vehicle with the brake.

Operation

Starting up
› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Start the engine.
› Press the button in the selector lever and set it to the desired position.
› Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal lightly.

Speeding up while driving (kick-down)
› Fully depress the accelerator.

Stopping temporarily (e.g. at a junction)
› Leave the selector lever in the **D/S** position and secure the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Stopping
› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Press the button in the selector lever and set it to the **P** position.
› Turn off the engine.

Driving in neutral
If the system detects that no gear is engaged while driving, it automatically switches to neutral position.

ECO will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

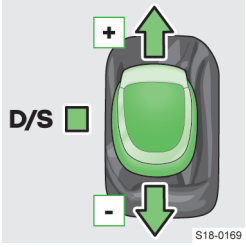
Requirements for driving in neutral position
✓ **D** mode is chosen.
✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is pressed.
✓ The vehicle speed is 20-130 km/h.
✓ There is no device connected to the trailer socket.

Acceleration on start-up (launch control)
This function allows maximum acceleration during start-up.

› Select **S**mode or manual shift mode.
› Disable the TCS » page 174.
› Keep the brake pedal depressed.
› Fully depress the accelerator.
› Release the brake pedal.

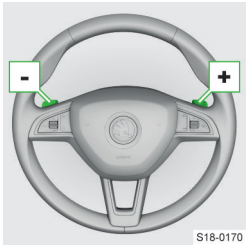
The vehicle drives with maximum acceleration.

Manually switching gear with the selector lever
› To **turn on**, put the selector lever in the **D/S** position to the right (to the left for right-hand drive vehicles).
› To **turn off**, put the selector lever back in the **D/S** position.



\+ Changing up a gear
\- Changing down a gear

Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel



- Changing down a gear
+ Changing up a gear

› To **switch on** the rocker switch, press - or +.
› To **turn off** the rocker switch, hold +.

If none of the shift paddles are pressed for a certain time, manual shift mode turns off automatically.

If the engine threatens to over-rev

▸ The gearbox automatically changes to the next higher gear.
▸ The transmission prevents changing to the next lower gear.

Troubleshooting

The selector lever cannot be moved out of position P in the normal way

› Mechanically unlock the selector lever » page 167.

Gearbox overheated

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the gearbox overheating

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the gearbox overheating

› Stop driving! Stop the vehicle and stop the engine.
› After the indicator light goes out, your journey can continue.
› If the warning light does not go out, stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Gearbox impaired

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the gearbox in emergency mode

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
› Immediately seek the help of a specialist garage.

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding a gearbox fault

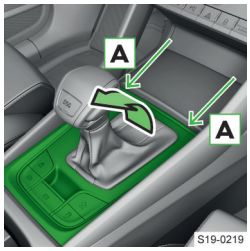
› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Starting up a vehicle that is stuck

› Adjust the selector lever between D/S and R. The vehicle will then start to rock and be easier to free.

Mechanical release of automatic gearbox

› Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
› Open the stowage compartment in the front centre console.



› Insert a flat-head screwdriver or push a similar tool into the gap in the area of arrow A.
› Carefully loosen and lift the quadrant cover.

› Pull on the plastic part in the direction of the arrow and at the same time press the button on the selector lever.
› Put the selector lever in N position.

Vehicle driving mode

Usage

The driving mode offers the possibility of adapting the driving behaviour to the desired driving style.

Overview

Information about the selected driving mode is displayed in the status bar in the Infotainment screen as well as in the digital instrument cluster.

Eco mode

Eco mode is suitable for a relaxed driving style and helps to save fuel.

Comfort mode

Comfort mode is suitable for driving on roads with poorer surface or for long motorway journeys.

Normal mode

Normal mode is suitable for a normal driving style.

Sports mode

Sport mode is suitable for a sporty driving style.

Individual mode

Individual mode allows the individual configuration of certain vehicle systems.

Snow mode

The Snow mode is suitable for driving on slippery or snowy roads. In this mode, the automatic gearbox cannot be set to mode **S**.

Offroad mode

Off-road mode is suitable for driving on non-paved roads. But even with Offroad mode switched on, your vehicle is never a true SUV.

The following brake and stabilisation systems change in Offroad mode.

- ESC.
- TCS.
- EDL.
- ABS.

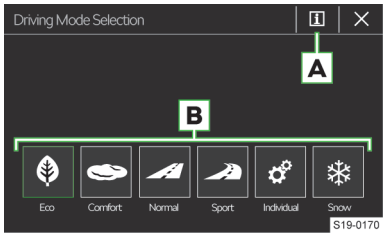
When switched on, OffroadMode is illuminated . and in the instrument cluster.

Operation

Select driving mode

› Press the MODE button or DRIVE MODE.

In the Infotainment, a driving mode menu appears.



A Information on the system settings of the currently selected mode/system settings for the selected Individual mode

B Driving mode menu

› Tap the relevant function surface B.

Or:

› Press the MODE button or DRIVE MODE again.

Switch on Offroad mode

› Press the OFFROAD button.

The information appears in the Offroad Infotainment.

Offroad information

The Offroad information serves to determine the current driving situation.

The Offroad information display is shown in the menu item in the Infotainment.

CAR > > *Offroad*

Or:

MENU > > > *Offroad*

A swipe of the finger vertically across the screen allows three of the following displays to be shown.

- Steering angle.
- Coolant temperature.
- Oil temperature.
- Compass (Infotainment Amundsen, Columbus).
- Altimeter (Infotainment Amundsen, Columbus).

Troubleshooting

Adaptive DCC suspension faulty

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Economical driving style

Tips for economical driving and evaluation of driving economy

Tips for economical driving

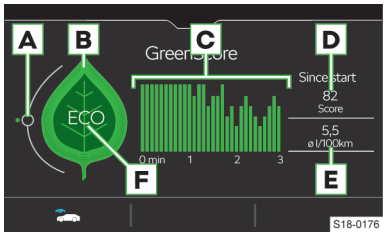
- Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- Observe the recommended gear » page 62.
- Avoid full acceleration and too high speeds.
- Avoid engine idling during longer periods of stationary time.
- Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine starts.
- Observe the prescribed tyre pressure » page 209.
- Remove unnecessary ballast.
- Remove the roof rack when it is not needed.
- Switch on electric consumers only for as long as necessary.
- Do not leave the windows open while driving.

Display of evaluation in the infotainment screen

CAR > > *DriveGreen*

Or:

MENU > > > *DriveGreen*



A **A smooth driving display**
With the driving is fluid, the display is located near the green dot.

B **Leaf**
The greener the leaf, the more economic the driving style. Tapping the screen near the leaf displays tips for reducing fuel consumption and energy consumption.

C **Driving efficiency chart**
Each bar indicates driving efficiency in 5 second increments. The current bar is on the left. The higher the green bars, the more economical the driving style.

D **Point value (0-100)**
The higher the indicated value, the more economical the driving style. Tapping the screen near the value **D** displays a rating for the last 30 minutes of driving.

E **Average fuel consumption**
Tapping the screen near the value **E** displays the average fuel consumption during the last 30 minutes of driving.

F **Information about the current driving style**

- **ECO** Economical driving style
- The speed has a negative effect on fuel consumption
- The ride is not smooth
- 3 4 Recommended gear

In Infotainment it is possible to display up to three consumers that are currently making up the largest share of fuel consumption.

CAR > > *Convenien. consumers*

Or:

MENU > > > *Convenien. consumers*

Consumption-friendly driving

In the following situations, a small reduction in fuel consumption occurs. in the instrument cluster lights up.

- Active cylinder management has temporarily disabled some cylinders in the engine (applies to certain engine types).
- A vehicle with automatic transmission rolls in neutral position.

Towing a trailer

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING
When driving with a trailer, special care is required!

NOTICE
With frequent towing, the vehicle is excessively loaded so this must also be checked between service intervals.

Recommendations for using a trailer

- Adjust the tyre pressure on the vehicle for full load.
- Do not exceed the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle and the combination weight specified in the technical vehicle documentation (e.g. in the vehicle registration documentation, in the COC document) and on the type plate.
- For trailer operation, consider the current load condition of the vehicle as well as the distribution of the load in the trailer. The coupled trailer increases the rear axle load and can therefore reduce the payload.
- Adjust the headlight range of the headlights according to the load status of the vehicle. The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.
- A speed of **100 km/h** should not be exceeded.

- ▶ Reduce the speed by releasing the accelerator pedal as soon as a pendulum movement of the trailer is noticeable. Never attempt to stop the trailer from swaying by accelerating.
- ▶ If the traffic area behind the trailer can not be viewed, install additional exterior mirrors.
- ▶ Apply the brakes in good time. If the trailer is fitted with a trailer brake, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.
- ▶ Select a lower gear before descending to also use the braking force of the engine.

Distribution of the load over the vehicle and trailer combination

- ▶ Secure heavy objects against slipping, as close to the trailer axle as possible.
- ▶ Transport small and light objects in the luggage compartment.

Permitted trailer loads

The details in the technical vehicle documentation take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
▶ Do not exceed the permissible trailer load.

Engine type	Transmission	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg) [a]		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)	
		Five-seat version	Seven-seat version	Five-seat version	Seven-seat version
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1600	1600	750	750
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	Manual gearbox 4x4	2000	2000	750	750
	DSG [b]	1800	1800	750	750
	DSG [b] 4x4	2000	2000	750	750
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1800	1800	750	750
	DSG [b]	1800	1800	750	750
2.0 l/132 kW TSI	DSG [b] 4x4	2200	2000	750	750
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	DSG [b] 4x4	2200	2000	750	750
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	Manual gearbox 4x4	1950	-	750	-
	DSG [b]	2000	2000	750	750
	DSG [b] 4x4	2300	2000	750	750
2.0 l/130 kW TDI CR	DSG [b] 4x4	2300	1800	750	750
2.0 l/140 kW TDI CR	DSG [b] 4x4	2300	2000	750	750
2.0 l/176 kW TDI CR	DSG [b] 4x4	2300	2000	750	750

[a] With gradients up to 12%.
[b] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

Towing eye and towing procedure

Towing eye

Removing the grille

› Insert the clamp for taking off the full wheel trims in the recess in the grille, and remove the grille.

Removing the rear cap

› Press on the cap and remove it.

Installing the towing eye

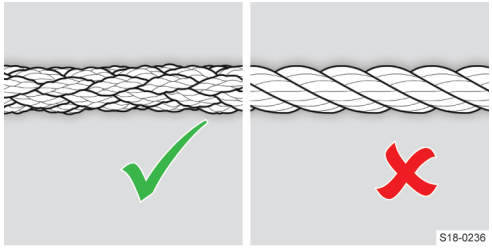
› Screw in the towing eye.
› Insert the wrench or similar object through the towing eye.
› Tighten the towing eye.

After the towing process

› Unscrew the towing eye.
› Insert the cover or grille.

Towing the vehicle

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
▸ The tow rope must not be twisted.
▸ When towing, drive at a speed of max. 50 km/h.



⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
▸ Use a braided synthetic fibre rope for towing. Do not use a twisted tow rope.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
▸ Always keep the tow rope taut during the towing procedure.
▸ Do not exceed a towing distance of 50 km.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Danger of gearbox damage!
▸ If the gearbox no longer contains any oil, the vehicle must only be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or transported on a special breakdown vehicle.
▸ Vehicles with automatic transmission must not be towed with the rear axle raised.

Where should the tow rope or the tow bar be secured?
▸ At the front towing eye.
▸ At the rear towing eye.
▸ On the ball bar of the factory-installed towing hitch.

Information for the driver of the towing vehicle
› Drive slowly and smoothly.
› Only accelerate once the rope is taut.

Information for the driver of the towed vehicle

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
When the ignition is switched off, the brake booster and the power steering do not work. In addition, there is a risk that the steering lock will engage.
▸ If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition!

› Move the shift lever to the neutral position or the selector lever to the **N** position.

Brakes

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
Problems and faults with the brake system can extend the braking distance of the vehicle!

⚠ **DANGER**
Danger of a functional restriction of the brake booster!
▸ When braking in a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, depress the clutch pedal.

⚠ **DANGER**
Danger of the brakes overheating!
▸ Do not depress the brake pedal unless braking is required.
▸ If the standard front spoiler is damaged, ensure the air supply to the front brakes is guaranteed.

Checking the brake fluid level

Test conditions
✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ Engine turned off.

Checking

The fill level must be within the marked range.
› If the level is below the mark **MIN**, do not continue.
› Do not refill liquid.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this will be indicated in the instrument cluster by the illumination of (!). Nevertheless, we recommend checking the brake fluid level regularly directly at the reservoir.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of brake failure!
If the fluid level falls significantly within a short time or drops below the mark **MIN**, the brake system may have become leaky.
▸ Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Specification
The brake fluid must comply with standard VW 501 14. This standard complies with the requirements of the FMVSS 116 DOT4 standard.

Changing
Have the brake fluid replaced by a specialist garage.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of brake failure!
If the brake fluid change date is exceeded, heavy braking may cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system.

Troubleshooting

Brake fluid level is too low
(!) illuminates
› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Brake system and anti-lock braking system faulty
(!) illuminates together with (ABS)
› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Worn brake pads
illuminates
› Drive to a specialist garage, exercising appropriate caution.

Reduced braking effect
Damp, frozen, salt-affected or corroded brakes can impair the braking effect.
› Clean the brakes by braking several times if traffic conditions allow it.

When the engine is stopped, the brake booster does not work
› Depress the brake pedal more forcefully.

Electric parking brake

Operation

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of key locking!
▸ The recessed grip for the fingers in front of the button (P) must remain empty.

Manual switch on

› Pull the button (P) and hold it.

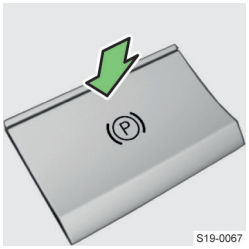
The following symbols light up.
▸ (P) in the button.
▸ (P) in the instrument cluster.

Automatic shut-off
The parking brake switches off automatically when starting up.

If automatic switch-off is to be prevented, e.g. when starting off on a slope, keep the button (P) pulled.

Conditions for automatic shutting down
✓ Driver's door is closed, in some cases, the driver's seat belt is also fastened.

Manual shut-down



› With the ignition switched on, press the brake pedal and at the same time push the Ⓟ button.

Troubleshooting

Parking brake error

Ⓟ is illuminated

Message regarding a parking brake error

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Parking on a steep slope

Ⓟ flashing

Notification regarding parking position on a steep slope

› Go to another parking spot where there is less of a slope.

Noise when using the parking brake
Noise when using the parking brake is normal. This is not a defect.

The vehicle battery is discharged, the parking brake cannot be switched off
› Connect the vehicle battery to a power source, such as the battery of another vehicle.

Emergency braking in case of faulty brake system

Switching on

› Pull the button Ⓟ and hold it.

The vehicle starts to brake **sharply** and an acoustic signal is sounded.

Switching off
› Release the button Ⓟ.

Or:

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

Auto Hold automatic holding function

Usage

Auto Hold automatically secures the vehicle from rolling away when stopped.

Functionality

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
Auto Hold is not able to stop the vehicle under all circumstances, such as on slippery ground, or on gradients.

Secure and release the vehicle
With **Stop**, the vehicle is automatically **secured** using Auto Hold. Ⓟ is illuminated in the instrument cluster. The brake pedal can be released.

With **Start**, the vehicle is automatically **released** using Auto Hold.

Automatic protection from the parking brake
Under certain circumstances, the vehicle can be secured using the parking brake. Ⓟ is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

Operating conditions

✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The engine is running or has been switched off by the START-STOP system.
✓ Auto Hold is activated.
✓ On vehicles with an automatic gearbox, the selector lever is not in **N** mode.

Settings

Activation/deactivation
› Press the Ⓐ button.

Activation displayed in the button by the illumination of the Ⓐ symbol.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Disable Auto Hold to allow the vehicle to roll if necessary when driving through a car wash.

Driver assist systems

Braking and stabilising systems

Overview

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)
ESC helps to stabilize the vehicle in borderline situations (e.g. when the vehicle starts to skid). ESC brakes the individual wheels to maintain the direction of travel.

flashes - ESC is engaged

ESC Sport
ESC Sport allows for a sportier driving style.

lit up - ESC Sport is activated

Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)
ASR helps to stabilize the vehicle when accelerating or driving on low-grip roads. ASR reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels when the wheels spin.

flashes - ASR is engaged

Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)
ABS helps maintain control of the vehicle during emergency braking. An ABS intervention is noticeable by pulsating movements of the brake pedal.

Motor Slip Regulation (MSR)
MSR helps to maintain control of the vehicle in the event of a sudden reduction in speed, e.g. on icy roads. If the drive wheels lock, MSR increases the engine speed. As a result, the braking effect of the engine is reduced and the wheels can turn freely again.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)
EDL helps to stabilize the vehicle when driving on road surfaces with different grip under the individual wheels. EDL brakes a spinning wheel and transmits power to a different drive wheel.

Electronic Differential Lock (XDL+)
XDL + helps to stabilize the vehicle during fast cornering by braking the inside wheel of the driven axle.

Active steering assistance (DSR)
In difficult situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle.

Hill Hold Control
Hill Hold Control helps when starting off on uphill gradients by braking the vehicle for about 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

Operating conditions
✓ The gradient is at least 5%.
✓ The driver's door is closed.

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)
MCB helps to decelerate and stabilize the vehicle after a collision with an obstacle. This reduces the risk of further collisions.

Operating conditions
✓ There has been a frontal, side and rear collision of a certain severity.
✓ The impact speed was greater than 10 km/h.
✓ The brakes, ESC and other required systems remained functional after the impact.
✓ The accelerator pedal is not pressed.

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)
TSA helps to stabilize the trailer. As the trailer begins to lurch, TSA stabilizes the trailer by slowing down the individual vehicle wheels.

Operating conditions
✓ The hitch was supplied from the factory or purchased from ŠKODA Genuine Accessories.
✓ The trailer is connected to the trailer socket.
✓ ASR activated.
✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h.

Settings

Deactivating/activating ASR
› Press the button.

Or:

› In Infotainment, select the following menu.

MENU > > >

Or:

CAR > >

When deactivating lights up in the instrument cluster.

goes out on renewed activation.

Deactivating the ASR may be helpful in the following situations.
▸ Driving with snow chains.
▸ Driving in deep snow or on very loose ground.
▸ Starting up a vehicle that is stuck.

Activate/deactivate ESC Sport
› Keep the key pressed down.

Or:

› In Infotainment, select the following menu.

MENU > > >

Or:

CAR > >

When activating lights up in the instrument cluster.

goes out when deactivated.

Troubleshooting

ESC or ASR faulty/deactivated by the system

illuminates

› Stop the engine and start again.

› If the indicator light does not go out after covering a short distance, seek the help of a specialist garage.

ABS faulty

illuminates

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Brake system and anti-lock braking system faulty

illuminates together with

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Front Assist

Functionality

Front Assist monitors the distance to the vehicle ahead and points out when the safety distance is exceeded. In borderline situations, it helps to avoid a collision by braking interventions.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

Illuminated - safety distance too small

or illuminates- Warning in case of collision

Automatic braking if there is a risk of a collision

If there is a risk of a collision, the following symbol or is illuminated as a warning. If you do not respond to the warning, the vehicle will slow down.

At a driving speed of up to 50 km / h, the vehicle is braked without prior warning.

Automatic braking can be stopped by pressing the accelerator pedal or by a steering intervention.

With automatic braking, the pressure in the brake system increases. The brake pedal can not be operated by using the pedal as normal.

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

Front Assist does not respond to crossing or oncoming vehicles.

Operating conditions

✓ ASR activated.

✓ The driving speed is higher than 5 km/h.

Function restriction

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases.

▸ About 30 seconds after starting. In the instrument cluster, lights up.

▸ When driving around a sharp bend.

▸ During an ESC intervention.

Settings

Automatic activation

Front Assist is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation in the instrument cluster

In the display in the Assist systems menu item.

Activation / deactivation and setting in Infotainment

In the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Show system deactivation in the display of the instrument cluster

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

Deactivate Front Assist when handling the vehicle on a truck, a car ferry etc.

Troubleshooting

Front Assist is not available

› Clean the front radar sensor.

› Stop the engine and start again.

› If Front Assist is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.

› Replace the defective bulb.

› If the brake lights are working and Front Assist is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

There was an unfounded warning or system intervention

› Clean the front radar sensor.

› If the system is not working properly, disable Front Assist and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Pedestrian detection system

Functionality

Pedestrian recognition helps to prevent a collision with crossing pedestrians by enabling automatic braking interventions.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

or lights up - Danger of collision

Risk of collision in a speed range of 5-30 km/h
The system triggers automatic braking.

Risk of collision in a speed range of 30-60 km/h
The system warns of a collision hazard first. If the driver does not respond, the vehicle is automatically braked.

Operating conditions

✓ Front Assist activated.
✓ Driving speed between 5-60 km/h.

Speed limiter

Functionality

The speed limiter controls the maximum driving speed according to the set speed limit.

If the limit is exceeded when driving downhill, brake the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

illuminated - the cruise control is activated.

When the control starts, is highlighted and the set limit is displayed.

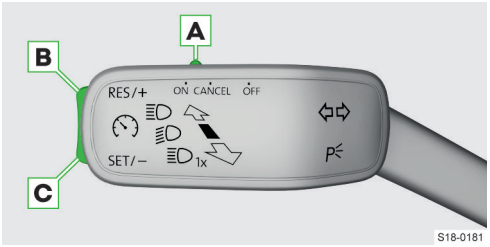
illuminated - cruise control is active
flashing - the set limit is exceeded

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h.

Operation

Variant without GRA

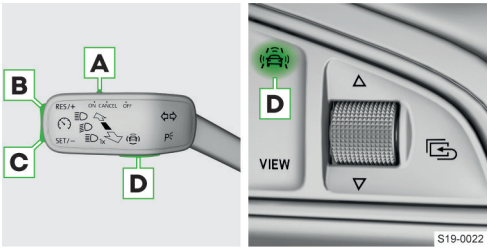


A **ON** Activate limiter (control inactive)
OFF Deactivate limiter
CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resume control[1]/Increase limit

C **SET/-** Start control with current speed/Reduce limit

Variant with GRA



A **ON** Activate GRA (condition for the subsequent activation of the limiter).
To **enable the speed limiter**, press the key D and in the instrument cluster choose the menu item *Speed limit*.
OFF Deactivate limiter
CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resume control[1]/Increase limit

C **SET/-** Start control with current speed/Reduce limit

D Show menu of assist systems - Possibility of switching between GRA and speed limiter
Switching to GRA interrupts the control.

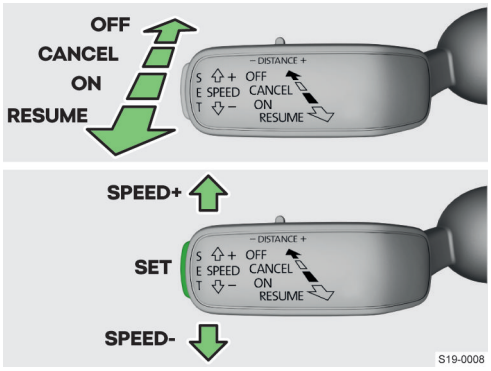
Adjusting the speed limit with the buttons B and C

By pressing in steps of **1 km/h**.

By holding in steps of **10 km/h**.

[1] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

Variant with ACC



ON Activate ACC (condition for the subsequent activation of the limiter). To enable the speed limiter, press the key and in the instrument cluster choose the menu item *Speed limit*.

RESUME Resume control[1]/Increase limit in steps of 1 km/h (sprung position)

CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)

OFF Deactivate the limiter

SPEED + Increase limit in steps of 10 km/h

SPEED – Decrease limit in steps of 10 km/h

SET Start control/Reduce limit in steps of 1 km/h

Limit exceeded

› **Fully depress** the accelerator.

Control will continue as soon as the vehicle has decelerated to below the set limit.

Troubleshooting

Speed limiter faulty

LIM illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Cruise control system

Functionality

The cruise control system maintains the set speed without the accelerator pedal having to be operated.

However, this is only done to the extent permitted by engine performance or engine braking.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the cruise control system starting unintentionally!

▸ Deactivate cruise control after use.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

illuminated - the cruise control system is activated

Illuminated - cruise control is active

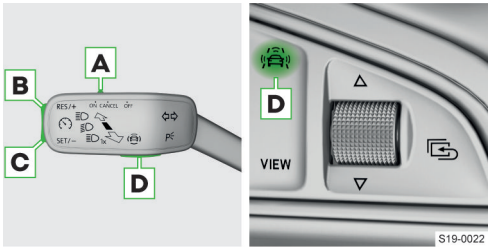
When cruise control starts, the set speed is displayed.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 20 km/h.

Operation

Operating with the lever



A **ON** Activate cruise control (cruise control deactivated)

OFF Deactivate cruise control

CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)

B **RES/+** Resume cruise control[2]/Increase speed

C **SET/-** Start control with current speed/Reduce limit

D Show menu of assist systems - Possibility of switching between GRA and speed limiter

Accelerate temporarily

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

After you release the accelerator, the speed drops to the previously stored value.

Interrupting cruise control

▸ After pressing the brake pedal.

▸ After an ESC intervention.

---

1) If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

2) If no speed is set, the current speed is adopted.

Troubleshooting

Cruise control system faulty

illuminates

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Functionality

Control

ACC maintains the set speed. When your vehicle approaches the vehicle in front, ACC will automatically start to maintain the set distance to this vehicle.

Maintaining the set speed and the distance will hereinafter be referred to as **Control**.

⚠ **WARNING**

ACC does not respond to stationary objects or to crossing or oncoming objects.

ACC is intended primarily for use on motorways.

Speed range

Depending on the equipment, ACC allows a speed setting in the range of 30-160 or 30-210 km/h.

If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed is automatically increased to 30 km/h or controlled according to the speed of the vehicle ahead.

Distance level

The distance to the vehicle ahead can be adjusted to five different levels.

⚠ **WARNING**

▸ Maintain a minimum distance in accordance with the country-specific legal regulations.

Automatic stop and start

A vehicle with an automatic transmission can be decelerated to a stop using the ACC and start moving again. Control is disconnected in case of longer holding periods.

› To resume control, depress the accelerator pedal or move the lever into position **RESUME**.

Overtaking

If your vehicle changes to the fast lane and no vehicle is detected in front, ACC accelerates up to the set speed.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

Illuminated - ACC is activated

Depending on the equipment:

illuminated - Control is active

or

illuminates together with
- Control is active

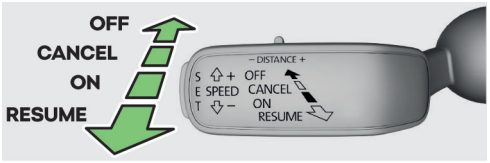
When the control starts, the set speed is displayed.

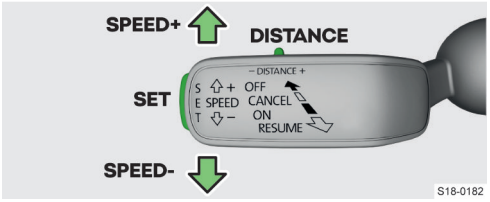
Illuminates - ACC does not decelerate sufficiently

› Depress the brake pedal.

Operation

Operating with the lever





ON	Activate ACC (control inactive)
RESUME	Start or resume control/Increase speed in steps of 1 km/h (sprung position)
CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
OFF	Deactivate ACC
SPEED +	Increase speed in steps of 10 km/h
SPEED –	Reduce speed in steps of 10 km/h
DISTANCE	Set distance level
SET	Start control/Reduce speed in steps of 1 km/h

Starting control with the current speed

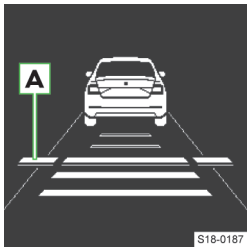
› Tap on **SET**.

Or:

› If no speed is saved, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

Set distance level

› Move the **DISTANCE** switch to the sprung position **–** or **+**.



Line A appears in the display, indicating the change in distance.

› Use the **DISTANCE** switch to set the desired distance level.

For temporary acceleration

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle accelerates and control is temporarily interrupted. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is resumed.

Interrupting cruise control

▸ After pressing the brake pedal.
▸ By operating the clutch pedal for a long time.
▸ After an ESC intervention.
▸ After deactivation of the ASR.

Resuming control

› If a speed is stored, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

The vehicle is controlled at the set speed. The set speed is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Function restriction

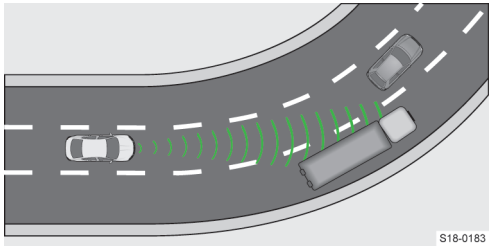
⚠ **WARNING**

▸ Be particularly attentive and alert in the following situations.

Regulation according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane

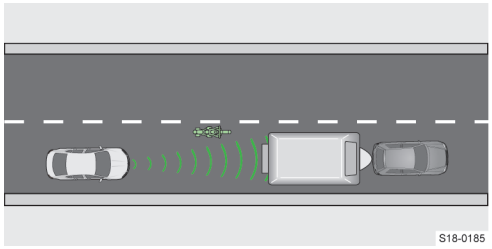
If your vehicle is moving faster than the vehicle in the next lane on the driver's side, at a speed of more than 80 km/h, this may cause your vehicle to be controlled according to that vehicle.

When cornering



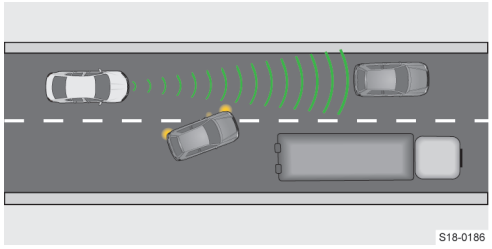
When cornering, a vehicle in the next lane may enter the detected area. Your vehicle will be controlled according to this vehicle.

Narrow or staggered vehicle



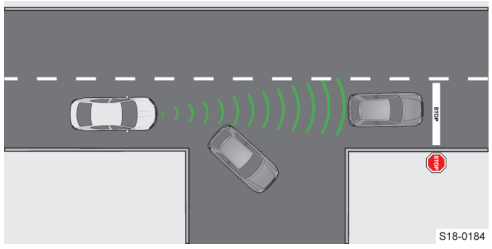
ACC detects a narrow or staggered vehicle only when it is in the area covered by the radar.

Lane change by another vehicle



A vehicle that changes to the lane a short distance away may not be recognized by the ACC in time.

Stationary vehicle



If a vehicle in front turns and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, the ACC will not respond to the stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special load or special bodies

A load or superstructure that protrudes outside the vehicle might not be detected by the ACC.

Settings

In Infotainment, in the following menu.

CAR > ⚙ > 🚗

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > ⚙ > 🚗

■ ⏱

- *Driving program:* - Setting the vehicle acceleration when the ACC is switched on (this setting is made for vehicles with driving mode selection » page 168)
- *Last distance selected* - Switch the last selected distance level on/off
- *Distance:* - Setting the distance to vehicles in front

Troubleshooting

ACC not available

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Stop the engine and start again.
› If ACC is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.
› Replace the defective bulb.
› If the brake lights are working and ACC is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Lane Assist

Usage

Lane Assist helps to keep the vehicle between the continuous and broken lines of a lane.

The system is intended primarily for use on highways.

Functionality

As the vehicle approaches a lane marking, the system executes a steering movement in the opposite direction from the lane marking. The steering intervention can be overridden manually.

No system intervention occurs when changing lane with the turn signal on.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

lights up - System is activated but not ready to intervene

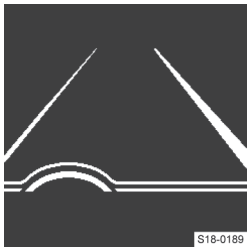
lights up - System is activated but not ready to intervene

lights up - System is ready to intervene or is currently intervening

lights up - System is ready to intervene or is currently intervening

Adaptive lane guidance functionality
This function keeps the driver within the selected position within the lane. or lights up in the instrument cluster display.

Display
Display examples in monochromatic display.



Lane boundary highlighted on the right: system intervenes on the right when approaching the lane marking.

Both lane boundaries are highlighted: adaptive lane guidance takes place.

In the coloured display, the lines are highlighted in colour.

Warning through steering wheel vibrations
If the steering wheel vibrates, this means the system is unable to keep the vehicle in the lane.

› Correct the steering movement.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 65 km/h.
✓ The lane markings are clearly visible.

Function restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases.

- The field of view of the sensor is limited by a dirty screen or an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- In the event of unfavourable weather conditions.
- When driving around a sharp bend.
- When driving on a steep road or in ruts.
- Driving lane too narrow.

⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Certain objects or markings on the road may be erroneously recognized as lane markings.
- Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to override the steering intervention.

Settings

Activation/deactivation in the instrument cluster
In the display in the Assist systems menu item

Setting in Infotainment
In the following menu.

CAR > > >

Or:

MENU > > > >

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability
› Clean the windscreen in the sensor area.
› Stop the engine and restart again after a short time.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Traffic jam assistant

Functionality

The traffic jam assist system helps to keep the vehicle within the lane. At the same time, it maintains the distance from the vehicle in front.

The system is intended primarily for use on highways.

The traffic jam assist system uses the functions of the automatic gearbox, the Lane Assist and the ACC.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
▸ Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be ready to take over the steering.
▸ The notes in the functional description of Lane Assist and ACC are to be taken into account.

Operating conditions

✓ Lane Assist with adaptive guidance is activated and the boundary lines of the traffic lane are recognised.
✓ ACC is activated and speed is regulated.
✓ The driving speed is lower than 60 km/h.

Lane change assist system Side Assist

Usage

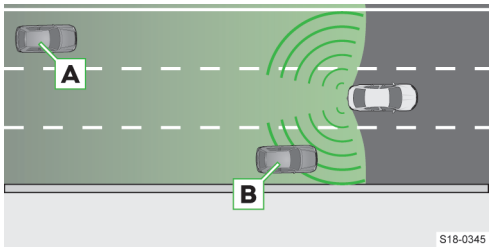
Side Assist monitors the area both beside and behind the vehicle.

The system uses optical signals in the exterior mirror to alert the driver to vehicles that could be dangerous when changing lanes.

Functionality

The system warns of an approaching vehicle through the illumination of the indicator light ■ in the exterior mirror cover on the vehicle side where the vehicle is detected.

Driving situations in which a system warning occurs



Your vehicle is overtaken by vehicle A. The faster vehicle A approaches, the sooner the warning is given by the indicator light.

Vehicle B is overtaken by your vehicle at a speed that is faster by max. 10 km/h. If the speed is higher during the overtaking process, no warning will be provided by the indicator light.

Indicator light
■ **illuminated** - There is another vehicle behind your vehicle

■ **flashing** - There is another vehicle behind your vehicle, and the turn signal on the same side is switched on

For vehicles with Lane Assist, the indicator light will also flash if your vehicle crosses the lane markings in the direction of the approaching vehicle. The system will trigger a steering wheel vibration in this case.

For this, Lane Assist must be activated and the lane marking between the vehicles must be detected.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.
✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Function restriction

The system cannot detect lane width. For this reason, it may, for example, draw attention to a vehicle in a distant lane in the following cases.

- ▶ Driving on a road with narrow lanes or on the lane edge.
- ▶ Driving round bends.

The system can draw attention to objects along the road, such as high guard rails or noise barriers.

The system might not warn of a vehicle e.g. in the following cases, or a warning may only be issued incorrectly.

- ▶ Unfavourable weather conditions.
- ▶ A very fast approaching vehicle.
- ▶ When going round a sharp bend or a roundabout.

Settings

In the instrument cluster display
The system settings are made in the display of the instrument cluster in menu item *Assist Systems*.

In infotainment
The system settings are made in the infotainment system in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability
› Stop the engine and start again.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Traffic sign recognition

Usage

The road sign recognition shows road signs in the display of the instrument cluster. This also indicates exceeding the speed limit.

Functionality

Displayed road signs
- ▶ Speed limit.
- ▶ Overtaking prohibited.
- ▶ Additional characters, e.g. speed limit in wet conditions.

⚠ **WARNING**
Road signs on the road always have priority over the road signs shown on the display.

Towing a trailer
If a trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket, trailer-relevant road signs are also displayed.

Driving on roads without speed limits
If you are on a road with no speed limits, the road signs will appear in the display.

Example of road sign display

Example of additional characters

Example of several simultaneously recognised road signs.

Speed units
The speed indications in the road signs shown refer to the speed units that are common in the country.

For example, the display may refer to 30 km/h or 30 mph depending on the country.

Restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases.

- ▶ The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.
- ▶ The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- ▶ In the event of unfavourable weather conditions.
- ▶ At high speeds.
- ▶ The road signs are hidden, damaged, or are non-standard.
- ▶ The road signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
- ▶ Non-current or unavailable map documents for the navigation.

Settings

In Infotainment, in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

■ *Road Sign Recognition*
▶ *Show in instrument cluster* - Activation/deactivation of the additional road signs in the display of the instrument cluster

- *Speed warning:* - Configures a warning when the speed limit is exceeded
- *Warning for exceeding* - Increasesthe speed limit for the warning when exceeding the permitted speed

■ *Trailer recognition*

- *Show road signs relevant to trailers* – Activation/deactivation of the display of road signs relevant to trailers
- *Use for route calculation* - Activation/deactivation taking trailers in account for route calculation in navigation
- *Maximum speed for trailer* - Set the top speed for towing a trailer

Crew Protect Assist proactive occupant protection

Usage

The Crew Protect Assist system increases occupant protection in the front seats if a collision is imminent.

Functionality

The first level of protection
With a dynamic driving style, the system tightens the front seat belts on the body.

The second level of protection
If the system evaluates the situation as critical:

- The front seat belts are tightened on the body.
- Open windows are closed except for a small gap.
- The sliding/tilting roof is closed.

Settings

Automatic activation
The system is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Deactivation of the first protection level
The first protection level can be deactivated as follows.

- By activating ESC Sport.
- By deactivating the ASR.
- By selecting the driving mode Sport.
- By selecting the driving mode Offroad.
- In Infotainment, in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Troubleshooting

Crew Protect Assist faulty
illuminates together with ⚠
Message concerning unavailability or functional restriction

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Driver Alert fatigue detection assistant

Functionality

Driver Alert evaluates the steering behaviour. If it detects fatigue in the driver, a break is recommended. In the display of the instrument cluster, the ☕ lights up.

⚠ **WARNING**
There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Resetting the break recommendation
The break recommendation is reset in the following cases.

- The vehicle stops and the ignition is switched off.
- The vehicle stops, the seat belt is removed and the driver's door is opened.
- The vehicle stops for more than 15 minutes.

ⓘ In some situations, the system may erroneously issue a break recommendation.

Operating conditions

✓ Driving speed between 60-200 km/h.

Settings

Activation/deactivation
In Infotainment, in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Emergency situation assist systemEmergency Assist

Usage

The assistant for emergencies detects inactivity of the driver, which, for example, can be caused by a sudden loss of consciousness. The system then performs measures as safely as possible to decelerate the vehicle to a stop.

The assist systems are only available for vehicles with an automatic gearbox.

Functionality

When the assist system detects inactivity on the part of the driver

- ▶ An acoustic warning signal sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.
- ▶ If, after repeated warnings, the driver does not take over the steering, the hazard warning lights are switched on and the vehicle automatically brakes.
- ▶ After the vehicle has come to a standstill, the parking brake is switched on.

Interruption of automatic braking

- ▶ By pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- ▶ By actively steering.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Lane Assist is activated and the boundary lines of the traffic lane are recognised.
- ✓ ACC is enabled.

Hill descent assistant

Functionality

The hill descent assist system helps to keep a constant speed when driving downhill by undertaking automatic braking interventions.

The system also works when driving in neutral or when the reverse gear is engaged.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
The assist system cannot properly fulfil its function on slushy soil due to physical reasons (e.g. ice or mud).

Status display in the instrument cluster display
lit up in grey - the system is activated

lit up in white - the system intervenes

Alter the speed
The driving speed can be changed by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal. After releasing the pedal, the assist system maintains the current speed.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ Offroad mode is enabled.
- ✓ The gradient is at least 10%.
- ✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is pressed.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is a max. 30 km/h.

Settings

Automatic activation
The system will be automatically activated when you turn on Offroad mode.

Activation/deactivation in Infotainment
The system is activated or deactivated in the following menu.

MENU > >

Or:

CAR >

Park Assist systems

Park Pilot parking aid

Functionality

If an obstacle is detected, the Infotainment will display a visible message and an audible signal will sound.

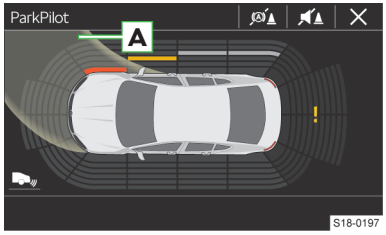
The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. At a distance of less than 30 cm from the obstacle, a continuous tone sounds.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system triggers automatic emergency braking at speeds below 10 km/h in order to reduce the impact.

Automatic braking can be activated and deactivated in the infotainment.

Display

The recorded areas vary according to the equipment.



A Route controlled at the current steering angle

Acoustic signals on/off

One-time deactivation/activation of automatic braking

Change to the rear view camera display

! System fault

■ Obstacle at a distance of less than 30 cm

■ Obstacle at a distance of more than 30 cm

□ Obstacle outside the route

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is lower than 15 km/h.

✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

Switching on

› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button.

Automatic switch-on during forward travel

When approaching an obstacle at a speed of less than 10 km/h.

Automatic switch-on does not activate automatic braking.

Switching off

› Disengage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button.

Automatic switch off

The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.

Function restriction

The system might not warn of an obstacle e.g. in the following cases, or a warning may only be issued incorrectly.

▸ Unfavourable weather conditions.

▸ The detected obstacles are moving.

▸ Sensor signals are not reflected by the surface of the obstacles.

▸ It is a small obstacle, e.g. a stone or a pillar.

Settings

The system settings are made in the infotainment system in the following menu.

CAR > > P

Or:

MENU > > > P

Troubleshooting

After switching on, an audible signal sounds for 3 seconds and there is no obstacle near the vehicle

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching on, the symbol P flashes in the button

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching on, not all scanned areas are displayed on the Infotainment screen

› Move the vehicle a few meters forwards or backwards.

› If the scanned areas are still not displayed, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Rear view camera

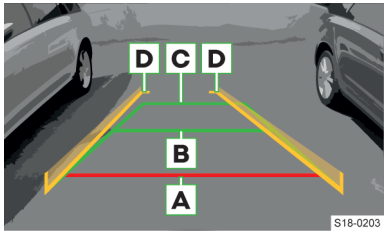
Functionality

When reversing, the area behind the vehicle is displayed in the Infotainment screen complete with orientation lines.

The camera is equipped with a cleaning system. Cleaning takes place automatically when the rear window is washed.

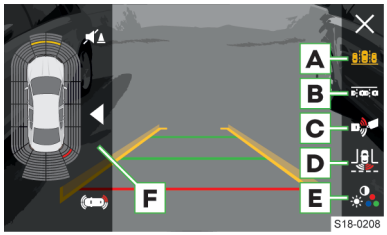
Orientation lines and functional surfaces

Orientation lines



- A Distance about 40 cm
- B Distance about 100 cm
- C Distance about 200 cm
- D The lines indicate the track, which is controlled at the current steering angle. The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function surfaces



- A Mode for transverse parking
- B Mode for parallel parking
- C Mode for driving up to a trailer/distance monitoring
- D Mode for monitoring the area behind the vehicle (wide view)
- E Brightness, contrast and colour settings of the screen
- F Parking Assist View

  ◀/▶ Switch the view on / off

  Full Screen

Switch audible parking signals on/off

Operating conditions

✓ The ignition is switched on.

✓ The driving speed is lower than 15 km/h.

Operation

Switch on the system

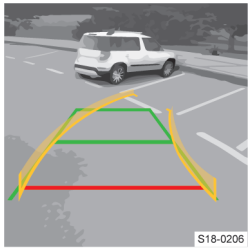
› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button.

When switching on, an alarm sounds and the symbol P lights up in the button.

Mode for transverse parking



› Stop the vehicle in front of a suitable parking space.

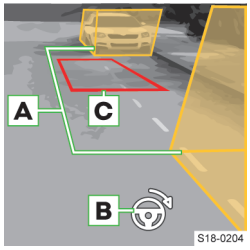
› Reverse so that the yellow lines lead into the parking space.

› At the latest, stop when the red line touches the rear boundary (e.g. curb).

Mode for parallel parking

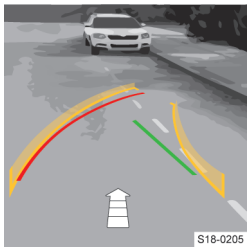
› In the screen, select the mode for parallel parking.

› Turn on the indicator light for the side on which you want to park.



› Stop the vehicle stop so that there are no obstructions in the gap between the auxiliary boxes A and the rear box does not extend over the side of the parking space (e.g. kerb).

› Turn the steering wheel in the recommended direction B until the red colour of the trapezoidal border C turns green.



› Hold the steering wheel in the adjusted position and reverse.
› Stop the vehicle if the green line overlaps with the lateral boundary of the parking space (e.g. the curb) or if STOP is displayed.
› Countersteer until the yellow lane line crosses the red line for the required lane orientation.
› Hold the steering wheel in the adjusted position and reverse.
› Stop the vehicle at a safe distance from the obstacle or when STOP is displayed.

Mode for driving up to a trailer/distance monitoring
The screen shows the area behind the vehicle in plan view.

On vehicles with a factory fitted tow-bar, this mode assists the driver when the vehicle is approaching a trailer draw bar. A line for approaching the trailer draw bar and lines for estimating distance are displayed on the screen.

For vehicles without a factory fitted tow bar, a line for monitoring the distance to obstacles is displayed on the screen at a distance of 40 cm behind the vehicle.

Mode for monitoring behind the vehicle
The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

Switch off the system
› Press the P button.

Or:

› For vehicles with an automatic gearbox, put the selector lever in the P position.

Automatic shut-off
The automatic system shut-off occurs when driving forward at a speed over 15 km/h.

Restriction

The camera image is distorted in contrast to the naked eye. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items may not be displayed properly on the screen. These include narrow columns, wire mesh fences, grids or road bumps.

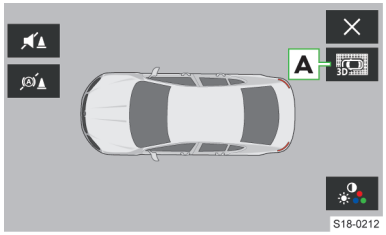
Area View environment overview

Usage

The area view assists the driver in parking and manoeuvring by displaying the vehicle area.

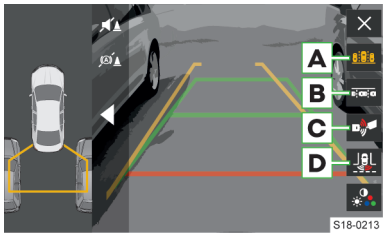
Overview

General overview



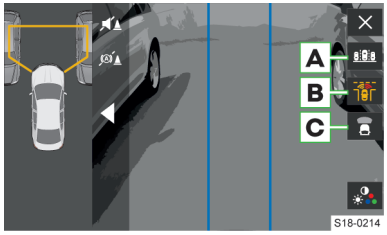
A 3D views:
Top view
View obliquely from above
View from the side
Overall view
By moving your finger across the screen, you can change the viewing angle.

Camera rear view



A Mode for transverse parking
B Mode for parallel parking
C Mode for driving up to a trailer/distance monitoring
D Mode for monitoring the area behind the vehicle (wide view)

Front camera view

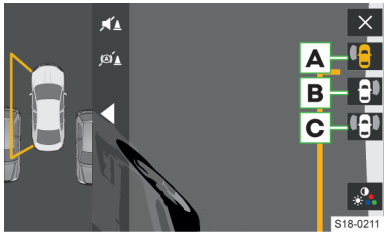


A Mode for transverse parking
The orientation lines are used for estimating distance as well as for displaying the route, which is controlled at the current steering angle.

B Mode for monitoring the area in front of the vehicle (wide view)
The area right in front of the vehicle is marked by the blue lines.

C Distance monitoring mode
The red line marks the distance of about 40 cm from the vehicle.

Side camera view



A Left side

B Right side

C Left and right side

The yellow line is shown at a distance of about 40 cm from the vehicle.

Operating conditions

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The driving speed is lower than 15 km/h.

Operation

Switching on
› Engage reverse gear.

Or:

› Press the P button.

Selecting the camera image
The respective camera image is selected by touching the screen in the Infotainment in the area next to, in front of or behind the vehicle silhouette. The selected area is highlighted on the screen by a yellow border.

Switching off
› Press the P button.

Or:

› For vehicles with an automatic gearbox, put the selector lever in the P position.

Automatic shut-off
The automatic system shut-off occurs when driving forward at a speed over 15 km/h.

Restriction

The camera image is distorted in contrast to the naked eye. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items, such as thin posts, chain link fences, grilles or uneven road surfaces may not be properly displayed.

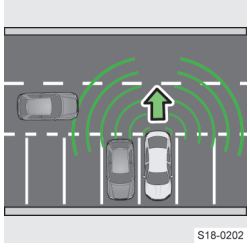
Objects directly beside the corners of the vehicle may be outside the field of view of the cameras and may therefore not be displayed on the screen.

Troubleshooting

After switching on, the symbol P flashes in the button
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Rear Traffic Alert

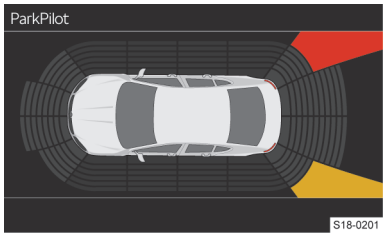
Functionality



When reversing, the Rear Traffic Alert warns of approaching vehicles.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the vehicle is braked automatically at a speed below 10 km/h.

Vehicle with Park Pilot
If an approaching vehicle is detected in the area behind your vehicle, a graphical warning is displayed in the Infotainment. At the same time, a continuous tone sounds.



■ Vehicle in collision area - danger of collision!

■ Approaching vehicle

Vehicle without Park Pilot
If an approaching vehicle is detected in the area behind your vehicle, the a warning is displayed in the instrument cluster display, indicating to the driver to monitor the traffic behind. At the same time, an acoustic signal sounds.

Operating conditions

✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Function restriction

Manoeuvre Assist's functionality may be limited in unfavourable weather conditions.

Settings

The system is activated or deactivated in the instrument cluster display in the *Assist systems* menu item.

The system is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system.

CAR > > P

Or:

MENU > > > P

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability
› Stop the engine and start again.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Park steering assistant

Usage

Park Assist helps drivers park in parallel and perpendicular parking places and to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

What you should be mindful of

Do not use the system in the following cases.

▸ On unpaved or slippery surfaces.
▸ If snow chains or a spare wheel are mounted on the vehicle.
▸ If the system chooses an inappropriate parking space for parking.

Functionality

The system looks for a parking space and only takes over the steering during the parking procedure or when leaving a parking place. The driver operates the pedals and the shift lever/gear selector.

The system displays information and notes on the instrument cluster display.

If the system detects a risk of collision, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is lower than 7 km/h.
✓ The ASR is activated and there is no intervention.
✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.
✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

Turn on/turn off
› Press the P button.

When the system is switched on, the symbol lights up in the button P.

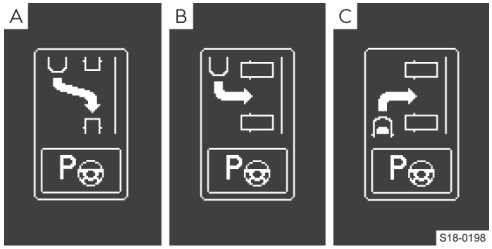
Select the lane side for the parking procedure
The system automatically searches for a suitable parking space on the passenger side.

› Press the driver's side indicator to find a parking space on this side of the road.

Operation while searching for a parking space
› Drive past a number of parked vehicles at a distance of 0.5–1.5 m.
› To search for a parking space across the road, drive slower than 20 km/h.
› To search for a parking space along the road, drive slower than 40 km/h.

If the symbol (km/h) appears in the display, reduce the driving speed. If the system finds a parking space, the display will show the recommended parking mode.

Changing the parking mode
If a suitable parking space is found, the following Park modes can be shown in the display.



A Park backwards longitudinally

B Park backwards crosswise

C Park forwards across

The parking mode can be changed by pressing the button P.

Press the button again P and the system is switched off.

› To return to the original recommended parking mode, press the button P again.

Before the parking process
› If a suitable parking space is found, stop and drive backwards or forwards as indicated by the arrow in the display.
› When a steering intervention message is displayed, release the steering wheel. The steering operation is taken over by the system.

Parking operation

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of injury!
▸ Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.
▸ Only operate the pedals and the shift / selector lever.

› Observe the area around the vehicle and drive backwards or forwards in accordance with the arrow in the display.
› As soon as the symbol appears in the display and an audible signal sounds, stop the vehicle. The steering wheel is taken over accordingly. The symbol goes out.
› Travel backwards or forwards in accordance with the arrow in the display.

As soon as the parking process is completed, the corresponding message is displayed and an audible signal sounds.

The parking procedure can be ended at any time by pressing the button P.

When partially parked in a suitable transverse parking space forward, press button P. The parking process is completed by the system.

Exiting a parking space
› Press the P button.

When the system is switched on, the symbol lights up in the button P.

› Follow the instructions on the screen.

Automatic speed reduction
If a speed of 7 km/h is exceeded during the parking process, the system will reduce the speed.

Upon the speed being exceeded by 7 km/h a second time, the parking process is terminated.

Function restriction

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to use the system to initiate a parking manoeuvre. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability
› Stop the engine and start again.
› If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Incorrect resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space
The correct parking procedure depends on the size of the wheels. If other wheels approved by ŠKODA AUTO are fitted, have the system readjusted by a specialist garage.

Trailer assist trailer manoeuvring aid

Usage

The trailer manoeuvring aid helps the driver when reversing with a trailer.

What you should be mindful of

Use the system extremely carefully in the following cases.

▸ On unpaved or slippery surfaces.
▸ If snow chains or a spare wheel are mounted on the vehicle.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
The system does not warn of obstacles or monitors the area behind the trailer. The driver must check themselves as to whether there are no obstacles in the area behind the trailer.

Functionality

The rear camera monitors the bending angle of the trailer drawbar. The system executes appropriate steering movements to position the trailer in the desired direction. The driver operates the pedals and the shift lever/gear selector.

The driver sets the desired direction with the external mirror knob.

Operating conditions

✓ The driving speed is lower than 5 km/h.
✓ The ASR is activated and there is no intervention.
✓ The luggage compartment lid is closed.
✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ It is a uniaxial or biaxial trailer hitched without a steered axle.
✓ The trailer drawbar is not covered.
✓ The trailer is not veering too much.

Operation

Before switching on

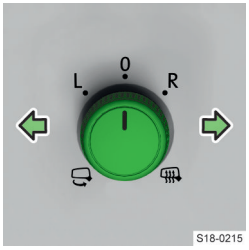
› Make several turns or cornering with the trailer attached.

The system determines the drawbar length in order to use the maximum yaw rate.

Switch on the system

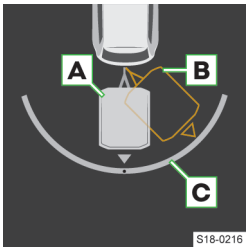
› Engage reverse gear.
› Depress the brake pedal.
› Release the steering wheel and press the P button.

Manoeuvring



› Tilt the exterior mirror knob to the right or left.

The setting menu is shown on the instrument cluster display.



A Current trailer position
B Target trailer position
C Manoeuvring angular dimension

› Tilt the knob to the right or left to set the trailer's target position.
› Start reversing.

The setting can be corrected when reversing.

› Stop as soon as the trailer's target position is reached.

⚠ CAUTION
Risk of injury!
▸ Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.
▸ Only operate the pedals and the shift / selector lever.

Straighten the trailer

› Tilt the knob backwards.
› Carefully reverse and drive forwards until the desired position of the trailer combination is achieved.

Switch off the system

› Press the P button.

Automatic system shut-off

If the following situations occur during the manoeuvring process, an automatic system shutdown and a braking intervention take place.

▸ The P button is pressed.
▸ The driver's door is opened.
▸ The steering wheel is gripped.
▸ The driving speed is too high.
▸ The trailer veered too much.

Engine, exhaust system and fuel

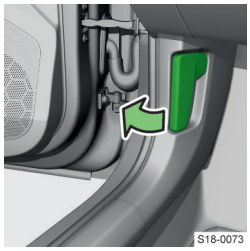
Bonnet

Opening the bonnet

Before opening

› Make sure the windscreen wiper arms are folded down onto the windscreen.
› Keep everyone away from the engine compartment.

To open



› Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel.

› Release the lock.
› Lift the bonnet so that the gas pressure springs hold it open.

Closing

› Pull the flap down.
› Close the flap with a slight push from a distance of about 20 cm.
› Check that the bonnet is closed.

NOTICE

▸ Do not press down on an unclosed bonnet.

Engine oil

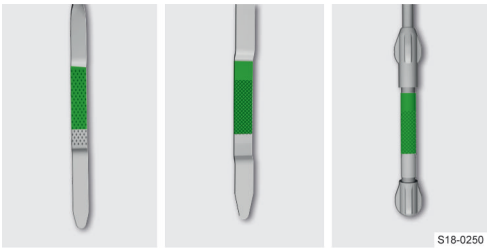
Checking the fill level and topping up

Test conditions

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The parked engine is warm.

Checking the level

› Wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the oil sump.
› Remove the dipstick and wipe with a clean cloth.
› Insert the dipstick as far as it will go and pull it out again.
› Read the oil level and push the dipstick back in again.



The oil level must be within the marked range.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

▸ The oil level must not be outside the marked range. If it is not possible to top up the engine oil or if the oil level is above the marked range, do not continue driving. Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.
▸ Do not use any oil additives.

Consumption

Depending on driving style and operating conditions, the engine consumes some oil, up to 0.5 l/1000 km. Consumption may be higher over the next 5000 km.

Refilling

› Unscrew the cover of the engine oil filler opening.
› Top up the oil to the correct specification in 0.5 litre portions.
› Check the oil level.
› Screw on the cover of the engine oil filler opening.

Specification

Ask a specialist garage for the correct engine oil specification for your vehicle.

If no oil of the correct specification is available, **max. 0.5 l** of oil with the following specifications may be used until the next oil change.

▸ **Petrol engines**: VW 504 00, VW 508 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C5.
▸ **Diesel engines**: VW 507 00, VW 509 00, ACEA C3 or API CJ-4. For vehicles without a particulate filter, VW 505 01 can be optionally used.

Changing

Have the oil changed by a specialist garage.

Troubleshooting

Engine oil pressure too low

flashes, lights up at the same time ⚠

or

flashes, lights up at the same time ⚠

› Check the engine oil level.

The oil level is OK, the warning light continues to flash:

› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine oil level too low

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding required engine oil top up

› Check the engine oil level, top up with oil if required.

Engine oil level too high

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the need to reduce the engine oil level

› Check the engine oil level.

The oil level is too high:

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine oil level sensor impaired

illuminates together with ⚠

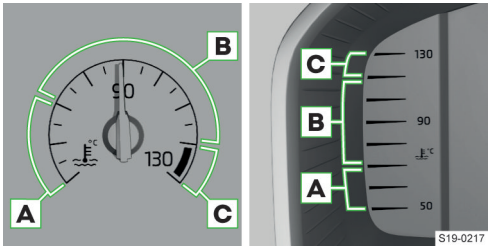
or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the engine oil sensor

› Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Coolant

Coolant temperature gauge



A Cold area
› Avoid high engine speed.
B Operating range
C High temperature range

Checking the fill level and topping up

Test conditions

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is turned off and cooled.

Checking the level

The fill level must be within the marked range.

› If the fill level is below the mark **MIN**, top up the coolant.

NOTICE
Danger of damage to the engine compartment!
▸ Do not top up the coolant above the marked area. The coolant could be forced out of the cooling system when heated.

NOTICE
There must be a small quantity of coolant in the tank.
▸ Do not add coolant when the tank is empty.
▸ Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Refilling

⚠ CAUTION
Risk of scalding!
The cooling system is pressurised.
▸ Do not open the cap of the coolant expansion tank while the engine is warm. Let the engine cool down.

› Place a rag on the lid of the tank and carefully unscrew the lid.
› Refill with coolant of the correct specification.
› Screw on the cap until it clicks into place.

Specification

Use the G12evo (TL 774 L) additive for refilling.

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine!
Adding coolant that does not conform to the correct specification can reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.

Troubleshooting

Coolant level is too low

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Message concerning the required coolant check

› Check the coolant level.

The coolant level is OK:

› Check the fuse for radiator fan, replace if required » page 201, *Replacing a fuse*.

The fuse is OK, the indicator light comes on again:

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠
Report regarding the engine overheating

› Stop driving.
› Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
› Drive on after the indicator light goes out.

Engine fault

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Stop driving!

› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

There is no coolant of the correct specification available

› Top up with distilled or demineralised water.
› Have the correct coolant mixing ratio corrected by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Another substance was used for topping up, other than distilled or demineralised water:

› Have the coolant changed by a specialist garage.

It is not possible to top up with a sufficient amount of coolant

› Stop driving.
› Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

There is a loss of coolant

› Top up the coolant and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine electronics

Troubleshooting

Petrol engine control faulty

EPC illuminates
Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Diesel engine control faulty

flashes

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Diesel preheating system faulty

illuminates, or does not illuminate after the ignition is switched on

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Particle filter

Troubleshooting

Clogged particle filter

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Clean the filter.

ⓘ When the indicator light is on, it must be assumed that fuel consumption will be higher, engine power will be reduced, and the START-STOP function will not be available.

Filter cleaning

Conditions for cleaning

✓ The engine is warm.
✓ For vehicles with manual transmission, observe the gear recommendation shown in the display of the instrument cluster.

Procedure for vehicles with diesel engines

› Drive at a speed of at least 60 km/h at engine speeds of at least 2000 rpm.

If the filter is successfully cleaned, the indicator light goes off.

If the indicator light does not go off within 40 minutes, no filter cleaning was performed.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Procedure for vehicles with petrol engines

› Drive at a speed of at least 80 km/h at engine speeds between 3000-5000 rpm.
› Release the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle roll with the gear engaged for a few seconds.
› Repeat this procedure several times.

If the filter is successfully cleaned, the indicator light goes off.

If the indicator light does not go off within 30 minutes, no filter cleaning was performed.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Exhaust control system

Troubleshooting

Emission control system faulty

illuminates

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Fuel filter

Troubleshooting

Water in the diesel fuel filter

illuminates together with ⚠

or

illuminates together with ⚠

› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Fuel filler flap

Opening the fuel filler flap

› Press the flap and open it.

AdBlue

Regulations

Only use AdBlue® that complies with the ISO 22241-1 standard. Do not mix any additives to the AdBlue®.

AdBlue® is a registered trademark of VDA and is also known as OFF 32 (Aqueous Urea Solution) or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

Functionality

In order to reduce pollutant emissions, a urea solution is automatically injected into the exhaust system - AdBlue®.

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below - 11 C. System function is ensured by an automatic heating system.

Checking the fill level and topping up

Checking the level

The AdBlue® level is automatically monitored.

The range with the existing AdBlue® tank fill level as well as the indication of the minimum and maximum AdBlue® top up quantity can be displayed in the driving data in the instrument cluster display in the menu item .

If the range with the existing AdBlue® tank filling level drops to 0 km, it is not possible to start the engine.

› If possible, top up AdBlue® to the maximum level.

Requirements for refilling

✓ Vehicle unlocked.
✓ Ignition switched off.
✓ Park the vehicle on a horizontal surface.

Methods of refilling

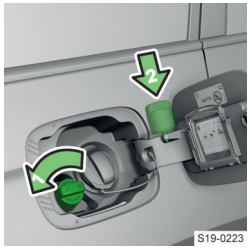
▸ With the fuel nozzle at the gas station.
▸ With the refill bottle or from the canister.

▸ At a specialist garage.

We recommend using refill bottles or canisters, refill bottles and canisters from ŠKODA original parts for refilling. The refill bottles are equipped with overfill protective function.

Refilling

› Open the tank flap.



› Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
› Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
› Top up AdBlue®.

The AdBlue® tank is full when the fuel nozzle switches off or as soon as no more AdBlue® flows out of the refill bottle. Do not continue refilling.

› Place the tank cap on the filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
› Close the tank flap and click into place.
› Before starting the engine, leave the ignition on for 30 seconds to allow the system to detect the refilling.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the system for the injection of AdBlue® in the exhaust system!

▸ Do not exceed the maximum refill quantity specified in the instrument cluster.
▸ The service life of AdBlue® is 4 years. If the tank contents are not consumed within this period, have them replaced by a specialist garage. For refilling, do not use any AdBlue® which has passed its expiry date.

Troubleshooting

AdBlue® level too low

or or or lights up

› Top up AdBlue®.

AdBlue® system impaired.

or or lights up

› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Technical data

The AdBlue® tank capacity is approximately 18 litres.

Petrol

What you should be mindful of

DANGER

Risk of death!
Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

› Never empty the fuel tank completely!

If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for vehicle operation, please contact a ŠKODA Partner. They will let you know whether a suitable fuel is offered in the associated country.

Regulations

Standards

Petrol must comply with European standard EN 228 (in Russia, GOST 32513-2013).

Only use **unleaded petrol** that contains **max** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

We recommend using petrol with additives, which is available at petrol stations at the petrol pumps.

Octane number

Use the petrol with the octane number prescribed for your vehicle.

Petrol with an octane number that is one **higher** than the one prescribed for your vehicle can be used without restriction.

NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

▸ If petrol is used that has an octane number that is lower than the one prescribed for your vehicle, then drive at moderate speeds with minimal engine stress.
▸ Fill up with the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
▸ Do not use petrol with an octane number that **lower** than **91**!

Prescribed petrol 95 / min. 92 or 93 RON / ROZ

We recommend using **95** RON petrol.

92 or. **93** RON petrol may be used as an option (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency**, **91** RON petrol may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Prescribed petrol min. 95 RON / ROZ

Use min. **95** petrol.

Using higher octane petrol than 95 RON may result in improved performance and lower fuel consumption.

In an **emergency 91**. **92** or. **93** RON may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Prescribed petrol 98 / (95) RON / ROZ
We recommend using**98** RON petrol.

95 RON petrol may be used as an option (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency 91**. **92** or. **93** RON may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Additive

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!
- Do not use petrol containing metal-based additives, e.g. manganese, iron, lead, and do not use, for example, any LRP petrol – lead replacement petrol.
- Do not add any additional additives to the petrol in accordance with EN 228.
- If petrol is not used in accordance with EN 228, we recommend obtaining information from a specialist company regarding the possible use of petrol additives approved by ŠKODA AUTO.

Requirements for refuelling

✓ Vehicle unlocked.
✓ Ignition switched off.

Refilling

› Open the tank flap.

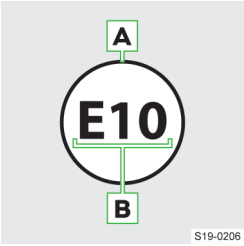
› Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
› Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
› Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.
› Do not continue refuelling after the fuel nozzle switches off.
› Remove the fuel nozzle and put it back on the petrol pump.
› Place the fuel cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
› Close the tank flap and click into place.

Troubleshooting

If fuel other than unleaded petrol has been refuelled according to the standards applicable to your vehicle
› Do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Technical data

The fuel prescribed for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



A Unleaded petrol
B Organic share as a percentage

The fuel capacity for vehicles with front wheel drive is about 58 litres, and for vehicles with four-wheel drive about 60 litres, with about 7 litres as reserve.

illuminates - the fuel level has reached the reserve area.

Diesel

What you should be mindful of

DANGER
Risk of death!
Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!
› Never empty the fuel tank completely!

If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for vehicle operation, please contact a ŠKODA Partner. They will let you know whether a suitable fuel is offered in the associated country.

Regulations

Standards
The diesel fuel must comply with European standard EN 590 (in Russia, GOST 32511-2013 or GOST R 55475-2013).

Only use a **diesel fuel** that contains a **maximum** of 7 % biodiesel **(B7)**.

We recommend using diesel with additives, which is available at petrol stations at the petrol pumps.

Operation in different weather conditions
Only use a diesel fuel according to the current or the expected weather conditions.

Additive

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!
- Do not use RME biofuel, even as a diesel fuel additive.
- Do not add any additional additives to the diesel in accordance with EN 590.
- If diesel is not used in accordance with EN 590, we recommend obtaining information from a specialist company regarding the possible use of diesel additives approved by ŠKODA AUTO.

Requirements for refuelling

✓ Vehicle unlocked.
✓ Ignition switched off.

Refilling

Misfuelling protection
The fuel filler neck on diesel vehicles may be equipped with a misfuelling protection device.

In some countries, the diameter of the diesel fuel nozzle may be identical to that of the petrol nozzle. Before driving in these countries, have the protection device removed by a specialist garage.

Refilling
› Open the tank flap.

S19-0225

› Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
› Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
› Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.
› Do not continue refuelling after the fuel nozzle switches off.
› Remove the fuel nozzle and put it back on the petrol pump.
› Place the fuel cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
› Close the tank flap and click into place.

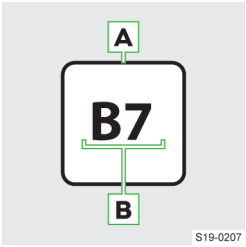
Troubleshooting

If a fuel other than diesel fuel has been refuelled to the appropriate standard
› Do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

The diesel fuel nozzle cannot be correctly inserted into the filler neck
› If the fuel nozzle cannot be properly inserted into the fuel filler neck, move it slightly back and forth when inserting it.

Technical data

The fuel prescribed for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



S19-0207

A Diesel
B Organic share as a percentage

The fuel capacity for vehicles with front wheel drive is about 58 litres, and for vehicles with four-wheel drive about 60 litres, with about 7 litres as reserve.

illuminates - the fuel level has reached the reserve area.

Vehicle battery and fuses

Vehicle battery

Functionality - Discharge protection

Possible causes of battery discharge
- ▸ Frequent short-distance traffic.
- ▸ Low temperatures.
- ▸ Vehicle stationary for a long period of time.

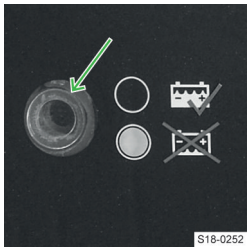
System-related discharge protection measures
- ▸ Increasing the engine idling speed.
- ▸ Switching off certain consumers or limiting their power.

Measures to be taken when vehicle stationary for more than three weeks
- › Disconnect the ⊖ terminal of the vehicle battery.

Checking and charging the vehicle battery

Checking the condition
The battery condition is checked by a specialist garage during servicing.

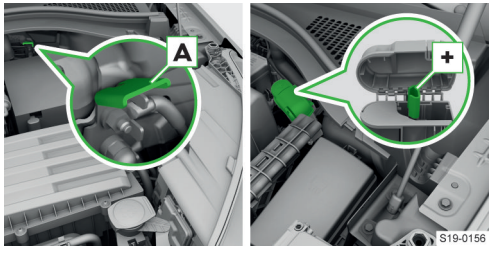
Checking the acid level
Applies to a vehicle battery with an acid level indicator.



- › Tap on the indicator before testing, to clear air bubbles.
- ▸ Black colour - the acid level is OK.
- ▸ Colourless or pale yellow colour - acid level is too low, the battery must be replaced.

Requirements for the charging process
- ✓ Ignition switched off.
- ✓ Power consumers switched off.

Vehicle battery charging process
To charge the vehicle battery fully, set a charging current of max. of 0.1 times the battery capacity.



A Earth point

+ ⊕ Pole for charging process in vehicles with a vehicle battery in the luggage compartment

- › Connect the ⊕ terminal of the charger to the ⊕ terminal of the vehicle battery.

  For vehicles with a vehicle battery in the luggage compartment, the ⊕-pole for charging is in the engine compartment.
- › Connect the ⊖ terminal of the charger to the earth point A.
- › Plug the charger's power cable into the socket and switch on the device.
- › After charging, switch off the charger and unplug the power cable from the socket.
- › Disconnect the charger terminals from the vehicle battery.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of explosion!
- ▸ During charging, hydrogen is released. An explosion can also be caused by sparks, for example, when disconnecting or loosening the cable connector.
- ▸ Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery.
- ▸ Do not carry out the so-called quick charging of the vehicle battery yourself, but have it carried out by a specialist garage.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
A flat vehicle battery can freeze easily!

Troubleshooting

Vehicle battery does not charge while the engine is running

or ⚠ illuminates
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine fault

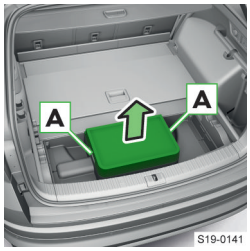
or ⚠ lights up
- › Stop driving!

- › Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Disconnecting, connecting and replacing

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of fire!
- ▸ Do not mix up the connection cables.

Depending on the trim level, the vehicle battery is located in the engine compartment or in the luggage compartment.



Access to the vehicle battery in the luggage compartment

› Remove the battery cover using the handles A.

Disconnecting

› Close the electric boot lid, the tilting/sliding sunroof, all windows and the electric sunblind.

› Switch off the ignition and any connected power consumers.

› Disconnect the ⊖ terminal and then the ⊕ terminal.

Connecting

› Connect the ⊕ terminal and then the ⊖ terminal.

After switching on the ignition, the warning lights are lit up.

› If, after a short distance, one of the above-mentioned indicator lights does not go out, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Commission these functions after disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery

▸ Clock setting » page 61.

▸ Window operation » page 29.

▸ Operation of the tilting/sliding sunroof » page 30,

▸ Sunblind » page 30.

Changing

The new vehicle battery must have the same parameters as the original battery. Have the replacement carried out by a specialist garage.

Using the jump-starting cable

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of explosion and chemical burns!

▸ Do not jump start with the battery of another vehicle under the following conditions.

  ▸ The discharged vehicle battery is frozen. A discharged vehicle battery can freeze at temperatures just below 0°C.

  ▸ The battery acid level is too low » page 199.

Use jump leads with a sufficient cross section and insulated terminal clamps.

The rated voltage of both batteries must be 12V. The capacity (in Ah) of the charging battery must not be significantly lower than the capacity of the discharged battery.

Jump-starting with the battery of another vehicle

⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of injury and danger of vehicle damage!

▸ Lay the jump start cables so that they cannot become caught by rotating parts in the engine compartment.

ⓘ **NOTICE**

Short circuit!

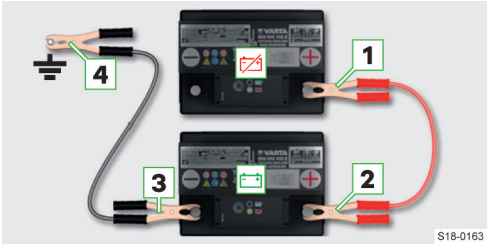
▸ The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must not touch each other.

▸ The cable connected to the positive pole of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conductive vehicle parts.

▸ The vehicles must not touch each other.

Connect the jump start cable

› Connect the terminal clamps of the jump start cables in the order shown in the legend.



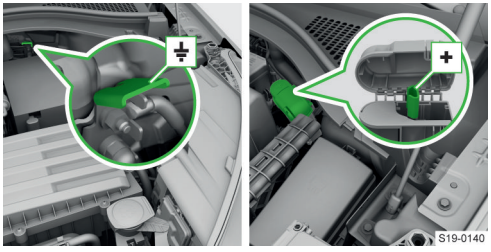
- flat battery / - current-emitting battery

1 ⊕ pole of the flat battery

2 ⊕ pole of the current-emitting battery

3 ⊖ pole of the current-emitting battery

4 ⏚ Earth point of the engine to be started



Engine compartment: Earth point and ⊕ pole on vehicles with the battery in the luggage compartment

Start the engine

› Start the engine of the current-giving vehicle and let it idle.

› Start the engine of the vehicle with the flat battery.

› If the engine of the vehicle with the flat battery does not start within 10 seconds, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

Disconnecting the cable

› Disconnect the cables in the reverse order from connection.

Fuses

What you should be mindful of

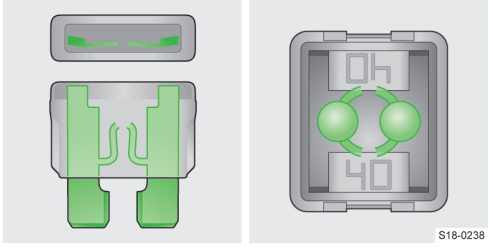
NOTICE

Fire hazard and risk of damage to the electrical system.

- Do not repair fuses or replace them with stronger fuses.
- Replace the defective fuse with a new fuse with the same amperage.
- We recommend using replacement fuses from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories range. These guarantee reliable and safe consumer protection.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows again, seek the help of a specialist garage.

One fuse may belong to several consumers. One consumer may have several fuses.

Functionality

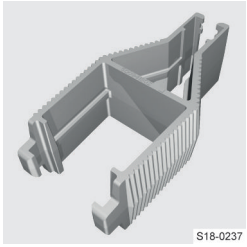


Blown fuse

Conditions for the replacing a fuse

✓ Ignition key removed (vehicle without starter button).
✓ Ignition switched off and driver's door open (vehicle with starter button).
✓ All consumers switched off.

Replacing a fuse



› Replace the fuse with the clamp located on the inside of the fuse box cover in the engine compartment.
› Use the appropriate end of the clamp according to the fuse dimensions.

Fuses in the dash panel

Overview

Access to fuses – left-hand drive

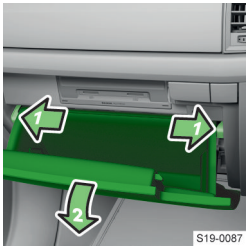
› Open the storage compartment on the driver's side.

› Press the button and open the tray.
› Change the fuse.
› Close the storage compartment.

Access to fuses – right-hand drive

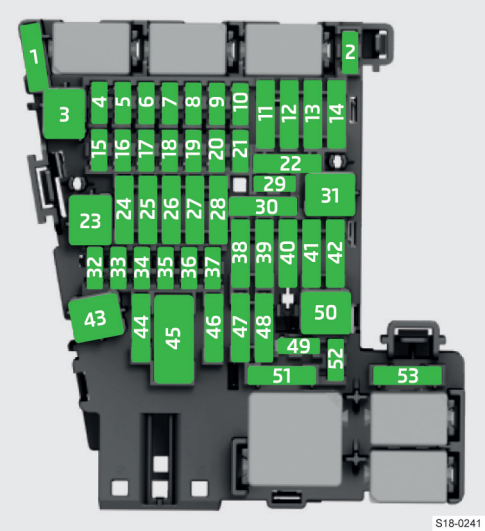
› Open the storage compartment on the passenger's side.

› Loosen the brake rod of the storage compartment.



› Press the locking lugs, the storage compartment folds down.
› Change the fuse.
› Insert and lock the brake rod.
› Close the storage compartment.

Fuses overview

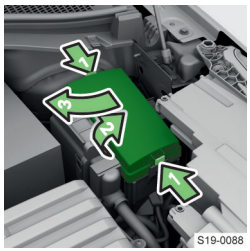


Fuse number	Consumer
1	SCR (AdBlue®)
2	Heated steering wheel
3	Not used
4	Alarm system
5	Databus
6	Automatic gearbox, ignition key lock (vehicle with automatic transmission)
7	Air conditioning, Auxiliary heating receiver, Front and rear window heating, Tyre pressure monitor
8	Light switch, rain sensor, parking brake, ambient lighting, sensor of the alarm system, headlight
9	Control lever under the steering wheel
10	Infotainment screen
11	Light - left side
12	Infotainment
13	Left side belt tensioner
14	Air blower for air conditioning, heating
15	Electric steering lock
16	USB ports, diagnostics connector, Phonebox
17	Instrument cluster, emergency call
18	Rear view camera, Area View
19	KESSY (keyless locking and starting system)
20	SCR (AdBlue®), Vacuum pump for brake system
21	All-wheel drive
22	Tow hitch
23	Panorama sliding/tilting roof
24	Light - right side
25	Central locking - (front and rear door left), power windows - (left), left external mirror (heating, folding function, mirror surface adjustment)
26	Heating of the front seats
27	Interior lighting
28	Tow hitch
29	Not used
30	Shock absorber setting
31	Opening the boot lid
32	Parking aid, Park Assist, "blind spot" detection
33	Airbags
34	Air conditioning, reversing light switch, mirror with automatic dimming, heated seats, parking brake, light switches, bar with buttons, USB connections
35	Diagnostic connection, camera, radar sensor
36	LED headlight - right
37	LED headlight - left
38	Tow hitch
39	Central locking - (front and rear door right), power windows - (right), right external mirror - (heating, folding function, mirror surface adjustment)
40	12-volt power outlets
41	Right side belt tensioner
42	Luggage compartment cover lock, headlight washers, front and rear window washer
43	Music amplifier
44	Tow hitch
45	Electrical operation of driver's seat
46	230 volt socket
47	Rear window wiper
48	Sport sound generator
49	Engine starting, clutch pedal switch
50	Not used
51	Seat heating - rear
52	Seat ventilation at the front
53	Heated rear window

Fuses in the engine compartment

Overview

Access to the fuses



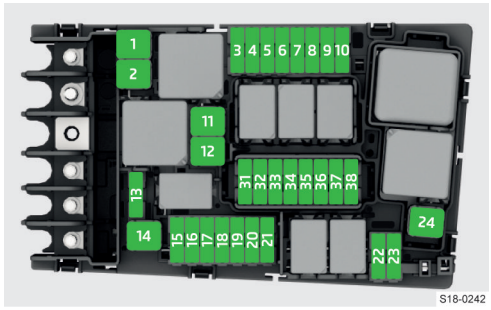
› Simultaneously press the locking buttons on the fuse box cover and open up the cover.
› Remove the cover.
› Change the fuse.
› Fit the cover and click into place.

NOTICE

Danger of water entering the fuse box.

▸ Fit the cover correctly and click into place securely.

Fuses overview



Fuse number	Consumer
1	ESC, parking brake
2	ESC
3	Engine control system
4	Radiator fan, fuel pressure regulator, electric auxiliary heater, glow plug system, air flow sensor, brake system, oil level and oil temperature sensor, ignition, engine components
5	Engine components
6	Brake sensor
7	Coolant pump, exhaust flap, crankcase ventilation, engine components
8	Lambda probe, NOx sensor and particle sensor
9	Coolant pump, ignition, engine components
10	Fuel pump
11	Additional electrical heating, heated windscreen
12	Electric auxiliary heater
13	Oil pump for automatic gearbox

Fuse number	Consumer
14	Not used
15	Horn
16	Ignition
17	ESC, engine control unit, main relay coil
18	Databus, battery data module
19	Front windscreen wiper (only some vehicles)
20	Not used
21	Automatic transmission (only some vehicles)
22	Engine control system
23	Starter
24	Electric auxiliary heater
31	Not used
32	Not used
33	Automatic transmission (only some vehicles)
34	Not used
35	Front windscreen wiper (only some vehicles)
36	Not used
37	Auxiliary heating
38	Not used

Wheels

Tyres and rims

What you should be mindful of

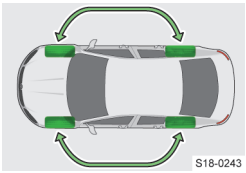
NOTICE

- Protect tyres from contact with lubricants and fuel.
- Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres without rims should be stored in an upright position.
- Alloy rims can be damaged by grit.

Causes of uneven tyre wear

- Improper tyre pressure.
- Driving style (e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration and deceleration).
- Wheel alignment error.
- Incorrect wheel balancing.

Wheel changes



For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10,000 km according to the schedule.

Advice for tyre assembly

› Follow the specified running direction, otherwise the driving characteristics may be impaired. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre.

› Always replace the tyres by the axle.

Additional information

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle.

Approved tyre sizes are specified in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity (in the so-called COCDocument).

The declaration of conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner (valid for some countries and some models).

Wheels 8.5Jx20 ET38 with 255/40 R 20 tyres

A vehicle equipped with these wheels and tyres at the factory also has appropriate widening elements for the use of these wheels and tyres.

If you would like to have these wheels and tyres retrofitted, find out at a ŠKODA Partner about the possible retrofitting of your vehicle with the widening elements for the use of these wheels and tyres.

Overview of tyre labelling

Explanation of tyre markings

e.g. 235/55 R 18 100 V

235 Tyre width in mm
55 Height/width ratio in %
R Code letter for the type of tyre - Radial
18 Diameter of wheel in inches
100 load index
V Speed symbol

load index

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre

95 690 kg
96 710 kg
97 730 kg
98 750 kg
99 775 kg
100 800 kg
101 825 kg
102 850 kg
103 875 kg

Speed symbol

The speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in the category concerned

M 130 km/h
T 190 km/h
U 200 km/h
H 210 km/h
V 240 km/h
W 270 km/h
Y 300 km/h

WARNING

- Do not exceed the maximum permissible load bearing capacity and speed for the tyres fitted.

Tread wear indicators

Wear indicators are located in the profile of the tyres that display the permissible minimum tread depth.

Markings on the walls of the tyres with the letters “TWI” or other symbols (e.g. △) indicate the position of the wear indicators.

A tyre is to be regarded as worn out when this wear indicator is flush with the tread.

The tread depth can be measured using a tread depth gauge on the ice scraper. The ice scraper is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
▸ Do not use worn tyres.

Tyre manufacturing date
The date of manufacture is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

For example, DOT ... 10 19 means that the tyres were produced in the 10th week of the year 2019.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
▸ Do not use tyres that are older than 6 years.

Troubleshooting

Help with a flat tyre
▸ Spare and emergency spare wheel » page 206.
▸ Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle.
▸ Breakdown kit » page 208.

Change of tyre pressure
illuminates
› Stop the vehicle.
› Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

Show tyres with modified pressure
In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the tyre condition.

MENU > >

Or:

CAR >

All-season or winter tires

Usage

All-season or winter tyres improve handling in winter weather conditions. They are characterised by 'M+S' and a mountaintop and snowflake symbol .

What you should be mindful of

For the best possible handling, use tyres on all four wheels with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm.

Change winter tyres to summer tyres at the appropriate time. Summer tyres have better driving and braking characteristics on snow- and ice-free roads and at temperatures above 7 °C.

Usage conditions

If all-season or winter tyres are installed that have a lower speed category than the actual specified maximum vehicle speed, then proceed as follows.

› In infotainment, set the speed limit according to the category of tyres fitted.
› In the driver's field of view, affix a warning label with the maximum value of the speed category intended for the tyres fitted (applies only to certain countries).

Settings

The speed limit setting for tyres is set in the infotainment in the following menu item.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Snow chains

Usage

The snow chains improve driving in wintry road conditions.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident as well as tyre damage!
▸ Do not use chains on routes that are free from snow and ice.

What you should be mindful of

› Before fitting the snow chains, remove the full wheel trims.
› Only mount the snow chains on the front wheels.

Technical data

Permitted rim/tyre combinations for mounting of snow chains.

Rim size	Tyre size
6.5Jx17 ET38	215/65 R17

Only fit snow chains with links and locks that are no larger than 13 mm.

SEAL tyres

Usage

The SEAL tyres have increased resistance to air leakage when punctured.

When replacing SEAL tyres with standard tires, the vehicle must have one of the following pieces of equipment.

▸ Spare or emergency spare wheel with corresponding tool for replacing it.

▸ Breakdown kit.

Spare and emergency spare wheel

Overview

Spare wheel

▸ A full spare wheel is identical to the wheels mounted on the vehicle.

▸ A temporary spare wheel is provided with a warning label on the rim. This wheel is intended to enable you to reach the nearest specialist garage.

Inflate a space saver wheel with the maximum prescribed pressure.

Emergency wheel

A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel. This wheel is intended to enable you to reach the nearest specialist garage.

An emergency wheel is significantly narrower than the wheels mounted ex-factory.

Remove the wheel on vehicles without sound system and replace

The spare wheel or emergency wheel is mounted in a recess under the floor covering or the variable loading floor in the boot.

S18-0229

Removing

› Loosen the retaining belt and take out the box with the tool kit.

› Unscrew the lock nut.

› Take out the wheel.

Inserting

› Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.

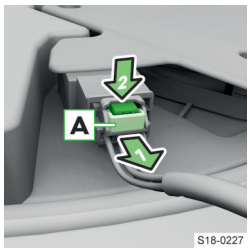
› Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.

› Screw in the locknut until it stops.

› Replace the box with the tool kit into the wheel and secure it with the tape.

Remove the wheel on vehicles with sound system and replace

Removing



S18-0227

› Partially pull out the safety tab A.

› Press the safety button and remove the plug.

S18-0228

› Unscrew the lock nut.

› Remove the bass loudspeaker.

› Take out the wheel.

Inserting

› Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.

› Insert the bass loudspeaker.

› Screw in the locknut until it stops.

› Insert the connector in the bass loudspeaker.

› Secure the safety tab A.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

What you should be mindful of

Before changing

› Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.

› Turn off the engine.

› Let all of the occupants get out. During the wheel change they should not stand on the road, e.g. behind the crash barriers.

› Close all doors, the luggage compartment and tailgate.

› Uncouple any trailers.

Raise vehicle

⚠ WARNING
Always ensure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip!
- ▸ Provide a wide and firm base under the jack on loose surfaces.
- ▸ Create a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber floor mat) under the jack on a smooth surface.
- ▸ Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- ▸ Do not insert any body parts under the raised vehicle.
- ▸ Do not start the engine of the lifted vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE
Danger of damage to vehicle!
- ▸ Make sure that the jack is attached correctly to the bridge of the sill.

After having been changed
- › Check the tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary.
- › In vehicles with a tyre indicator, save the tyre pressure values in the system.
- › Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts of the mounted tyres checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

The specified tightening torque is 140 Nm.

Drive carefully until the tightening torque is checked.

Replace the damaged tyre. It is not recommended to repair the tyre.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of an accident!
- ▸ Too low a tightening torque may cause the wheel to disengage while driving.
- ▸ Too high a tightening torque can damage the threads and cause the rim to deform.

⚠ WARNING
Risk of an accident!
- ▸ Do not grease or lubricate screws.
- ▸ Do not use corroded or damaged screws.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

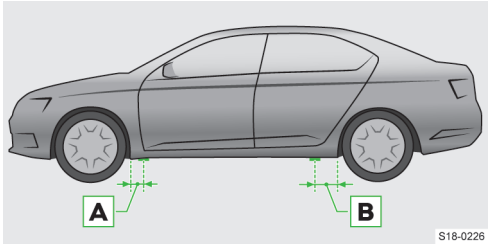
Release screws
- › If the vehicle has covers over the wheel bolts or wheel trims, remove them.

⚠ WARNING
- ▸ If you step on the key end when loosening the screw, hold on to the vehicle for better stability.

Some vehicles may have anti-theft wheel bolts that protect the wheels from theft.
- › Insert the upper section on the anti-theft wheel bolt until it stops.

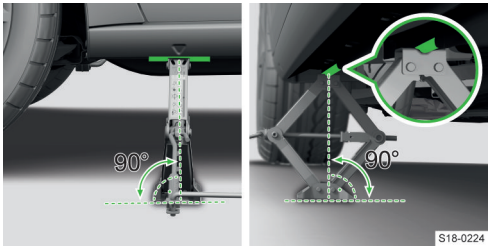
- › Place the key on the wheel bolt or on the attachment piece.
- › Turn the screw a maximum of half a turn so that the wheel does not come loose and fall off.

Jacking points for the jack



A 12 cm
B 24 cm

Position the jack and lift the vehicle
Use the jack from the tool kit.



- › Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel to be replaced.
- › Insert the crank into the mount on the car jack.
- › Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point.
- › Use the crank to raise the jack until its claw encloses the bar.

› Continue to lift the vehicle until the wheel is just off the floor.

Changing a wheel

› Unscrew the screws and place them on a clean surface.
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the wheel.
› Slightly screw in the screws.
› Lower the vehicle.

NOTICE

▸ Applies to wheel trims supplied ex-factory or from ŠKODA Original Accessories: the anti-theft wheel bolt should be installed in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

Tighten screws

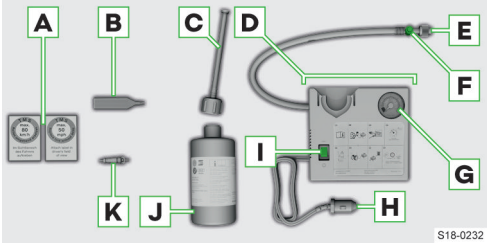
› Tighten the opposite wheel bolts including the anti-theft wheel bolt one after the other.
› Reinstall the cover caps of the wheel bolts or the full wheel covers.

I Keep the label with the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolts. A replacement upper section can be acquired from ŠKODA original parts based on this.

Breakdown kit

Content overview

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.



A Sticker with speed indication
B Valve remover
C Inflation hose with plug
D Air compressor (the layout of the controls may be different depending on the type of air compressor)
E Tyre inflation hose
F Button for pressure reduction
G Pressure indicator
H 12 volt cable connector
I ON and OFF switch
J Tyre inflation bottle
K Replacement valve core

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

Usage conditions

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit not at all intended to replace a permanent repair on the tyre.

The purpose of the repair is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

Change the tyre repaired by the breakdown kit as soon as possible.

Before using the kit

› Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.
› Turn off the engine.
› Let all of the occupants get out. During the wheel repair they should not stand on the road, e.g. behind the crash barriers.
› Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
› Uncouple any trailers.

After using the kit

If a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar can not be achieved, the tyre is too damaged and cannot be sealed with the puncture set.

› Stop driving. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Once a tyre pressure of 2.0–2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

› Avoid full accelerations, strong braking and fast cornering.

Information for driving with repaired tyres

› The pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.
› If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar and less, do not continue! Seek the help of a specialist garage.
› If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar, correct the pressure to the correct value of at least 2 bar and continue driving.

NOTICE

Danger of damage to the compressor!

▸ After the maximum running time of the air compressor, allow it to cool for a few minutes.

WARNING

Risk of burns!

The tyre inflation hose and the air compressor may become hot when inflated.

▸ Allow the air compressor and hose to cool for a few minutes.

Usage restrictions

Do not use the kit in the following cases.

- ▸ The rim is damaged.
- ▸ The outdoor temperature is below the minimum temperature indicated in the manual of the tyre filling bottle.
- ▸ Tyre punctures are greater than 4 mm.
- ▸ There is damage to the tyre wall.
- ▸ The expiry date stated on the tyre inflation bottle has expired.

Self-help

Seal the tyres

- › Unscrew the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
- › Unscrew the valve core with the valve insert and place it on a clean surface.
- › Shake the tyre inflation bottle back and forth with sealant.
- › Screw the inflation hose onto the tyre inflater bottle. The film on the closure is pierced automatically.
- › Remove the plug from the inflation hose and push it fully onto the tyre valve.
- › Hold the bottle with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent into the tyre.
- › Remove the filler plug from the valve.
- › Screw in the valve insert.

Inflate tyres

- › Fit the tyre inflation hose of the air compressor to the tyre valve.
- › Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- › Start the engine.
- › Plug the connector into the 12 volt socket .
- › Turn on the air compressor.
- › Once a tyre pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar is reached, turn off the air compressor.

Observe the maximum running time of the air compressor according to the directions of the repair kit manufacturer.

- › If an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar has not been reached, remove the tyre inflation hose from the valve.
- › Drive approx. 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to distribute in the tyre.
- › Replace the tire inflation hose on the valve and repeat the inflation procedure.

Tyre pressure

What you should be mindful of

NOTICE

- ▸ Always adjust the tyre pressure to the load.
- ▸ Check the pressure in all tyres at least once a month and before each longer ride.
- ▸ Check the pressure when the tyres are cold. If necessary, do not reduce the elevated pressure when the tyres are warm.
- ▸ After each change in tyre pressure, save the new values in the tyre control display.

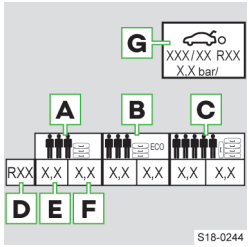
WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- ▸ If tyre pressure loss is very quick, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.

Sticker with prescribed tyre pressures

The sticker with prescribed tyre pressures is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



- A Inflation pressure for half load
- B Inflation pressure for environmentally friendly operation (slightly lower fuel consumption and emissions)
- C Inflation pressure for a full load
- D Tyre diameter in inches

  This information only serves as information for the prescribed tyre pressure. This is not a listing of approved tyre sizes for your vehicle. These are listed in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity (in the so-called COCDocument).
- E Tyre pressure reading for the front axle tyres
- F Tyre pressure reading for the rear axle tyres
- G Prescribed tyre pressure value for the emergency wheel

Tyre pressure monitor

Functionality

The tyre pressure monitoring indicator indicates a change in tyre pressure.

Warning when pressure changes

illuminates

› Stop the vehicle.
› Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

Show tyres with modified pressure
› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the tyre condition.

MENU > >

Or:

CAR >

Function restriction

The system is unable to provide a warning in the event of a very rapid tyre pressure loss, e.g. sudden puncture.

The system function may be restricted in the following cases.

▸ Uneven loading of the wheels, e.g. with a trailer attached.
▸ Sporty driving style.
▸ Driving on dirt roads.
▸ Snow chains fitted.

Saving tyre pressure values

Store the tyre pressure values in the infotainment
› Inflate the tyres to the prescribed inflation pressure.
› Turn on the ignition.
› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the vehicle condition.

CAR >

Or:

MENU > >

› Using the functional surfaces ◀ ▶ select the tyre control display menu.
› Tap on the functional surface SET.
› Then follow the instructions on the screen.

Save the tyre pressures in the following cases.

▸ Change of tyre pressure.
▸ Change of one or more wheels.
▸ Change of position of a wheel on the vehicle.
▸ Always after covering a distance of 10,000 km or once a year.

Troubleshooting

Tyre pressure display faulty
flashes for about 1 minute and stays on
› Stop the vehicle, switch off the ignition and start the engine.

If the symbol flashes again after starting the engine, there is a system fault.
› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Tyre pressure monitoring system

Functionality

The system measures tyre pressure while driving using sensors on the wheels.

For correct system function, you must select the tyre type as well as the load condition of the vehicle in the Infotainment.

After switching on the ignition, the last measured tyre pressure values are displayed. This display will be updated at the start of the journey.

Warning when changing the tyre pressure
illuminates
› Stop the vehicle.
› Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

Overview

Display in the instrument cluster
› Select the *Vehicle* menu item.

Display in Infotainment
› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the vehicle condition.

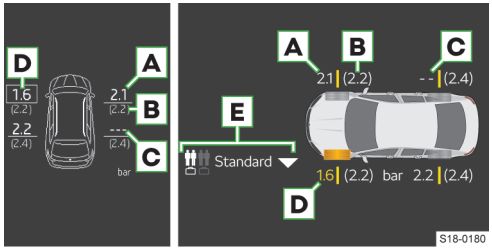
CAR >

Or:

MENU > >

› Using the functional surfaces ◀ ▶ choose the Tyre Pressure Monitoring menu item.

Instrument cluster / Infotainment



A Tyre pressure
B Recommended tyre pressure
C Tyre pressure not available
D Tyre pressure too low
E Adjust the vehicle's loading condition

The tyres warm up while driving and there is an increase in pressure. This is completely normal, it is not a defect. If the system indicates an increase in pressure while driving, do not reduce the pressure.

Settings

Tyre type
Select the tyre type in the following menu.

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Vehicle loading condition
› In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the vehicle condition.

CAR >

Or:

MENU > >

› Using the functional surfaces ◀ ▶ choose the *Tyre Pressure Monitoring* menu item.
› Tap the ▽ functional area and select the vehicle load condition.

Troubleshooting

Functional restriction / system fault
flashing
› Stop the engine and start again.
› If the indicator light flashes again after the engine starts, there is a problem with the system.
› Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Wheel bolt cover caps

Remove cover caps and install

Disconnecting
› Push the pull-off clamp onto the cover cap up to the stop.
› Remove the cover cap.

Installing
› Push the cover cap onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

Full wheel frame

Removing and installing the trim

Applies to factory built or original accessory trims from ŠKODA.

Disconnecting
› Hang the clamps for removing the wheel trims at the edge of one of the openings in the trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing
› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.

When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, it must be located at the location indicated on the bezel.

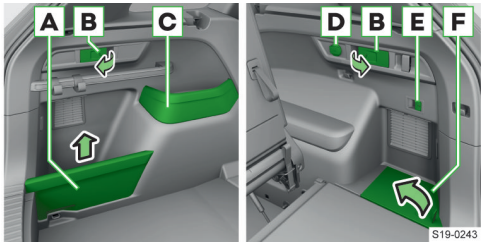
› Press the trim, starting at the valve, into the rim on both sides until it engages around the entire circumference.

NOTICE
▸ Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Storage space and interior equipment

Equipment in the boot

Overview



A *Applicable to the five-seater variant of the vehicle.*
Removable partition of the storage compartment
Max. load 2.5 kg

B Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests

C Fixed storage compartment
Max. load 1.5 kg

D 12 volt socket

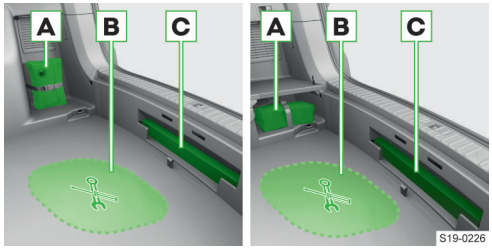
E Trailer hitch switch

F *Applicable to the seven-seater variant of the vehicle.*
Side compartment
› Pull at the loop to open.

Emergency equipment

Overview of the emergency equipment

Emergency equipment in the luggage compartment



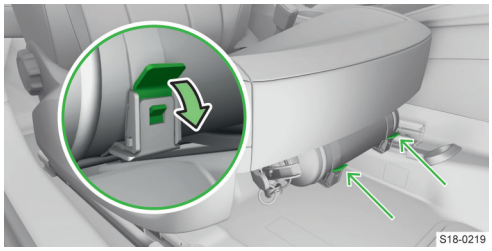
A Positioning of the first aid kit (depending on equipment)

B Tool kit

C Placing of the warning triangle

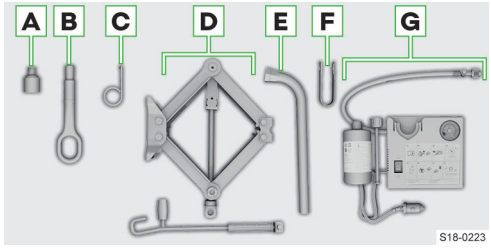
Storage compartment for the reflective vest
The storage compartment for the reflective vest is in the storage compartment of the front door.

Fire extinguisher under the passenger seat



Tool kit

Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components may be included in the tool kit.



A Attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts

B Towing eye

C Bracket for removing the full wheel covers

D Jack with sign and crank

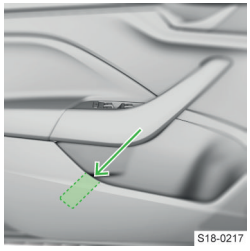
E Wheel wrench

F Removal clip for the wheel bolt cover caps

G Breakdown kit

The declaration of conformity is enclosed with the jack or the logbook folder.

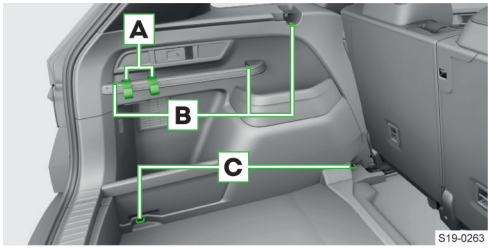
Storage compartment for the reflective vest



Fasteners in the boot

Overview

Five-seater variant of the vehicle

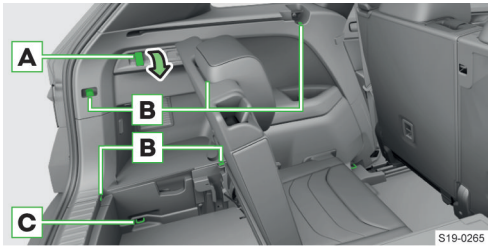


A Bag hooks
Max. load 7.5 kg

B Hook for securing the fastening nets

C Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets
Max. load 350 kg

Seven-seater variant of the vehicle

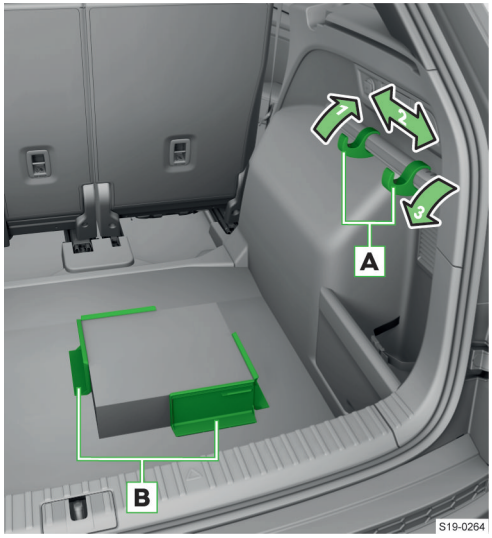


A Bag hooks
Max. load 7.5 kg

B Hook for securing the fastening nets

C Lashing eye for securing the load and the fastening nets
Max. load 350 kg

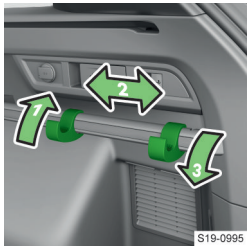
Other fasteners



A Sliding bag hooks
Max. load 7.5 kg

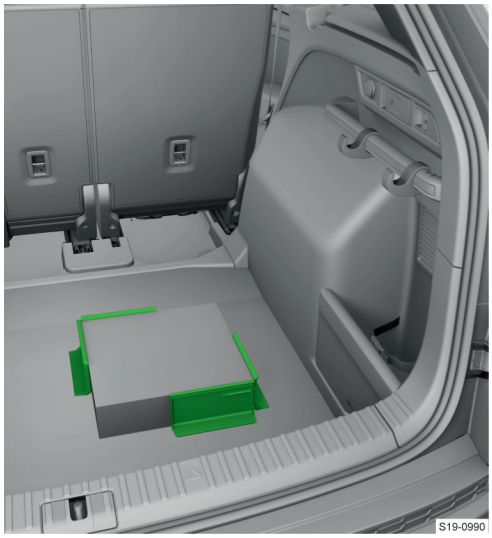
B Cargo elements
Max. load 8 kg
A storage compartment for the cargo elements is located under the floor covering in the boot.
› Fold up the cargo element and fasten it to the floor covering in the boot.

Bag hooks in the boot



The maximum load for the hook is 7.5 kg.

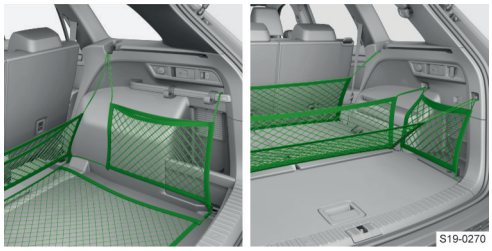
Cargo components in the boot



The maximum load for the Cargo components is 8 kg.

Fastening nets

Overview

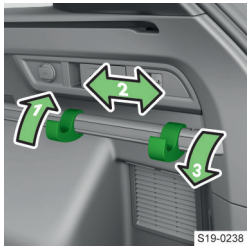


The maximum load of the respective fastening nets is 1.5 kg.

Sliding hooks

Settings

Moving



1 Releasing
2 Moving
3 Applying

Removal

› Move the hook into the front area of the fixing strip and remove it.

Inserting hook

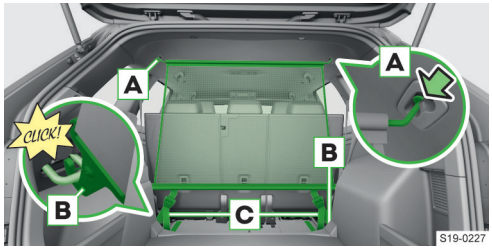
› Press the hook against the front part of the fixing strip and fold it down to the stop.

The maximum load for the hook is 7.5 kg.

Net partition

Attach the net partition

Attach at the back



› Before installing the net partition behind the second row of seats, fold forward the third row of seats.
› First insert the crossbar into the mount A on one side and push it forwards.
› Fix the bar in the same way on the other side.
› Snap the carabiners B into the lashing eyes.
› Pull the straps firmly at the free ends C.

Fasten in the front
The procedure is analogous to the process behind.

The lashing eyes for the carabiner are located under the central body pillars.

Releasing
Loosening takes place in the reverse order for fixing.

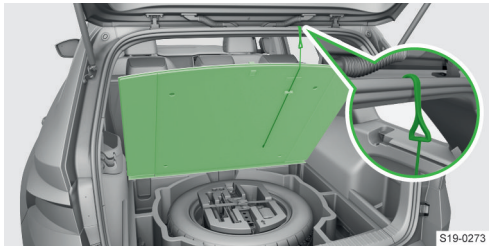
Double-sided floor covering

Overview

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment. One side is made of fabric, the other side is washable.

Floor covering in the boot

Folding up and folding down



NOTICE
Before closing the boot lid, remove the hook from the frame.

Roll-up luggage compartment cover

Operation

Extending

› Pull out the cover on the handle until it clicks into place.

Retracting

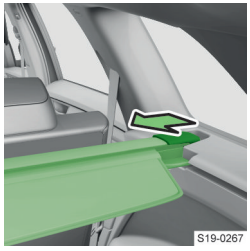
› Press the cover in the handle area.

The cover rolls up.

It is possible that the cover rolls more slowly during winter weather conditions.

Removing and inserting

Take out and insert the roll-up cover



› Press the end of the crossbar and take out or insert the cover.

Stowing the cover under the variable loading floor
Applicable to the seven-seater variant of the vehicle.

› Open the side pockets.

› Insert the cover into the recesses of the side panel.
› Close the side pockets.
› Restore the original position of the variable loading floor.

Variable loading floor in the boot

Setting the position

The maximum load of the rear plate in the upper position is 25 kg. The maximum load of both plates in the upper position is 75 kg in total.

Five-seater version of the vehicle – the variable loading floor consists of two parts.

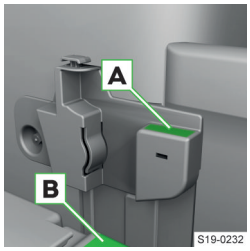
Seven-seater verison of the vehicle – the variable loading floor consists of one part.

For vehicles with a two-part variable loading floor, one side of the rear panel may be made of fabric and the other side may be washable.

In vehicles with an emergency wheel or vehicle battery under the floor covering in the luggage compartment, the variable loading floor cannot be adjusted to the lower position.
For vehicles with an emergency wheel under the floor covering in the luggage compartment, the maximum load on the floor covering is 5 kg.

Set the variable loading floor to the upper or lower position
The front and rear plates of the variable load floor can be adjusted to the upper or lower position. The handling of the two panels is identical.

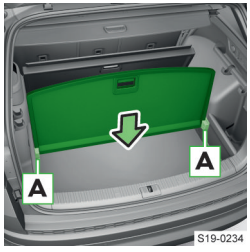
› Lift the variable load floor and pull it towards you.



› To set in the upper position, position the variable loading floor in the front area on area A.
› To set in the lower position, position the variable loading floor in the front area on space B.

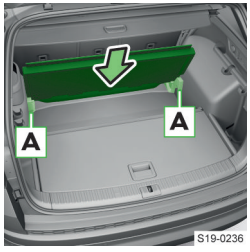
› Press the variable loading floor forward and hang up.

Dividing the boot



› Lift the rear plate of the variable loading floor.
› Push the plate into the grooves A.

Fold the front plate up and back

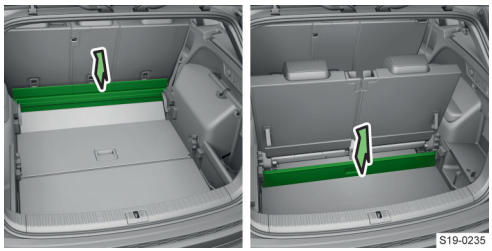


› Lift the plate. The plate is inserted into the grooves A.
› Folding it back takes place in reverse order.

Partition in the boot

Removing and inserting

Remove the partition



Vehicle version: Five-seater/seven-seater

The partition prevents the cargo from slipping.

› Remove the partition upwards.

Through-loading bag

Insert and lock

In the bag, a max. of 2 pairs of skis with poles can be transported.

› Fold the middle seat backrest forward. If necessary, fold down the third row of seats.

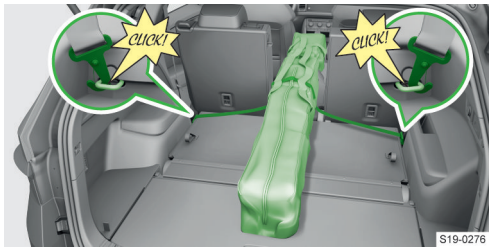
› Push the skis and poles with the tips backwards into the bag and secure the bag.

The loading bag can be shortened in relation to the length of the ski by means of the bands attached inside the bag.

› Place the empty bag in the opening in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.

› Tighten the drawstring around the skis on the base of the binding.

› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle of the middle seat.



› The carabiners on the two sides latch into the lashing eyes.

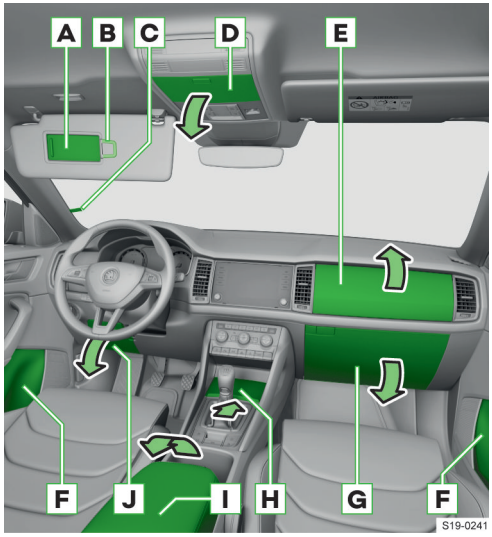
The seat backs of the second row of seats can be folded forward for better access to the eyelets.

› Tighten the straps.

⚠ WARNING
The maximum weight of the transported skis is 10 kg.

Overview of passenger compartment

Overview of practical equipment in the front



A Make up mirror

B Ticket holder

C Ticket holder

D Spectacles compartment
Max. load 0.25 kg
› To open, press the button.

E Upper storage compartment
Max. load 1.5 kg

› To open, press the left button on the lid of the lower storage compartment.

F Storage tray
- ▸ Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
- ▸ Storage compartment for the waste container
- ▸ Storage compartment for the reflective vest

G Storage compartment below with air outlet nozzle

In the compartment, there is a card holder, a pen holder and a storage compartment for coins.

Max. load 3 kg

› To open, press the right button.

› Turn the knob to position ✲ to open the air outlet nozzle.

H Storage tray

In the compartment is a 12-volt power outlet and a USB connection.

The USB connection can be used for charging and for data transfer.

› Pull the strip to open the compartment.

I Openable and adjustable armrest with storage compartment

› To open the compartment, lift the armrest.

J Storage tray

Max. load 0.5 kg

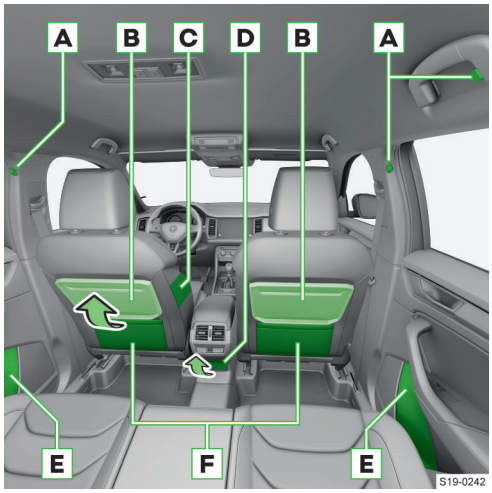
A card holder is located in the compartment.

› Pull on the handle to open.

NOTICE

▸ Do not leave heat-sensitive objects behind in the glasses compartment D.

Overview of the practical equipment in the rear



A Coat hook

Max. load 2 kg

B Folding table

C Storage pocket

D Depending on the equipment:
- ▸ 12 volt socket
- ▸ 230 volt socket

E Storage tray
- ▸ Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 0.5 l
- ▸ Storage compartment for the reflective vest

F Storage pocket

WARNING

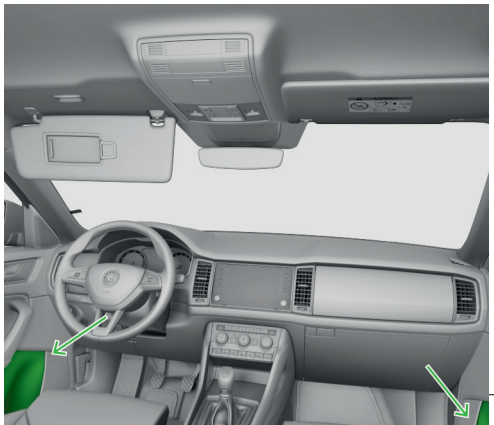
▸ Only hang lightweight clothing on the hook. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.

▸ Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.

Storage pockets on the inner sides of the front seats

Car park ticket holder

Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door



l.

Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door

The tray is suitable for bottles with a max. size of 0.5 l.

USB connections

The USB connection can be used for charging and for data transfer.

The USB connection is for charging only.

Hook on the centre body pillar

The maximum load for the hook is 2 kg.

⚠ WARNING

- Only hang lightweight clothing on the hook. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.

Spectacles compartment

The maximum load for the compartment is 0.25 kg.

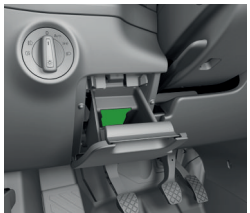
ⓘ NOTICE

- Do not leave heat-sensitive objects behind in the glasses compartment.

Pen holder

Storage compartment for cards, coins and SD card

Storage compartment for cards in the storage area on the driver's side



Third row of seats – drinks and telephone holder

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of scalding!
▸ Never put hot beverage containers in the drinks holder.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

Storage compartment under the front seat

Opening the storage compartment

The maximum permissible load for the storage compartment is 1.5 kg.

Storage compartment for an umbrella

Overview

Phonebox

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of burns during charging.
- ▸ The phone may get warm, remove it carefully from the storage compartment.
- ▸ Do not leave any metal objects in the compartment under the phone. If there is a metallic object in the storage compartment, which has become hot, remove the phone and let it cool down in the storage compartment!

Functionality

Functions of the Phonebox
- ▸ Wireless charging of phones.
- ▸ Amplification of the telephone signal (only valid for some countries).

The Phonebox is located in the storage compartment in the centre console at the front.

Insert a telephone with a maximum size of 160x80 mm into the storage compartment.

Charging Indicator
When the phone is charging, the ⌀ in the status bar in the infotainment screen will light up.

Recommendations for optimal function
- ✓ The phone is positioned with the screen facing up.
- ✓ The protective cover of the phone is removed.
- ✓ The phone is centred on the phone icon on the pad.

Operating conditions

Conditions for wireless charging
- ✓ Ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The phone supports the Qi standard.
- ✓ There is no object between the pad and the phone.

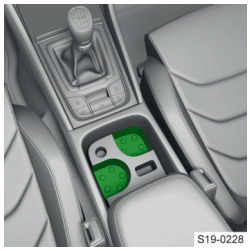
Troubleshooting

A message has been displayed on the Infotainment screen indicating that the mobile phone cannot be charged.
- ▸ Check that there is no object between the pad and the phone to be charged. If this is the case, remove the phone and the item. Place the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad again.
- ▸ Check that the position of the phone to be charged has not changed. If this is the case, remove the phone and put it back in the centre of the phone symbol on the pad.

Cup holder

Overview

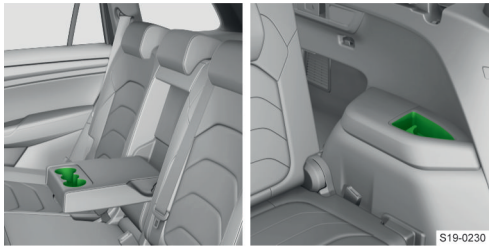
Cup holder at the front



A bottle can be opened with one hand in the holder.

› Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

Rear cup holder

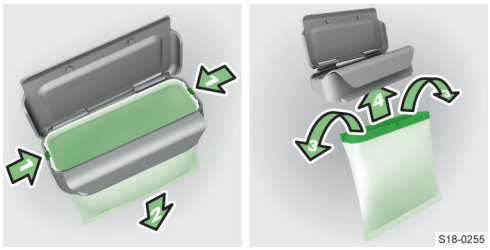


⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of scalding!
- ▸ Never put hot beverage containers in the drinks holder.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the electrical system and to the panels due to spilled drinks.

Waste container

Replace bags



Ashtray and cigarette lighter

What you should be mindful of

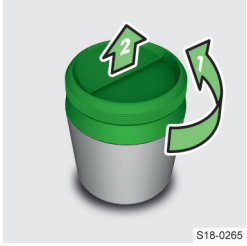
⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of burning or fire!
- ▸ Do not use the ashtray for storing hot or burning objects.
- ▸ Handle the lighter carefully.

Operation

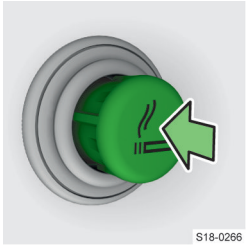
The ashtray is inserted in the cup holder.

Open the ashtray

Remove the lid



Cigarette lighter



› Push in the lighter.
› Wait until the glowing lighter pops back out.
› Remove the lighter and use.
› Push the lighter back in.

The socket of the cigarette lighter serves as a 12 V socket.

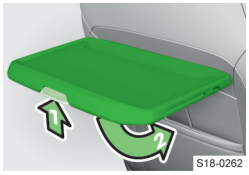
Folding table

Operation

Fold up the table

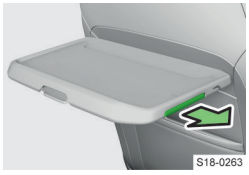
› Fold the table up to the desired position.

Unfold the table



› Press the safety button and unfold the table.

Slide out the cup holder

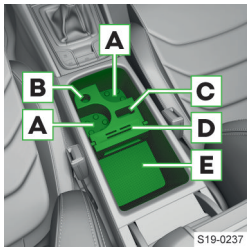


The maximum load for the table is 8.5 kg.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of injury!
- ▸ While driving, the table must be in the folded-down position.

Multifunction holder

Overview



A Cup holder

B Storage compartment for storing the cover of the 12-volt power outlet

C Storage compartment for the vehicle key

D Storage compartment for coins and card

E Storage tray

The multifunction holder can be removed or rotated.

Ceiling

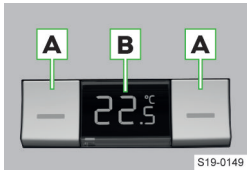
Remove and insert

The blanket is in a bag that can be attached to one of the following locations.

- On the guide rods of the front headrests.
- In the storage pockets on the backs of the front seats.
- On the operating lever for adjusting the second seat row in the longitudinal direction.

Display in rear centre console

Overview



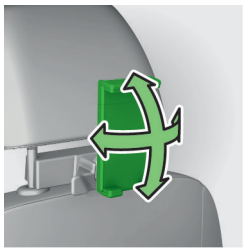
A Set the temperature

B Display

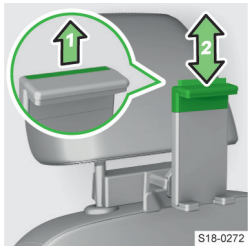
Tablet holder

Settings

Tilt and turn



Adjust size

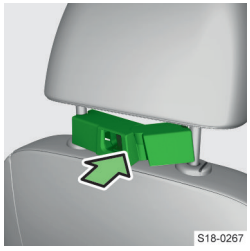


› Pull out the locking tab and move the upper part of the holder to the desired position.

Set the minimum size of the empty holder to avoid noise while driving.

Remove and insert

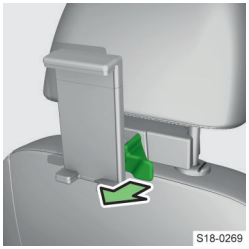
Fasten behind the headrests



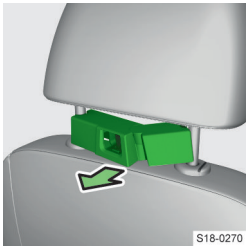
› Place the open adapter on the front guide rods of the headrest and clip in carefully.

› Clip in the holder in the adapter.

Removal



› Press the safety button and unfold the holder.



› Press on the adapter and remove it.

Technical data

The holder is for fixing a tablet with a height of min. 12.2 cm and max. 19.5 cm.

The maximum load for the holder is 0.75 kg.

12-Volt power socket

Operating conditions

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the electrical system of the vehicle!
- Use the sockets only for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts.

NOTICE
Danger of damage to the connected consumers!
- Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.

230-Volt power socket

Functionality

NOTICE
Danger of damage to the connected consumers!
- Do not connect a light with fluorescent lamp to the socket.
- Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.

Status display
- Lit up in green - the socket is switched on.
- Blinking green - the socket is still switched on for about 10 minutes after the engine has been switched off, if a consumer was connected before the engine was switched off.

The socket has a child safety lock. When inserting the plug, the fuse is unlocked and the socket is switched on.

Operating conditions

✓ The engine is running.

On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the socket also works in STOP mode.

Troubleshooting

The indicator light flashes red
The socket is switched off for the following reasons.
- Excessive current.
- Low state of charge of the battery.
- Overheating of the socket.

› If the reasons given above no longer apply and the socket is still not switched on automatically, disconnect the connected consumer from the socket and reconnect after a short time.

Roof rack and hitch

Roof rack

Overview

The maximum weight of the load incl. roof rack is 75 kg.

Swivelling hitch

What you should be mindful of

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
- ▸ Do not manipulate the switch for swinging the tow bar in and out while a trailer or another accessory is coupled to the tow bar. The tow bar could be unlocked.

⚠ **CAUTION**
Risk of injury!
- ▸ Handle the trailer coupling carefully.
- ▸ When swinging out the tow bar, do not stand in the middle area of the rear bumper.

ⓘ **NOTICE**
Risk of damage to the trailer coupling!
- ▸ When not using the towing device, swing the tow bar under the bumper.

Tow bar: swivel out/in

Swing out the tow bar

› Pull on the switch. The tow bar swings out. The indicator light inside the switch illuminates.

› Press the tow bar until it audibly clicks into place.

Check latchings: the indicator light within the switch lights up.

Swivel tow bar

ⓘ **NOTICE**
- ▸ No trailer or any other accessory can be connected to the tow bar.
- ▸ A socket or adapter may not be plugged into the socket.

› Pull on the switch. The tow bar is unlocked. The indicator light inside the switch illuminates.

› Swing in the tow bar under the bumper until it audibly clicks into place.

Check latchings: the indicator light within the switch lights up.

Coupling or uncoupling a trailer or accessory

The following information describes the procedure for coupling and uncoupling a trailer. The information also refers to another accessory, e.g. a bike carrier.

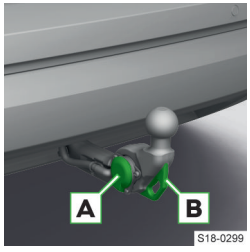
⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
- ▸ Do not use the safety eye for towing.
- ▸ Distribute and fix the load correctly.

ⓘ The trailer has a 13-pin electrical socket. If the trailer have a 7-pin connector, use a corresponding adapter from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Coupling

› Swing out the tow bar.

› Put the trailer drawbar onto the ball head.



› Plug the electrical trailer plug into the socket A.

› Hook the tear-off rope of the trailer onto the safety eye B. The tear-off rope must sag against the vehicle in all trailer positions.

Uncoupling

Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

Power supply of the trailer power network
In the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer, the trailer is powered by the vehicle.

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the vehicle electronics!
The total power consumption of all consumers connected to the trailer power supply must not exceed max. 350 watts.

Troubleshooting

Trailer coupling error
The indicator light inside the switch does not light up or flash, or the tow bar does not lock into place.

› Do not use the trailer coupling.
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Tow bar not locked
illuminates
› Engage the tow bar.

Technical data

Maximum vertical load for trailer operation
The maximum vertical load for trailer operation depends on the engine type and the vehicle equipment.

The valid specification for your vehicle can be found in the technical vehicle documentation, (e.g. vehicle approval documentation, COC document) or at a ŠKODA partner.

Other information (e.g. on the nameplate of the trailer device) merely provides information on the test values of the device.

Support load with mounted accessories
When using the accessories (e.g. bicycle carrier), the maximum length and the permissible total weight including load must be considered.

The maximum length of the mounted accessories (from the ball of the towing device) may not exceed 70 cm.

The permissible total weight of the mounted accessories including its load corresponds to the maximum vertical load for trailer operation; the value can be found in the vehicle registration documentation.

If the maximum load in trailer operation is more than 75 kg, then the permissible total weight of the mounted accessories including their load must not exceed 75 kg.

This value applies if the centre of gravity is at a distance of no more than 30 cm from the towing device ball head.

If the distance of the centre gravity of the load to the ball head of the towing device is greater than 30 cm, then the max. permissible total weight of the accessory, including its load, decreases (e.g. at a distance of 60 cm from the ball head, the permissible weight decreases by half).

WARNING
Risk of an accident!
▸ Do not exceed the maximum vertical load.
▸ The permissible trailer load and the weight of another accessory, e.g. of the bike carrier, is not to be exceeded.

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the trailer and the vehicle itself!
▸ When using the accessory (e.g. bicycle carrier), observe the maximum length and the permissible total weight of the accessory incl.

Maintaining and cleaning

Service events

Service intervals
Compliance with service intervals is crucial for the life and value of the vehicle.

The service events symbol and the corresponding message on the instrument cluster display indicate that a service appointment is due.

The specialist garage will inform you of the type of service interval, the option of changing this and the scope of service.

All services and the replacement or refilling of operating fluids are chargeable to the customer, even during the warranty period, unless the ŠKODA AUTO warranty conditions or other binding agreements determine otherwise.

Proof of service
A specialist garage stores the proof of service in the information system called Digital Service Plan.

The proof of service can be printed out.

Resetting information
We recommend that you do not reset the information regarding service events on your own. It can lead to incorrect setting of the service intervals and thus also to possible faults in the vehicle.

For vehicles with a variable service interval, new service interval values calculated according to the previous operating conditions will be displayed after the oil change service indicator is reset. These values will then continue to be adjusted according to the current operating conditions.

Service work, adjustments and technical changes

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to the vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We advise only using ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.

ŠKODA Service Partner
All ŠKODA Service Partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO. Service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We therefore advise having all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to the vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA original parts
We recommend the use of ŠKODA Original Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO. These parts correspond exactly to the ŠKODA AUTO regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO is able to warrant the safety, suitability, and long life of these products.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA original accessories
We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. With these accessories, ŠKODA AUTO stands for safety, reliability and the suitability for your vehicle type.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements.

Spoiler

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of an accident!
- Only use the original spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the original spoiler on the boot lid.
- The original spoiler on the front bumper cannot be left on its own without the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

Component protection
Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection. This component protection ensures the functional limitation of these components in a non-legitimate installation in another vehicle (e.g. after a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Interior

What you should be mindful of

NOTICE
- ▸ Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
- ▸ Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.

Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® suede / material

NOTICE
- ▸ Remove impurities as soon as possible.
- ▸ Do not use solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar agents on Alcantara® suede seat upholstery.
- ▸ Make sure that natural leather is not moistened when cleaning and that no water seeps into the seams.
- ▸ Do not clean the roof cladding with a brush.

NOTICE
Risk of fading to the cover fabric.
- ▸ If necessary, do not leave the covers for long periods in the blazing sun.

- ▸ During use, the leather and Alcantara® and suede materials may show minor changes (e.g. folds or discolouration).
- ▸ Some clothing fabrics, e.g. dark denim, sometimes do not have sufficient colour fastness. As a result, discolouration that is clearly visible on the seat upholstery can occur. This is not a defect in the fabric.
- ▸ Sharp-edged zippers, rivets, clamps and similar garments can damage the upholstery in the vehicle. Such damages cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.

Plastic parts

NOTICE
Risk of damaging the dash panel.
- ▸ Do not attach fragrances and air fresheners to the dash panel.

Windows

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the filaments or the glass antenna.
- ▸ Do not stick stickers on the heating filaments.

Covers on electrically heated seats

NOTICE
Risk of damaging the heating system.
- ▸ Do not clean the seats with water or other liquids.
- ▸ Do not dry the seats by switching on the heating.

Seat belts

NOTICE
Risk of damage to the seat belts.
- ▸ Do not dry clean the seat belts.
- ▸ Allow cleaned belts to dry before rolling up.

Instructions for cleaning

Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® suede / material
- › Remove dust and dirt on the surface with a vacuum cleaner.
- › Remove fresh impurities with water, slightly moistened cotton cloth or woolen cloth; if necessary, use a mild soap solution and wipe with a dry cloth.
- › Remove stubborn stains with a suitable cleaning agent.
- › For regular care of natural leather, use the equipment provided for this purpose. After each clean, use a care cream with light protection and impregnation effect.
- › When looking after Alcantara®, remove stubborn hair from suede and fabric surfaces with a cleaning brush. Remove pills from materials with a brush.

Plastic parts
- › Remove impurities with water, slightly moistened cloth or sponge with a suitable cleaning agent if necessary.

Windows
- › Remove impurities with clean water and dry with a cloth provided for this purpose.

Covers of electrically heated seats
- › Remove impurities with a suitable cleaning agent.

Seat belts
- › Remove impurities with a soft cloth and mild soap solution.

Exterior

What you should be mindful of

WARNING
Risk of an accident!
After washing the vehicle, the functionality of the brake system may be affected by moisture and, in winter, by ice.
- ▸ Dry and clean the brakes by braking several times.

NOTICE

- Bird droppings, insect residues, litter and sea salt residues, overflowed fuel, AdBlue® etc. are to be removed as soon as possible.
- Do not use rough sponges, scourers or similar to remove dirt.
- Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
- Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.
- Do not polish the vehicle in a dusty environment.

NOTICE

AdBlue® picks up some materials, e.g. paint and plastics.

- Clean the affected area with a damp cloth and cold water.
- Remove any dried solution with warm water and a sponge.

NOTICE

- Paint damage should be repaired as soon as possible.
- Do not treat painted parts with or hard waxes.
- Do not polish panels.
- Door seals and window guides must not be treated with anything. Exempted from this are products that are ŠKODA Original accessories. These ensure that the protective lacquer layer of the seals and window guides is not attacked.
- Do not use abrasive cleaners to clean the reversing camera.

Before driving through a car wash

› Observe the usual specifications of the car wash, e.g. close all windows, fold the mirrors, etc.

› Move the windscreen wiper lever to position **OFF** to adjust.

› If there are special attachments on your vehicle, observe the instructions of the car wash operator.

NOTICE

In vehicles with an electric boot lid, this can open automatically due to the pressure of the washing brushes.

- Lock the vehicle, e.g. with the central lock button.

After washing with a wax preservation

› Wipe off the windscreen wiper blades with a dry cloth.

Wash with a pressure washer

NOTICE

- Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure cleaner. This particularly applies to information with respect to the pressure and spray distance from the vehicle surface.
- Do not direct the water jet directly at the following vehicle parts.
  - Foils.
  - Locks.
  - Columns on the vehicle.
  - Trailer connection.
  - Swivelling ball bar.
  - Sensors.
  - Camera lenses.
  - Plastic, chromed and anodised parts.

Remove snow and ice

NOTICE

- Remove snow and ice with a plastic scraper or a suitable deicing agent.
- Clean the cameras with a hand brush.
- Only move the scraper in one direction.
- Do not use scratchers or other sharp objects for foils.
- Do not remove snow and ice with hot or warm water.
- Do not remove snow and ice from surfaces with coarse dirt.

Instructions for cleaning

Handwash

› Wash the vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or wash glove and plenty of water, if necessary with additional suitable cleaning agents.

› For foils and headlights, use a mild soap solution that contains two tablespoons of white neutral soap to one litre of lukewarm water.

› Use a glass cleaner for the windscreen wiper blades.

› Wash the cameras with clean water and dry with a suitable clean wipe.

NOTICE

- Wash out the sponge or wash mitt regularly.
- Use a different sponge for wheels, sills and the lower part of the vehicle than that used for the other vehicle parts.
- Do not wash the vehicle in the blazing sun.
- Do not dry the headlights or use sharp objects.
- Do not put pressure on the bodywork when washing.
- The temperature of the washing water may be a max. 60 °C.

After hand washing

› Rinse the vehicle and wipe it with a suitable clean cloth.

Vehicle paint

› Preserve the varnish at least twice a year with hard wax.

› Use a polish for matt lacquers.

Films
Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal: this is not an error.

The following factors have a negative effect on the life or colour fastness of the films.

- Sun rays.
- Moisture.
- Air pollution.
- Stones, e.g. the rebound of the cargo during transport on the roof rack.

Protection of hollow spaces
Corrosion-prone cavities of the vehicle are permanently protected by preservative wax at the factory.

› Remove spilled wax with a plastic scraper, clean stains with mineral spirits.

Underseal
The underside is permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

› Have the protective coating checked by a specialist garage before starting and at the end of the cold season.

Wheels
› After washing, preserve the wheels with suitable means.

NOTICE
Severe dirt on the wheels can result in the wheels unbalancing.

Car jack
› If necessary, treat moving parts with suitable grease.

Tow hitch
› Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

Ice scraper on the fuel filler flap

Technical data and specifications

Requirements for the technical data

The emission standard, information on fuel consumption and other information pertaining to your vehicle can be found listed in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity, in the so-called COCDocument. The information can also be requested from a ŠKODA partner.

The declaration of conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner.

The details in the technical vehicle documentation take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual.

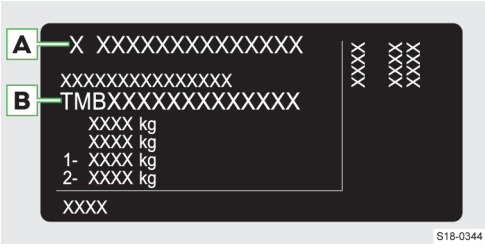
The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The values listed are for the basic model without any optional equipment. The values have been determined in accordance with the rules and conditions specified in statutory or technical regulations for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

Vehicle identification data

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number is found at the following locations.

- Directly in the engine compartment on the suspension turret.
- On a plate under the windscreen in the lower left corner.
- On the type plate at the bottom of the middle body pillar of the vehicle.



Type plate.

A Vehicle manufacturers

B Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

VIN display
The display of the VIN takes place in the infotainment in the following menu item.

CAR › ⚙ › Menu item for the service

Or:

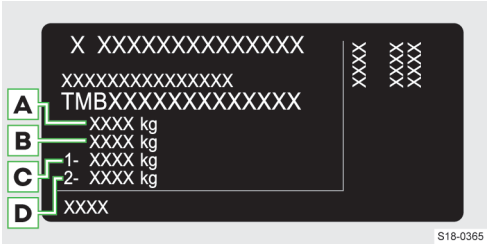
MENU › 🚗 › ⚙ › Menu item for the service

Engine number
The engine number is embossed on the engine block.

Maximum permissible weights

The maximum permissible weights are listed on the nameplate.

The type plate is located at the bottom of the middle body pillar of the vehicle.



A Maximum permissible gross weight

B Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)

C Maximum permissible front axle load

D Maximum permissible rear axle load

Maximum permissible towed weight
The specified value is valid for altitudes up to 1,000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as the height increases, as does the ability to climb.

Therefore, for every additional 1,000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10 %.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

Payloads
It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following components.

- The weight of the rider.
- The weight of all luggage and other loads.
- The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
- The weight of the equipment that are excluded from the operating weight.
- Trailer bearing load for trailer towing » page 227.

⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident and danger of vehicle damage!
- Do not exceed the specified values for the maximum permissible weights.

Operating weight

Information about the operating weight

The specification corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment. This includes 75 kg driver's weight, the weight of the operating fluids and the on-board tool kit and a fuel tank filled to min. 90%.

Operating weight

Engine type	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)	
		Five-seat version	Seven-seat version
1.4 l/92 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1516	1559
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	Manual gearbox 4x4	1626	1669
	DSG [a]	1572	1615
	DSG [a] 4x4	1641	1684
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1549	1592
	DSG [a]	1581	1624
2.0 l/132 kW TSI	DSG [a] 4x4	1706/1702 [b]	1749
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	DSG [a] 4x4	1708	1751
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	Manual gearbox 4x4	1725	1768
	DSG [a]	1679	1722
	DSG [a] 4x4	1755/1730 [c]	1798/1773 [c]
2.0 l/130 kW TDI CR	DSG [a] 4x4	1718	1761
2.0 l/140 kW TDI CR	DSG [a] 4x4	1772	1815
2.0 l/176 kW TDI CR	DSG [a] 4x4	1895	1928

Engine type	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)	
		Five-seat version	Seven-seat version

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.
[b] Applies to cars with the EU4 emission standard.
[c] Applies to cars with the EU5 emission standard.

Ask about the exact vehicle weight in a specialist garage.

Vehicle dimensions

Dimensions

Specification	Value (in mm)	
	Five-seat version	Seven-seat version
Vehicle height	1660/1665 [a]	1659/1664 [a]
Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors	1882	
Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors	2087	
Ground clearance of the vehicle	193/191 [b]/197 [a]	192/191 [b]/197 [a]
Vehicle length	4697/4699 [a]	

[a] Applies to vehicles with a 2.0 l/176 kW TDI engine.
[b] Valid for vehicles with four-wheel drive.

Engine specifications

Overview

- 1.4 l/92 kW TSI » page 233.
- 1.4 l/110 kW TSI » page 234.
- 1.5 l/110 kW TSI » page 234.
- 2.0 l/132 kW TSI » page 234.
- 2.0 l/140 kW TSI » page 235.
- 2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR » page 235.
- 2.0 l/130 kW TDI CR » page 235.
- 2.0 l/140 kW TDI CR » page 236.
- 2.0 l/176 kW TDI CR » page 236.

1.4 l/92 kW TSI engine

Power (kW at 1/min)	92/5000-6000	
Highest torque (Nm at 1/min)	200/1400-4000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395	
Transmission	Manual gearbox	
Vehicle version	Five-seat	Seven-seat
Maximum speed (km/h)	190	189
With specified gear engaged	5	5
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.6	10.8

1.4 l/110 kW TSI engine

Power (kW at 1/min)	110/5000-6000					
Highest torque (Nm at 1/min)	250/1500-3500					
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395					
Vehicle version	Five-seat			Seven-seat		
Transmission	Manual gearbox 4x4	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4	Manual gearbox 4x4	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	198	199	194	196	198	192
With specified gear engaged	5	5	5	5	5	5
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.8	9.7	10.0	9.9	9.9	10.2

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

1.5 l/110 kW TSI engine

Power (kW at 1/min)	110/5000-6000			
Highest torque (Nm at 1/min)	250/1500-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1498			
Vehicle version	Five-seat		Seven-seat	
Transmission	Manual gearbox 4x4	DSG [a]	Manual gearbox 4x4	DSG [a]
Maximum speed (km/h)	200	198	200	198
With specified gear engaged	5	6	5	6
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.8	9.8	9.9	9.8

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

2.0 l/132 kW TSI engine

Power (kW at 1/min)	132/3900-6000	
Highest torque (Nm at 1/min)	320/1400-3940	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984	
Vehicle version	Five-seat	Seven-seat
Transmission	DSG [a] 4x4	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	207	205
With specified gear engaged	5	5
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.2	8.4

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

2.0 l/140 kW TSI engine

Power (kW at 1/min)	140/4200-6000	
Highest torque (Nm at 1/min)	320/1500-4100	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984	
Vehicle version	Five-seat	Seven-seat
Transmission	DSG [a] 4x4	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	211	210
With specified gear engaged	5	5
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.5	7.7

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR engine

Power (kW at 1/min)	110/3500-4000							
Highest torque (Nm at 1/min)	340/1750-3000							
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968							
Vehicle version	Five-seat				Seven-seat			
Transmission	Manual gear-box 4x4	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4 (EU6)	DSG [a] 4x4 (EU5)	Manual gear-box 4x4	DSG [a]	DSG [a] 4x4 (EU6)	DSG [a] 4x4 (EU5)
Maximum speed (km/h)	197	198	194	194	196	198	193	192
With specified gear engaged	6	6	6	7	6	6	6	6
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.7	9.8	9.8	10.0	9.9	10.0	10.0	10.3

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

2.0 l/130 kW TDI CR engine

Power (kW at 1/min)	130/3500-4000	
Highest torque (Nm at 1/min)	380/1750-3000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968	
Vehicle version	Five-seat	Seven-seat
Transmission	DSG [a] 4x4	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	205	203
With specified gear engaged	7	7
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.6	8.8

[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

2.0 l/140 kW TDI CR engine

Power (kW at 1/min)	140/3500-4000	
Highest torque (Nm at 1/min)	400/1900-3300	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968	
Vehicle version	Five-seat	Seven-seat
Transmission	DSG [a] 4x4	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	210	209
With specified gear engaged	7	7
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.4	8.6
[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.		

2.0 l/176 kW TDI CR engine

Power (kW at 1/min)	176/4000	
Highest torque (Nm at 1/min)	500/1750-2500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968	
Vehicle version	Five-seat	Seven-seat
Transmission	DSG [a] 4x4	DSG [a] 4x4
Maximum speed (km/h)	221	220
With specified gear engaged	7	7
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	6.9	7.0
[a] Automatic dual-clutch transmission.		

Event Data Recorder

The vehicle is equipped with a device that serves as an accident data recorder (referred to solely as “EDR” from this point). The main purpose of the EDR is data recording during a traffic accident or other exceptional traffic conditions (referred to solely as “accident” from this point), where the restraint systems are activated.

The EDR records the accident in a short time (approximately 10 s), by showing the following information, for example:

- The function of certain systems in the vehicle.
- The seat belt status of the driver and front passenger.
- The actuation of the brake and accelerator pedals.
- The speed of the vehicle at the time of the accident.

The recorded data helps with the analysis of how the vehicle systems were behaving shortly before, during and shortly after the accident, thereby ensuring better information regarding the circumstances under which the accident occurred, which lead to material damage and possibly to personal injury.

The data relating to assist systems in the vehicle is then also recorded. In addition to the information on whether the affected systems were switched on or off at the relevant time, whether these were only partially available or were inactive, there is also the possibility of tracking whether these vehicle functions controlled, accelerated or braked the vehicle during the accident. Depending on the equipment, these functions are, e.g:

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).
- Lane Assist.
- Park Assist.
- Emergency brake function (Front Assist).

EDR data is only recorded if an accident causes the restraint systems to be activated. Under normal driving conditions there is no data recording and there is no audio or video recording of the vehicle interior or the vehicle environment. Personal data such as name, gender, age or place where the accident occurred is also not stored in the EDR. However, third parties such as law enforcement authorities may use certain resources to connect EDR content to other data sources, and therefore deduce the identification of some of the people involved in the accident when investigating the causes of the accident.

Reading out the EDR requires special equipment with specific access authorization and a legally prescribed diagnostic connection in the vehicle “on-board diagnostics”), and the ignition will need to be switched on.

ŠKODA AUTO will not read or otherwise process any accident data from the EDRwithout the approval of the vehicle owner or other person authorised for use of the vehicle. Exceptions are specified in the contractual arrangements, or these are subject to generally binding regulations.

Due to legal requirements, ŠKODA AUTO is required to monitor the quality and safety of its products, meaning that it is only entitled to use data from the EDR to monitor the product on the market, for further research and development, and to improve the quality of the vehicle's safety systems. For the purpose of research and development, ŠKODA AUTO will also make data available to third parties. This is done exclusively in anonymous form, i.e. without any connection to the specific vehicle, the vehicle owner or any other authorised user.

Information about the radio systems in the vehicle

Your vehicle has various radio systems.

Manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that this equipment complies with the requirements of **Directive 2014/53 / EU** and the **Technical Regulation on Radio Equipment, approved by the Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine of 25 May 2017 no. 355**.

To display information about **Directive 2014/53 / EU**on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to the marketing of radio equipment, **Technical regulation on radio equipment, approved by the decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine of May 25, 2017 No. 355** as well as regarding **declaration of conformity** ,proceed as follows.

1. Import the QR code **or** enter the following address in the web browser.

   http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals
2. Click on “Choose your manual”.
3. Select the desired model - a menu with the instructions will be displayed.
4. Select the construction period and the language.
5. Choose the **Information on Directive 2014/53 / EU** or **Information on the Technical Regulations on Radio Systems No. 355** file in PDF format.

Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties

Rights arising from defective performance
Your ŠKODA Partner, as a seller, is liable to you for material defects in your new ŠKODA vehicle, ŠKODA Genuine Parts and ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in accordance with the legal requirements and the purchase contract.

The buyer is entitled to assert the rights arising from defective performance with the responsible ŠKODA partner from the time of vehicle handover. The date of the vehicle handover and the vehicle identification number (VIN) are properly documented in the “Vehicle delivery documentation” chapter in this Owner's Manual.

ŠKODA warranty for new cars
As well as the legal rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA AUTO a.s. grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereinafter referred to as the “ŠKODA Warranty),” according to the conditions described below.

Under the ŠKODA Warranty, the company ŠKODA AUTO shall provide the following services [1].

- Free repair of damage due to a defect that occurs in your vehicle within two years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Free repair of damage due to paintwork flaws that occur on your vehicle within three years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Free repair of rust corrosion on the body, which occurs on your vehicle within twelve years of the start of the warranty. In terms of rust corrosion on the body, the ŠKODA Warranty shall cover only rust corrosion through body panels from the inside to the outside.
- Free repair of the high-voltage battery if it is installed in the vehicle and if the damage occurs within 8 years or before reaching a mileage of 160,000 km/ 100,000 miles (whichever occurs first) from the beginning of the ŠKODA warranty. A reduction in the capacity of the high-voltage battery over time is a natural feature of technology and does not constitute a defect within the meaning of the ŠKODA warranty, provided that this value does not fall below 70% of the total usable capacity before the expiry of 8 years or before the achievement of 160,000 km/100,000 miles (whichever comes first) from the beginning of the ŠKODA warranty.

The start of the ŠKODA Warranty is the day on which the new car is handed over for use by a ŠKO-

[1] Based on the requirements of generally binding legal regulations or country-specific market requirements, the ŠKODA partner or importer can provide a warranty beyond the scope of the stated ŠKODA Warranty. This local warranty extends the scope of performance in accordance with the specific warranty conditions of ŠKODA partners or importers.

DA partner to the first buyer who is not a ŠKODA Partner[1)].

The ŠKODA Partner enters this date into the corresponding systems of the manufacturer. Any one ŠKODA Partner can notify you of this date on request.

Vehicle repairs under the ŠKODA Warranty can be carried out by means of a replacement or repair of the defective parts. The ŠKODA Service Partner decides about the type of vehicle repair. The vehicle repair takes place in accordance with the availability of the ŠKODA Service Partners and within a reasonable period of time. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA Service Partner.

In the event of a claim under the ŠKODA warranty regarding damage to the high-voltage battery, if it is installed in the vehicle, the high-voltage battery is put into a condition corresponding to the age and mileage of the vehicle, whereby the capacity of the high-voltage battery after repair is at least 70% of the total usable capacity.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement car for the duration of repair and compensation.

The ŠKODA Warranty can be claimed at any ŠKODA Service Partner.

There are no claims under the ŠKODA Warranty if vehicle damage has occurred in causal connection with one of the following circumstances.

- The service work was not carried out on time and professionally according to the provisions of ŠKODA AUTO, or its execution was not proven by the customer when asserting claims under the ŠKODA Warranty.
- Damage refers to parts that are subject to natural wear, such as tyres, spark plugs, wiper blades, brake pads and brake discs, clutch, bulbs, synchronizer rings, batteries, etc.
- Installation, connection of parts or accessories, other adaptation or technical modification of the vehicle not approved by ŠKODA AUTO (e.g. tuning).
- Unauthorized use, improper handling (e.g. use in motor sport competitions or overloading), improper care and maintenance or unauthorized modifications to your vehicle.
- Non-observance of instructions in the Owner's Manual or in other factory instructions, including, but not limited to, non-observance of instructions regarding the procedure for charging the high-voltage battery if it is installed in the vehicle.
- Use of the vehicle as a stationary source of electrical energy.
- External impact or influences (e.g. accident, hail, flood, etc.).
- Damage has not been reported immediately to a specialist company or has not been properly remedied.

The customer shall prove the lack of causation.

The present ŠKODA Warranty shall not affect the purchaser's statutory rights arising from unsatisfactory performance in respect of the seller of the vehicle and possible claims arising from product liability laws.

ŠKODA Mobility Warranty

The Mobility Warranty provides you with a sense of certainty for journeys in your vehicle.

As part of the Mobility Warranty, if your car breaks down as a result of an unexpected fault when you are on the move, you can access services to ensure your continued mobility. These services include the following: Breakdown service at the breakdown location and towing to the ŠKODA Service Partner, technical assistance by phone or on-site operation.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, then the ŠKODA Service Partner may, if necessary, arrange additional subsequent services, such as replacement transport (bus, train, etc.), the provision of a replacement vehicle, and the like.

Specific claims for free provision of services under the ŠKODA Mobility Warranty only exist if your vehicle has remained in a causal connection with a defect which is to be remedied on the basis of fulfilment under the ŠKODA Warranty.

Check the conditions for provision of the Mobility Warranty for your vehicle with your ŠKODA Partner. They will also inform you of the detailed terms and conditions of the Mobility Warranty in relation to your vehicle. In the event that your vehicle is not covered by a mobility warranty, he will inform you of the possibilities for subsequent conclusion.

Optional ŠKODA Extended Warranty

If you also purchased a ŠKODA Extended Warranty when purchasing your new car, ŠKODA AUTO will provide you with a free repair of vehicle damage caused by a defect in the vehicle during the warranty period.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty for your vehicle is valid for the agreed period or until the agreed mileage limit is reached, whichever comes first.

---

1) Due to the requirements of the generally binding country-specific legal regulations, the date of the first registration can be specified instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

For the assessment of claims from the ŠKODA Extended Warranty, the conditions of the ŠKODA warranty described above apply to the appropriate extent.

The vehicle repair under the ŠKODA Extended Warranty can only be carried out by replacement or repair of the defective parts, whereby the ŠKODA service partner decides on the type of vehicle repair. The vehicle repair takes place in accordance with the availability of the ŠKODA Service Partners and within a reasonable period of time.

There shall in any case be no entitlement to further claims from the ŠKODA Extended Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement car for the duration of repair and compensation.

The described paint warranty, the warranty against rust penetration and the warranty for the high-voltage battery remain unaffected by the ŠKODA Extended Warranty.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty does not apply to exterior and interior foils.

Your ŠKODA partner will provide you with information about the detailed conditions of the ŠKODA Extended Warranty.

The ŠKODA Mobility Warranty and the ŠKODA Extended Warranty are only available in some countries.

Index

A

ABS 174, 175
ACC 178–180
- Automatic stop and start 178
- Distance adjustment 178
- Interruption of cruise control 179

Accident data recorder 236
Adaptive Cruise Control 178
Adaptive suspension 168
AdBlue
- Check 195
- functionality 195
- Indicator light 196
- Refilling 195, 196
- Safety 17
- standard 195
- tank capacity 196

Air conditioning system
- see Climatronic 58

Airbag 46
- Deployment 46
- Fault 47
- Installation locations 46
- Safety 18
- Switching off front passenger airbag 47
- Turn off airbags 46

Alarm system 26
- Trailer 26

All-season tyres 205
Ambient lighting 54
Analogue
- instrument panel 61

Analogue instrument cluster 61
Analogue instrument panel 61
Android Auto
- Infotainment Amundsen 120
- Infotainment Bolero 97
- Infotainment Columbus 153
- Infotainment Swing 78
- see electronic version of the manual 5

Apple CarPlay
- Infotainment Amundsen 120
- Infotainment Bolero 97
- Infotainment Columbus 153
- Infotainment Swing 78
- see electronic version of the manual 5

Area View 187, 188
- see Area View 187

Armrest
- Front 38
- Rear 38

Ashtray 223
ASR 174, 175
Assist systems
- Driver assist 174
- Park Assist 185

Assistance systems
- Safety 19

Auto Hold 173
Automatic braking
- see Front Assist 175

Automatic gearbox 166, 167
- Manually changing gear with the selector lever 166
- manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel 167

Automatic gearbox modes 166
Automatic operation of the Climatronic 58
Auxiliary heating and ventilation 59, 60
- Change the battery in the remote control 60

B

Battery
- see vehicle battery 199

Battery acid 199
Blinker
- see flashing light 48

Bluetooth
- see electronic version of the manual 5

Bonnet 192
Boot 212
- 12 volt socket 212
- Double-sided floor covering 215
- Fasteners 213
- Fastening the floor covering 215
- Hitch switch 212
- Lever for folding forward the rear seat backrests 212
- roll-up cover 215
- Storage compartments 212
- Transporting objects safely 19
- Variable loading floor 216

Boot lid
- Automatic locking 31
- Contactless operation 33
- manual operation 31

Boot storage
- see boot compartment lid 31

Brake fluid 172
- Safety 17

Brake pads 172
Brakes 171, 172
Breakdown call
- Infotainment Amundsen 122
- Infotainment Bolero 99
- Infotainment Columbus 156
- Infotainment Swing 80

Breakdown kit 208, 209
Bulbs 51
- Front fog lights - Replacing 52
- Front turn signal - Replacing 52
- Rear turn signal - Replacing 53

C

Car adaptations
Recommendations 228
Cargo elements 213
CarStick 119
Ceiling 224
Central locking 23, 24
Central locking button 24
Central locking system
SAFE function 24
Centre console 9
Changing gear with a
manual gearbox 165
Changing the
protective door strip 27
Charging your phone wirelessly 222
Check the vehicle before your journey 17
Child lock 27
Child seat 42
Fastening using a belt 45
Grouping 43
i-Size 45
Installation 45
ISOFIX 44, 45
Keyword child seat 42
On the passenger seat 43
Recommended child seats 44
Safety instructions 42
Securing children properly 18
TOP TETHER 46
Cigarette lighter 223
Cleaning the vehicle
Outside 229, 230
Climatronic 57–59
Display in the centre console at the back 224
COMING HOME 50
Setting 50
Compartments 217, 218
Configuration wizard
Infotainment Amundsen 102
Infotainment Bolero 83
Infotainment Columbus 130
Infotainment Swing 67
Convenience signalling 48, 49
Coolant 193
Checking 193
Indicator light 194
Refilling 193
Safety 17
Specification 193
Temperature gauge 193
Troubleshooting 194
Crew Protect Assist 183
see Proactive occupant protection 183
Cruise control 177, 178
Cup holder 222

D

Data connection - Infotainment Amundsen
CarStick 119
Settings 119
Data connection - Infotainment Columbus
Settings 153
SIM card in external module 153
Date
Infotainment Amundsen 102
Infotainment Bolero 83
Infotainment Columbus 130
Infotainment Swing 67
Daylight running lights 48
DCC 168
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 47
Diesel 197
Misfuelling protection 198
Prescribed fuel 198
Refilling 198
Requirements for refuelling 198
Standards 197
Tank capacity 198
Troubleshooting 198
Digital
instrument cluster 61
Digital instrument cluster 61
Distribution of the cargo 169
Door
Opening/closing 27
Door protect
see door protection strip 27
Door protection strip
functionality 27
DriveGreen 169
Driver Alert 183
fatigue detection assistant 183
Driver's seat 9
Driving data 63, 64
Speed limit warning 64
Driving in neutral 166
Driving with trailer
Safety 19
Trailer Stability Assist 174
DSR 174

E

Earth point 200
Economical driving style 169
EDL 174
Electric parking brake 172, 173
Electric windows 28, 29
Activation 29
Force limiter 28
Operation 28
Troubleshooting 29
Electronic voice amplification for driver and passenger 83, 103, 131
Emergency

Emergency call 20
Using jump start cables 200
What to do after an accident 21
What to do in the event of a fire 21
Emergency Assist
see assist systems for emergency situations 183
Emergency Assist System 183, 184
Emergency call 20
Emergency equipment 212
Jack 212
Tool kit 212
Emergency wheel 206
Safe driving 19
Engine compartment 10
Bonnet 192
Coolant 193
Engine oil 192
Safety 17
Vehicle battery 199
Windscreen washer fluid 55
Engine number 231
Engine oil 192
Changing 192
Checking 192
Indicator light 192
Refilling 192
Safety 17
Specification 192
Engine start
Using jump start cables 200
EPC 194
Equipment in the boot 212
ESC 174, 175
ESC Sport 174
Exhaust control system 195
Explanations 6
Exterior
lighting 48
Exterior mirror 40, 41
Extinguisher 212

F

Factory settings
Infotainment Amundsen 102
Infotainment Bolero 83
Infotainment Columbus 130
Infotainment Swing 67
Fasteners in the boot 213
First aid kit 212
Floor covering in the boot
Fasten the floor covering 215
Flooring in the luggage compartment 215
Fog light 49
Fog lights 49
Fogged windows 57
Folding table 223
Freewheeling
See Driving in neutral 166
Front Assist 175
Front seats 35
Front vehicle area 7
Fuel
Diesel 197
Petrol 196
Fuel filler flap 195
Fuel filter 195
Fuel tank
Opening the flap 195
Full LED headlights 48
Fuses 201
In the dash panel 201
In the engine compartment 203

H

Hazard warning light system 49
Headlights 49
Full LED 48
Headlight range control 49
Headrests 37
Heated
steering wheel 39
Heated steering wheel 39
Heated windscreen 31
HHC
see Hill Hold Control 174
High-beam
High-beam assist system 50
High-beam assist system 50, 51
Hill Descent Assist System 184
Activation/deactivation 184
Functionality 184
Operating conditions 184
Hill Hold Control 174
HOME menu
Infotainment Columbus 130
Hook
In the interior 218
Hooks
in the boot 213
Hotspot
see electronic version of the manual 5

I

i-Size 45
ICC
Electronic voice amplification for driver and passenger 83, 103, 131
Ice scraper 8
Ignition lock 163
Images
see electronic version of the manual 5
Images - Infotainment Amundsen
Gesture control 112
Main menu overview 112
Settings 113
Show main menu 112

Supported sources 113
Touch operation 112
Images - Infotainment Bolero
Gesture control 92
Main menu overview 92
Settings 93
Show main menu 92
Supported files 93
Supported sources 93
Touch operation 92
Images - Infotainment Columbus
Gesture control 142
Main menu overview 141
Show main menu 141
Supported files 143
Supported sources 143
Touch operation 142
Images- Infotainment Columbus
Settings 142
Immobilizer 164
In the event of an accident
What to do after an accident 21
Indicator lights
Foreword 10
Overview 10, 13
Information call
Infotainment Amundsen 122
Infotainment Bolero 99
Infotainment Columbus 156
Infotainment swing 80
Information Sport 66
Infotainment Amundsen
Basic settings 102
Data connection 119
Function restriction 102
Keypad 104
MENU menu 102
Overview 102
Restart 103
System update 103
System version 103
Voice control 105
Infotainment Bolero
Basic settings 83
Function restriction 67, 83
Keypad 84
MENU menu 82
Operation by touch 84
Overview 82
Restart 83
System update 83
System version 83
Infotainment Columbus
Basic settings 130
Data connection 153
Function restriction 130
HOME menu 130
Keypad 132
MENU menu 130
Overview 130
Restart 131
System update 131
System version 131
Infotainment keyboard
see electronic version of the manual 5
Infotainment keypad Amundsen
Additional keypad languages 105
Character variants 105
Find 105
Overview 104
Service 105
Setting additional keypad languages 105
Infotainment keypad Bolero
Additional keypad languages 85
Character variants 85
Overview 84
Search 85
Service 85
Setting additional keypad languages 85
Infotainment keypad Columbus
Additional keypad languages 133
Character variants 133
Find 133
Operation 133
Overview 132
Setting additional keypad languages 133
Infotainment keypad Swing
Additional keypad languages 69
Character variants 69
Find 69
Operation 69
Overview 69
Setting additional keypad languages 69
Infotainment overview
Amundsen 102
Bolero 82
Swing 67
Infotainment Overview
Columbus 130
Infotainment screen Amundsen
Overview 103
Settings 104
Infotainment screen Bolero
Overview 84
Settings 84
Infotainment screen Columbus
Overview 132
Settings 132
Infotainment screen Swing
Overview 68
Settings 69
Infotainment Swing
Basic settings 67
Keypad 69
Operation by touch 68
Overview 67
Restart 68
System update 68

System version 68
Touch operation 68
Instrument cluster
Instrument cluster display 62
Instrument cluster display 62, 63
Interior
lighting 54
Interior lighting 54
Ambient lighting 54
Interior rear-view mirror 40
see interior rear-view mirror 40
ISOFIX 45
eyelets 45
Use of child seats 44

J

Jump start cables 200
Jump-starting 200

K

Key 22
Memory function of the key 23
Key switch for passenger front airbag
Key switch faulty 47
Key switch for switching off airbag 47
Keyless locking (KESSY) 25, 26
Kick-down 166

L

Lane Assist 180, 181
see Lane Assist 180
Lane change assist system
siehe Side Assist 181
Lap timer
Infotainment 66
Instrument cluster 65
Launch control 166
LEAVING HOME 50
Setting 50
Lever
High beam 48
High-beam assist 50
Turn signal 48
Windscreen wiper and washer 55
Liability for defects
see warranty 237
Light 48, 49
Change bulbs 51
Changing bulbs 51
Clean headlights 55
CORNER function 48
Driving in the opposite direction of traffic 49
Fog light 49
Full LED headlights 48
Hazard warning lights 49
Headlight range control of the headlights 49
High-beam assist system 50
Indicator light 50
Low beam 49
Parking light 49
Sidelights 49
Switching on and off automatically 49
Troubleshooting 50
Turn signal 48
Light Assist
see high beam assist system 50
Light switch 48
Lightbulbs
Dipped beam - change 51
High beam - Replacing 51
Parking light - Changing 51
Lighting
Ambient lighting 54
exterior 48
Lighting range 49
Limiter
see speed limiter 176
List of radio stations
see electronic version of the manual 5
Load-through bag 217
Lock 23
Locking 24, 25
Low beam 48, 49
Luggage compartment
Fastening nets 214
Net partition 215
Luggage compartment lid 32, 33

M

Main beam 48
Manual air conditioning 57
see manual air conditioning 57
Manual gearbox 165
MCB 174
Media
see electronic version of the manual 5
Media - Infotainment Amundsen 109, 110
Main menu 109
Service 109
what you should be mindful of 109
Media - Infotainment Bolero 90
Main menu 89
Operation 89
things to be considered 89
Media - Infotainment Columbus 138, 139
Main menu 137
Operation 138
what you should be mindful of 137
Media - Infotainment Swing 73
Main menu 72
Service 72
what you should be mindful of 72
Media Command
see electronic version of the manual 5
Media Command - Infotainment Amundsen
Connection to the Infotainment Wi-Fi hotspot 114

Functionality 113
Functionality restrictions 114
Main menu 113
Operating conditions 113
Operation 113
Settings 114
ŠKODA Media Command application 114
Supported files 114
Media Command - Infotainment Columbus
Connection to the infotainment Wi-Fi hotspot 145
Functionality restrictions 145
Main menu 145
Operating conditions 145
Operating method 145
Operation 145
Settings 145
ŠKODA Media Command application 145
supported files 146
Memory function for electrically adjustable seats 34
Memory function of the key 23
Memory function of the seat 35
MENU menu
Infotainment Amundsen 102
Infotainment Bolero 82
Infotainment Columbus 130
Mirror
see exterior mirror 40
MirrorLink
Infotainment Amundsen 120
Infotainment Bolero 97
Infotainment Columbus 153
Infotainment Swing 78
see electronic version of the manual 5
Mirrors
Set functions 40
Mobile Device Management - Infotainment Amundsen 115, 116
possible connection types 115
Mobile Device Management - Infotainment Bolero 94, 95
possible connection types 94
Mobile Device Management - Infotainment Columbus 146–148
possible connection types 146
Mobile Device Management - Infotainment Swing 75, 76
possible connection types 75
MSR 174
Multi-Collision Brake
see MCB 174
Multifunction holder 224

N

Navigation - infotainment Amundsen
Fuel warning 128
Navigation - Infotainment Amundsen
Change route destinations 125
Demo mode 128
Destination information 128
Driving with a trailer 128
Enter destination via the address 125
Find destination 125
Home address 128
Information on driving time 128
List of stored destinations 125
Map overview 125
Map scale 125
Navigation announcements 124
Navigation database version 129
POI categories 128
Route calculation 125
Route summary 125
Select destination in the map 125
Select destination you are looking for 125
Select the stored destination 125
Set navigation announcements 128
Settings 128
Show main menu 125
Speed limit warning 128
Speed limits 128
Starting point of demo mode 128
Touch operation 128
Traffic obstruction 128
Traffic sign display 128
Update the navigation database 129
Navigation - infotainment Columbus
Fuel warning 162
Navigation - Infotainment Columbus
Automatic online update 163
Change route destinations to each other 158
Demo mode 162
Destination information 162
Driving with a trailer 162
Enter destination via the address 158
Find destination 158
Home address 162
Information on driving time 162
List of stored destinations 158
Manual online update 163
Map overview 158
Map scale 158
Navigation announcements 158
Navigation database version 163
POI categories 162
Route calculation 158
Route overview 158
Select destination in the map 158
Select destination you are looking for 158
Select the stored destination 158
Set navigation announcements 162
Settings 162
Show main menu 158
Speed limit warning 162
Speed limits 162
Starting point of demo mode 162
Touch operation 161

Traffic obstruction 162
Traffic sign display 162
Update the navigation database 163
Waypoint mode 158
Net partition 215
Nets 214
Notes on starting 164

O

Offroad 168
Off-road information 168
Switching on/off 168
Oil
see engine oil 192
Online services - Infotainment Amundsen
Breakdown call 122
Change users 123
Connection status 123
Delete users 123
Information call 122
Registration and activation of online services 123
Rights and obligations 122
Set the level of protection for personal data 123
Settings 123
ŠKODA Connect application 122
ŠKODA Connect Portal website 122
ŠKODA Connect website 122
Online Services - Infotainment Amundsen
Local service 123
Private mode 123
Service management 123
Switch services on / off 123
Online Services - Infotainment Bolero
Breakdown call 99
Change user 100
Connection status 100
Delete user 100
Information call 99
Local service 100
Private mode 100
Registration and activation of online services 100
Rights and obligations 99
Service management 100
Setting the level of protection of personal data 100
Settings 100
ŠKODA Connect Application 99
ŠKODA Connect Portal Website 99
ŠKODA Connect Website 99
Switch services on / off 100
Online services - Infotainment Columbus
Delete users 156
Set the level of protection for personal data 156
ŠKODA Connect Application 156
ŠKODA Connect Portal website 156
ŠKODA Connect website 156
Online Services - Infotainment Columbus
Breakdown call 156
Change user 156
Connection status 156
Information call 156
Localisation services 156
Private mode 156
Registration and activation of online services 156
Rights and obligations 156
Service management 156
Settings 156
Switch services on / off 156
Online Services - Infotainment Swing
Breakdown call 80
Change user 81
Connection status 81
Delete user 81
Information call 80
Local service 81
Private mode 81
Registration and activation of online services 81
Rights and obligations 80
Service management 81
Setting the level of protection of personal data 81
Settings 81
ŠKODA Connect Application 80
ŠKODA Connect Portal Website 80
ŠKODA Connect Website 80
Switch services on / off 81
Online services ŠKODA Connect
Infotainment Columbus 156
Infotainment Swing 80
Operating Infotainment Amundsen
by language 105
Operation - Infotainment Columbus 132
Operation of Infotainment Bolero
by touch 84

P

Park Assist 189, 190
see park steering assistant 189
Park Assist systems 185
Parking
Park steering assistant 189
Parking aid 185
Parking the vehicle safely 20
Rear Traffic Alert 188
Reversing camera 186
Parking aid 185
Parking brake 172
see electric parking brake 172
Parking light 49
ParkPilot
see parking aid 185
Particle filter 194
Particle Filter
Troubleshooting 194
Partition in the boot 217
Passenger seat 9
Pedestrian Detection 176

Personalisation 66
Personalization
attitude 66
Change user account 66
functionality 66
Usage 66
Petrol 196
Prescribed fuel 197
Prescribed petrol 196, 197
Refilling 197
Requirements for refuelling 197
standards 196
Tank capacity 197
Troubleshooting 197
Phonebox 222
Pictures - Infotainment Amundsen
Supported files 113
Power steering 39
Practical equipment 217, 218
12 volt socket 212, 217, 218, 225
230 volt socket 218, 225
Ashtray 223
Cigarette lighter 223
Coat hook 218
cup holder 222
Folding table 223
Load-through bag 217
Make up mirror 217
Multifunction holder 224
Spectacles compartment 217
Storage compartment for the umbrella 221
Storage compartment under the front seat 221
Storage compartments 217, 218
Storage pockets 218
Tablet holder 224
Ticket holder 217

R

Radio
see electronic version of the manual 5
Radio - Infotainment Amundsen 107
Find stations manually 107
List of available stations 106
Main menu overview 106
SCAN function 107
Select station 107
Show main menu 106
Radio - Infotainment Bolero 87
Display main menu 86
List of available stations 86
Main menu overview 86
SCAN function 87
Search for stations manually 87
Select station 87
Radio - Infotainment Columbus 135
Find stations manually 135
List of available stations 134
Main menu overview 134
SCAN function 135
Select station 135
Show main menu 134
Radio - Infotainment Swing 70
Find stations manually 70
List of available stations 70
Main menu overview 70
SCAN function 70
Select station 70
Show main menu 70
Rear fog light 49
Rear Traffic Alert 188, 189
Rear vehicle area 8
Rear View Camera
Operation 186
Recirculated air mode 57, 58
Refilling
AdBlue 195, 196
Coolant 193
Diesel 198
Engine oil 192
Petrol 197
Reflective vest 212
Remote control of auxiliary heating and ventilation
Change the battery 60
Restarting Infotainment Amundsen 103
Restarting Infotainment Columbus 131
Restarting Infotainment Swing 68
Restarting the Infotainment Bolero 83
Reversing camera 186, 187
Rights arising from defective performance
see warranty 237
Roll-up boot cover 215
Roll-up luggage compartment cover 215
Roof rack 226
Roof load 226
Safe driving 19

S

Safe driving 19
SAFE function
Description 24
Turn off 24
Safely remove connected device
Infotainment Bolero 83
Infotainment Swing 67
Safely removing a connected device
Infotainment Amundsen 102
Infotainment Columbus 130
Safety
Airbag 18
Assistance systems 19
Before the journey 16
Belt webbing arrangement 18
Car adaptations 16
Child seat 18
Correct seating position 17
Driving through water 20

Driving with a trailer 19
Emergency call 20
Engine compartment 17
Exiting the vehicle 20
Indicator lights 19
New brake pads 16
New tyres 16
Operating fluids 17
Parking 20
Roof rack 19
Running in the engine 16
safe driving 19
Sensors and cameras 16
Sockets 17
Spare and emergency wheel 19
Transporting cargo 19
Transporting children 18
Transporting objects 19
Vehicle battery 17
weather conditions 20
What to do after an accident 21
What to do in the event of a fire 21
Screen - Infotainment Amundsen 103
SD card
see electronic version of the manual 5
SEAL tyres 205
Seat
Heating 38
Seat belts 41
Adjusting the height 42
Automatic belt retractor 41
Belt tensioners 41
Blocked strap 42
Correct arrangement 18
Fastening and unfastening 42
Reversible belt tensioner 41
status display 41
Seat heating 38
Seat ventilation 38
Seats 34–36
Access to the third row 35
ISOFIX 45
Sitting safely 17
third row of seats 36
TOP TETHER 46
Ventilation 38
Selector lever 166
Service event
Interval 228
Proof 228
Reset information 228
Show appointment 228
Service position for windscreen wiper arms 56
Service work 228
Set the MENU menu
Infotainment Bolero 83
Infotainment Columbus 130
Infotainment Swing 67
Set tyre pressure values 210
Setting the HOME menu
Infotainment Columbus 130
Setting the MENU menu
Infotainment Amundsen 102
Side Assist 181, 182
Sidelights
see Parking light 49
ŠKODA Connect application
Infotainment Amundsen 122
Infotainment Columbus 156
ŠKODA Connect Application
Infotainment Bolero 99
Infotainment Swing 80
ŠKODA Connect online services
Infotainment Amundsen 122
ŠKODA Connect Online services
Infotainment Bolero 99
ŠKODA Media Command application
Infotainment Amundsen 114
Infotainment Columbus 145
Sliding hooks 214
Sliding/tilting sunroof
electric operation of the sun blinds 30
SmartLink
see electronic version of the manual 5
SmartLink - Infotainment Amundsen
Android Auto 120
Android Auto - Connection via USB 122
Android Auto - Disconnection 122
Android Auto connection conditions 121
Android Auto limitations 121
Apple CarPlay 120
Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB 122
Apple CarPlay - Disconnection 122
Apple CarPlay connection conditions 121
Apple CarPlay limitations 121
Change to another connection type 122
Change to another device 122
Functionality 120
General connection conditions 121
Main menu 120
MirrorLink 120
MirrorLink - Connection via USB 122
MirrorLink - Disconnection 122
MirrorLink connection conditions 121
MirrorLink limitations 121
Operating the running MirrorLink application 121
Restriction while driving 121
Route guidance restriction 128
Settings 122
Show main menu 120
Supported connection types 120
SmartLink - Infotainment Bolero
Android Auto 97
Android Auto – connection via USB 99
Android Auto – disconnection 99
Android Auto connection conditions 98
Android Auto restrictions 99
Apple CarPlay 97

Apple CarPlay – connection via USB 99
Apple CarPlay – disconnection 99
Apple CarPlay connection conditions 98
Apple CarPlay restrictions 99
Change to another connection type 99
Change to another device 99
Display main menu 97
Functionality 97
General connection conditions 98
Main menu 97
MirrorLink 97
MirrorLink – connection via USB 99
MirrorLink – disconnection 99
MirrorLink connection conditions 98
MirrorLink restrictions 99
Operation of the MirrorLink running application 99
Restrictions while driving 99
Settings 99
supported connection types 97
SmartLink - Infotainment Columbus
Android Auto 153
Android Auto - Connection via USB 155
Android Auto - Disconnection 155
Android Auto connection conditions 154
Android Auto restrictions 155
Apple CarPlay 153
Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB 155
Apple CarPlay - Disconnection 155
Apple CarPlay connection conditions 154
Apple CarPlay restrictions 155
Change to another connection type 155
Change to another device 155
Functionality 153
General connection conditions 154
Main menu 153
MirrorLink 153
MirrorLink - Connection via USB 155
MirrorLink - Disconnection 155
MirrorLink connection conditions 154
MirrorLink limitations 155
Operation of the MirrorLink running application 155
Restriction while driving 155
Route guidance restriction 162
Settings 155
Show main menu 153
Supported connection types 153
SmartLink - Infotainment Swing
Android Auto 78
Android Auto – connection via USB 79
Android Auto – disconnection 79
Android Auto connection conditions 79
Android Auto restrictions 79
Apple CarPlay 78
Apple CarPlay – connection via USB 79
Apple CarPlay – disconnection 79
Apple CarPlay connection conditions 79
Apple CarPlay restrictions 79
Change to another connection type 79
Change to another device 79
Display main menu 78
Functionality 78
General connection conditions 79
Main menu 78
MirrorLink 78
MirrorLink – connection via USB 79
MirrorLink – disconnection 79
MirrorLink connection conditions 79
MirrorLink restrictions 79
Operation of the MirrorLink application 79
Restrictions while driving 79
Settings 79
supported connection types 78
Snow chains 205
Sockets
12-volt socket 225
230-volt socket 225
Safety 17
Sound
Infotainment Amundsen 102
Infotainment Bolero 83
Infotainment Columbus 130
Infotainment Swing 67
Spare wheel 206
Safe driving 19
Speed limit 64
Speed limit warning 64
Speed limiter 176, 177
Indicator light 176
Sport Chassis Preset 168
Start 164
START STOP 165
Start the engine 163, 164
START-STOP
Purpose 165
Starter button 164
Steering column lock 39
Steering wheel 38, 39
Correct position 18
Dials/buttons 63
manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel 167
Stopping the engine 163, 164
Stopwatch
Infotainment 66
Instrument cluster 65
Storage 217, 218
Sun protection 31
Activating sunblind operation 30
electric operation of the sun blinds 30
Operation of the sun blinds for the rear door windows 30
Supported media files
see electronic version of the manual 5
Switching low beam on automatically 48, 49
System update
Infotainment Amundsen 103

Infotainment Bolero 83
Infotainment Columbus 131
Infotainment Swing 68

T

Tablet holder 224, 225
Tailgate
Settings 32
Tank capacity
Diesel 198
Petrol 197
TCS. 174
Technical data 231, 232
Technical specifications
Dimensions 233
engine specifications 233
Telephone - Infotainment Amundsen
Conference call 117
Conference calls 118
Connection conditions 117
Display accepted text messages 117
Enter phone number 117
Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number 117
Import phone contacts 118
List of telephone contacts 117
Main menu overview 116
Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts 118
Ringer 118
Send text message 117
Show main menu 116
Show pictures on phone contacts 118
Sort contacts in the phonebook 118
Telephone call 117
Update phone contacts 118
Voice mailbox number 118
Telephone - Infotainment Bolero
Conference call 96
Conference calls 97
Connection conditions 96
Display accepted text messages 96
Display main menu 95
Enter telephone number 96
Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number 96
Import telephone contacts 97
List of telephone contacts 96
Main menu overview 95
Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts 97
Number of voice mailbox 97
Ringer 97
Send text message 96
Show pictures on phone contacts 97
Sort contacts in the phonebook 97
Telephone conversation 96
Update telephone contacts 97
Telephone - Infotainment Columbus
Conference call 150, 151
Connection conditions 149
Delete call log 151
Display accepted text messages 150
Enter phone number 150
Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number 150
Import phone contacts 151
List of telephone contacts 150
Main menu overview 149
Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts 151
Prefer services of SIM card in external module 151
Rename services of SIM card in external module 151
Ringer 151
Select device to use contacts 151
Send text message 150
Set services of telephone function in SIM card in external module 151
Set the functions of the text messages 151
Show main menu 149
Show pictures on phone contacts 151
Sort contacts in the phonebook 151
Switch on/off services of telephone function in SIM card in external module 151
Telephone call 150
Update phone contacts 151
Voice mailbox number 151
Telephone - Infotainment Swing 76, 77
Connection conditions 77
Enter phone number 77
List of telephone contacts 77
Telephone call 77
Tilting/sliding sunroof 29, 30
Activation after disconnecting the vehicle battery 30
Operation 29
Time
Infotainment Amundsen 102
Infotainment Bolero 83
Infotainment Columbus 130
Infotainment Swing 67
Tips for economical driving 169
Tiptronic 166, 167
Tool 212
Top speed 233
TOP TETHER 46
eyelets 46
Topping up
Windscreen washer fluid 55, 56
Tow hitch 226, 227
Tow rope 171
Towing a trailer 169
Towing eye 171
Towing the vehicle 171
Traffic accident
Data recorder 236
Emergency call 20
Traffic jam assistant 181
Traffic Sign Recognition 182

Trailer 169
Alarm system 26
Coupling and uncoupling 226
Safe driving 19
Swing out the tow bar and back in 226
Trailer Assist 190, 191
Trailer attachment
Vertical load 227
Trailer manoeuvring system
see Trailer Assist 190
Trailer Stability Assist 174
Trailers
Permissible load 170
Transport
Transporting objects safely 19
Transporting
tow hitch 226
Transporting the
roof rack 226
TSA
see Trailer Stability Assist 174
Turn signal 48
Type plate 231
Tyre pressure monitor 209–211
Tyres 204, 205
Overview of the labelling 204
Pressure 209
Snow chains 205
Tyre pressure monitor 209

U

Umbrella 221
Units
Infotainment Amundsen 102
Infotainment Bolero 83
Infotainment Columbus 130
Infotainment Swing 67
Unlocking 23–25
Updating the infotainment system
see electronic version of the manual 5
USB 217, 218
see electronic version of the manual 5
User account
see electronic version of the manual 5
User management
see electronic version of the manual 5

V

Variable loading floor in luggage compartment
Set position 216
Vehicle battery 199
Charging 199
Checking the condition 199
Discharge protection 199
Disconnecting and connecting 199
Safety 17
Vehicle cleaning
interior space 229
What you should be mindful of 229
Vehicle condition 65
Vehicle dimensions 233
Vehicle driving mode 167, 168
Eco 168
Individual 168
Normal 168
Offroad 168
Snow 168
Sport 168
Vehicle height 233
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 231
Vehicle length 233
Vehicle status 65
Vehicle width 233
Vest
see reflective vest 212
Video
see electronic version of the manual 5
Video DVD - Infotainment Columbus
DVD menu 143
Main menu 143
Operation 143
Restriction 144
Settings 144
Supported sources 144
supported video files 144
what you should be mindful of 143
VIN
see vehicle identification number 231
Virtual cockpit
see digital instrument cluster 61
Voice control - Infotainment Amundsen
Conditions 105
Functionality 105
Help 106
Operation 105
Restriction 106
Settings 106
Voice control - Infotainment Bolero 86
Conditions 85
Functionality 85
Help 86
Restriction 86
Settings 86
Voice control - Infotainment Columbus 134
Functionality 133
Help 134
Operating conditions 133
Restriction 134
Settings 134
Volume when switching on the Infotainment
Infotainment Amundsen 102
Infotainment Bolero 83
Infotainment Columbus 130
Infotainment Swing 67

W

Warning triangle 212
Warranty 237
Mobility Warranty 238
Optional Extended Warranty 238
Rights arising from defective performance 237
Warranty for new cars 237
Waste container 223
Water in the fuel filter 195
Weight 232
Wheels 204
Breakdown 205
Change 206, 207
Change in pressure 205
Cover caps for the screws 211
Full wheel covers 211
Overview of tyre labelling 204
Spare wheel and emergency wheel 206
Tyre pressure 209
Tyre pressure monitor 209
Wi-Fi - Infotainment Amundsen 118
Automatic WPS connection 119
Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot 119
Change the name of the Infotainment hotspot 119
connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot 119
Connect Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot 119
Function restriction 119
manual connection to the hotspot 119
Quick Infotainment connection to the hotspot 119
Security level of the Infotainment hotspot 119
Settings 119
Tips for a perfect connection 119
Wi-Fi - Infotainment Columbus
Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot 152
Change the name of the Infotainment hotspot 152
Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot 152
Connect Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot 152
Function restriction 152
Functionality 152
Manual connection to the hotspot 152
Overview of available hotspots 152
Quick Infotainment connection to the hotspot 152
Security level of the Infotainment hotspot 152
Settings 152
Tips for a perfect connection 152
Window 28
heating 31
Windscreen washer system
see windscreen wiper and washer 55
Windscreen wiper and washer
Automatic rear window wiper 55
Automatic Wiping 55
Fold away windscreen wiper arms 56
Refill windscreen washer fluid 55
Replace the windscreen wiper blade 56
Windscreen water level too low 56
Windscreen wipers and washers 55
Windshield washer fluid
How is the washer fluid refilled? 55
Level too low 56
Winter tyres 205
Wireless network
see electronic version of the manual 5
WLAN - Infotainment Amundsen
Overview of available hotspots 118

X

XDL + 174